



Joe Gallagher

Beating the Anti-King's Indians



The American Batsford Chess Library



Hello everybody!!
Hola a todos!!

We found this material over P2P Network, and we made some cosmetic changes to it!, thank you very much to the original creator.
Encontramos este material en la red P2P, y le hicimos pequeñas modificaciones , Mil gracias a los creadores originales.

We are a group of chess fans who are producing new chess material. We have members from all around the world, belonging to different cultures and speaking different languages, all of us joined by our common love for chess!

Somos un grupo de fanáticos del ajedrez, que estamos tratando de producir nuevo material como este, desarrollando diferentes proyectos e ideas. Tenemos miembros de diferentes partes del mundo, provenientes de diferentes culturas, hablando diferentes lenguas, unidos por nuestra pasión por el ajedrez!.

If you are interested in joining us, or send any comments drop us an email at: **hecaissalovers@gmail.com**
Si alguien estuviese interesado en unirse al grupo nos pueden escribir a:
thecaissalovers@gmail.com

Best regards!!
Saludos!



American Batsford Chess Library

Beating the Anti-King's Indians

Joe Gallagher



An ICE Book
International Chess Enterprises, Seattle

International Chess Enterprises, Inc.
2005 Fifth Avenue, Suite 402
Seattle, Washington 98121-2850

P.O. Box 19457
Seattle, Washington 98109-1457

First published 1996
Copyright © 1996 by Joe Gallagher

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, by any means, without prior permission of the publisher.

Typeset by John Nunn
and printed in Great Britain by
Redwood Books, Trowbridge, Wilts
for the publishers,
B. T. Batsford Ltd, 4 Fitzhardinge Street, London W1H 0AH

British Library Cataloging-in-Publication Data.
A catalog record for this book is
available from the British Library.

First published in the United States in 1996 by
International Chess Enterprises, Inc.
Originally published in Great Britain in 1996 by
B. T. Batsford.
Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 96-077758
ISBN 1-879479-36-2 (An ICE Book: pbk.)

First American edition – 1996

Printed in the United Kingdom
All first editions are printed on acid-free paper

A BATSFORD CHESS BOOK
Editorial Panel: Mark Dvoretsky, Jon Speelman
General Adviser: Raymond Keene OBE
Specialist Adviser: Dr John Nunn
Commissioning Editor: Graham Burgess

Contents

Symbols	4
Introduction	5

Section 1: King's Indian

1 Four Pawns Attack	9
2 h3 Systems	31
3 Averbakh	53
4 White plays Bg5	72
5 Exchange Variation	85
6 5 ♗d3	91
7 5 ♘ge2	97
8 Unusual Lines	104

Section 2: White plays without c4

9 Trompowsky	111
10 Torre Attack	137
11 London System	148
12 Kingside Fianchetto	157
13 Veresov	170
14 Barry Attack	180
15 Blackmar-Diemer Gambit	185
Index of Variations	190

Symbols

+	Check
++	Double Check
#	Mate
!	Good move
!!	Excellent move
?	Bad move
??	Serious blunder
!?	Interesting move
?!	Dubious move
±	Small advantage to White
∓	Small advantage to Black
±	Large advantage to White
∓	Large advantage to Black
+−	Decisive advantage to White
−+	Decisive advantage to Black
∞	Unclear position
=	Equal position
1-0	White wins
0-1	Black wins
1/2-1/2	Draw
Ch	Championship
Echt	European team championship
Wch	World championship
Wcht	World team championship
OL	Olympiad
Z	Zonal
IZ	Interzonal
Ct	Candidates event
corr	Correspondence game
(n)	<i>n</i> th match game
(D)	Diagram follows

Introduction

‘What on earth are the Anti-King’s Indians?’ you must be asking yourselves. Well, I have taken the liberty of defining them as all variations of the King’s Indian except for the Classical, the Sämisch and the Fianchetto; plus all the lines where White doesn’t play an early c4 (Trompowsky, Torre Attack, etc.).

Much literature has been devoted to the King’s Indian in recent years, but a large percentage of it has concentrated on the ‘main lines’. For example, Nunn and Burgess have produced a mammoth 640-page work (in two volumes) uniquely on the Classical Variation, while I myself chipped in with a 240-page effort on the Sämisch and I believe that Batsford have a project on the Fianchetto variations in the pipeline. Even books dealing with the whole King’s Indian tend to treat our variations as an afterthought. For example, *The Complete King’s Indian* by Keene and Jacobs (Batsford 1992), devotes a mere 13 pages (out of 272) to the variations covered in this book.

The neglect of these ‘Anti-King’s Indians’ seemed a little unfair to me. Taking my own games as an example I found that about 50% of my King’s Indian’s over the last five years have been Classicals, Sämisches or Fianchettoes while the other 50% have

been made up from the King’s Indian lines in this book. And, what’s more, these figures do not take into account the 25% or so of my games in which White played 1 d4 and didn’t follow up with c4. The idea for this book was beginning to take shape.

Of course the material was much too vast to consider an extensive reference book, so the by now familiar concept of a repertoire book was the answer. Against each of the variations in this book I have selected one main defence for Black but you will also find plenty of alternatives in the notes in case the main line ever runs into trouble.

As a quick overview, here are the principal recommendations against each system:

- 1 Four Pawns Attack: 6...♗a6
- 2 h3 systems: Main line with 6...e5, although Black can also play ...♗a6 first.
- 3 Averbakh: 6...♗a6
- 4 Early ♗g5: Benoni style ...c5
- 5 Exchange variation (strictly speaking this is a Classical but it may also be considered as the ultimate Anti King’s Indian): Old line with 9...♞e8 based on 13...♗d7.
- 6 5 ♗d3: 6...♗c6 and 7...♗h5
- 7 5 ♗ge2: a quick ...a6 and ...c6
- 8 Unusual Lines (King’s Indian): see chapter 8
- 9 Trompowsky: 2...♗e4

6 Introduction

10 Torre Attack: 4...0-0, delaying the central strike until White has revealed his set-up.

11 London System: Playing for ...e5

12 Fianchetto Variations (without c4): Pirc style set-up.

13 Veresov: 3...♘bd7

14 Barry Attack: Quick ...c5

15 Blackmar-Diemer: Take the money and run.

I have tried to vary the type of defence that Black adopts as recommending ...e5 against everything would have been a little dull. Perhaps this may seem like extra work for the reader, but in the long term, varying your approach will have beneficial effects on your game and increase your understanding of chess in general.

Although this book has 'King's Indian' in the title many of the lines in the second section (Chapters 9-15) will be of interest to anyone who plays 1...♘f6 against 1 d4 (and even to those who play 1...d5 in the case of the Blackmar-Diemer Gambit). It has to be said, though, that the defences I have selected are geared towards the aggressive King's Indian player rather than the solid Queen's Indian exponent.

A lot of the lines in Section 2 have been neglected by the very top players but amongst everyone else (and that includes your average grandmaster) they are extremely popular. I rarely play a tournament without having to face at least one of them. The Trompowsky is, in fact, the larg-

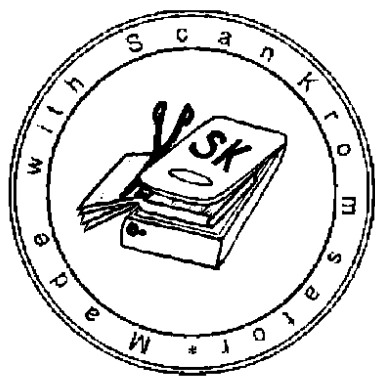
est chapter in this book (even though I have only examined the one line 2...♗e4) and the single variation you are the most likely to face. As the world is still awaiting Hodgson's version of events this line is covered in considerable detail.

The material is examined through the context of twenty nine complete and annotated games. This is important as I believe that it is impossible to get to grips with an opening if you only ever study the first fifteen moves or so. Where variations are new to you I think a good approach would be to concentrate on the annotated games and the text, only turning to the fine print when you have grasped the basic ideas and have perhaps played a game or two in the line. I'm sure you will find that learning theory (if that is your desire) will be a much simpler and less unpleasant business once you have a few practical outings behind you.

A quick word about 'Beating' which appears in the title of this book is in order. Don't expect to get a winning position out of the opening every time as this is impossible, especially with the black pieces. What I have aimed for is double-edged middlegame positions in which Black can confidently play for the win. Even this has been extremely difficult in some cases (Chapters 5 and 12 spring to mind) but if White is hell bent on a draw then there is very little you can do except for outplaying him in a drawn position, which will, of course, give you a great deal of satisfaction.

Over the years I have had a great deal of experience with many of the lines in this book and can vouch for

their soundness. I hope they bring you as many points and as much enjoyment as they have brought me.



1 The Four Pawns Attack

The Four Pawns Attack, in which by the fifth move White has already constructed an enormous centre stretching from c4 to f4, is undoubtedly White's most ambitious set-up against the King's Indian. In the early part of this century such an edifice would have been regarded as a decisive advantage and the player of the black pieces ridiculed for such weak opening play. Then along came the hypermoderns who taught us that there are ways of battling against such centres. They pointed out that while Black has been concentrating on development and getting his king into safety, White has invested valuable tempi on the construction of his centre. It follows, therefore, that Black must strike quickly and try and open the position before White can consolidate the space advantage that his centre has gained him. Until recently it was assumed that the only acceptable way for Black to do this was by playing a quick...c5, but times have changed and now I am able to recommend a system which is based mainly on Black playing for ...e5. As the immediate 6...e5 is premature (7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖xe5 is good for White) this advance has to be prepared and the best way of doing this is with 6...♠a6. The move ...♠a6, in general, has breathed new life into many variations of the King's Indian

and the Four Pawns Attack did not escape this phenomenon.

One of the main reasons for playing this system is that the theory is still undeveloped. For example, one of the most important sources of opening theory is the Encyclopaedia of Chess Openings. Volume E, published in 1991, considered 6...♠a6 to be worth just one line (plus footnotes) out of a 12 page coverage on the Four Pawns Attack (and this doesn't even include the main line, 6...c5 7 d5 e6 8 ♗e2 exd5 9 cxd5, which is classified as a Benoni and dealt with in Volume A). Many other books on the King's Indian hardly mention, or don't mention at all, 6...♠a6 including some published well into the 1990s. Only Burgess's *The King's Indian for the Attacking Player* (Batsford 1993) deals with this variation in a thorough manner and this is a book that your average Four Pawns practitioner is unlikely to possess as it is principally aimed at the black player.

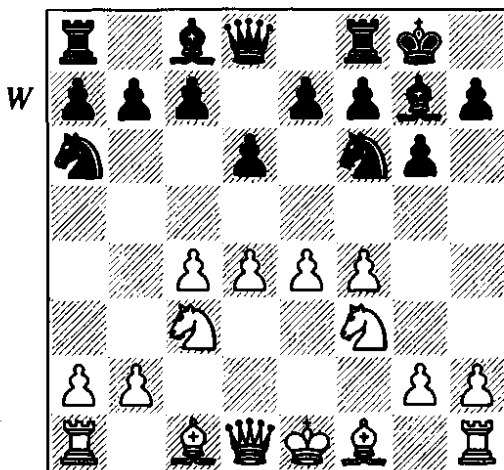
This does not mean, though, that 6...♠a6 is just some tricky little side line; in fact at international level it is now the most common choice against the Four Pawns and has recently received no less than Kasparov's seal of approval. The Four Pawns Attack, though, has never attained the popularity of the Classical

or Sämisch variations, and consequently, theory moves at a snail's pace in comparison. Much of the credit for developing this system belongs to the Russian master Igor Belov although several other players jumped on the bandwagon pretty quickly (I can number myself amongst them).

The first two games below deal with 7 ♖e2 (and unusual 7th moves for White) against which Black should play 7...e5!; Game 1 examines White accepting the pawn sacrifice, 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♖xd8 (9 ♘xe5) 9...♗xd8 10 ♘xe5, while Game 2 deals with the positional alternative 8 fxe5 dxe5 9 d5. The two other principal 7th moves for White, 7 ♖d3 and 7 e5 are dealt with in Game 3.

Game 1
Naumann – Gallagher
Hastings 1990/1

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----------|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♘c3 | ♖g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | f4 | 0-0 |
| 6 | ♘f3 | ♘a6!? (D) |



7 ♖e2

This is the most popular move although 7 ♖d3 and 7 e5 are also quite common; these are examined in Game 3, whilst below we take a brief look at a couple of rarer alternatives:

1) 7 ♖e3 ♘g4 8 ♖g1 c5!. This energetic reaction ensures Black of a good game. White can now try:

1a) 9 d5 f5! 10 exf5 (10 e5 dxe5 11 h3 e4) 10...♖xf5 11 h3 ♘f6 12 g4 (12 ♖f2 is suggested by Kiseleva – probably she's hoping for that in her next game) 12...♖d7 13 ♖g2 ♗a5 14 ♗d2 b5 15 ♘g5 (15 cxb5 ♖xb5 16 ♘xb5 ♗xb5 –+) 15...bxc4 16 ♖e3 ♘b4 17 0-0 ♘d3 with an excellent game for Black, Dekusa-Kiseleva, Ukrainian Ch 1993.

1b) 9 dxc5 ♘xc5 10 ♖xc5 (10 h3 ♖xc3+ 11 bxc3 ♘f6) 10...dxc5 11 ♗xd8 ♖xc3+ 12 bxc3 ♗xd8 is clearly better for Black according to Serikov and Kiseleva, but White could have kept her pawn structure intact by 12 ♗d2!. Therefore Black should probably play 10...♖xc3+ with a good game.

2) 7 c5 dxc5 8 d5 e6 9 ♖xa6 bxa6 10 0-0 exd5 11 e5 and now:

2a) 11...♖b7!? was a typical sacrifice from GM Kovalev who is certainly of the opinion that a couple of pawns and a big centre are worth a piece. The game Riedel-Kovalev, Munich 1992/3 continued 12 exf6 ♖xf6 13 f5 ♗e8 14 fxg6 hxg6 15 ♖f4 c4 16 ♗a4 c6 17 ♗h1 ♗b6 18 ♗c2 ♖c8 19 ♖g5 ♖f5 20 ♗d2 ♖h8 with chances for both sides.

2b) 11...♘e4 is the sane person's choice. The game Riedel-Held, also

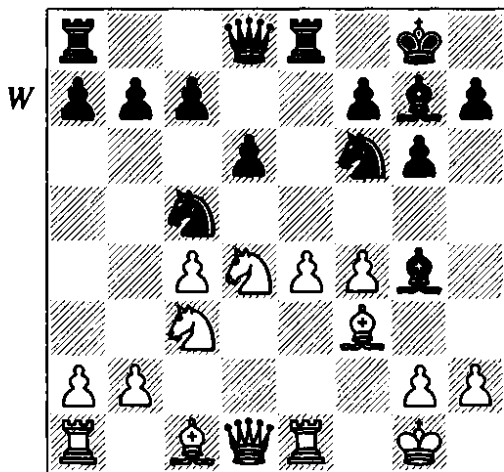
from Munich 1992/3, continued 12 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 13 ♘xd5 ♙b7! 14 ♘e3 ♜ad8 with advantage to Black as White will struggle to get his queen-side out.

7 ... e5!

This pawn sacrifice did not work on move 6 as Black was unable to increase the pressure on e4 in time; now with ... ♘a6-c5 available things are completely different.

8 dxe5

The alternative capture, 8 fxe5, has been more popular recently and that is the subject of the next game. White has one other possibility, 8 0-0 which has never really caught on as after the sequence 8...exd4 9 ♘xd4 ♘c5 10 ♙f3 ♜e8 11 ♜e1 Black has the strong possibility of 11...♙g4! (D)



The only time Black failed to play this move was in Vincent-Gallagher, Lyon 1993 where 11...a5 was my choice; this was not because I didn't see 11...♙g4 but because I mistakenly thought it would lead to excessive simplifications. Now, however, White has to fight for equality. For example:

1) 12 ♙xg4?! ♘xg4 13 ♘b3? (White must play 13 ♗xg4 although Black is better after 13...♙xd4+) 13...♘xb3 14 axb3 ♗h4 15 h3 ♙d4+ and Black wins.

2) 12 ♙e3 and now there are two lines:

2a) Black can even consider playing 12...♘cxe4?! 13 ♙xg4 ♘xg4 14 ♗xg4 ♘xc3 15 bxc3 c5 16 ♘c2! (16 ♘b5 a6) 16...♙xc3 although I'm not advocating this line of play as if White ever manages to get organised there may be a heavy price to pay for the weak dark squares and the hole on d5.

2b) 12...♙xf3 13 gxf3 ♘h5 14 ♖h1, Schön-Fleck, Porz 1988, and now 14...♗h4 with an edge for Black according to Knaak.

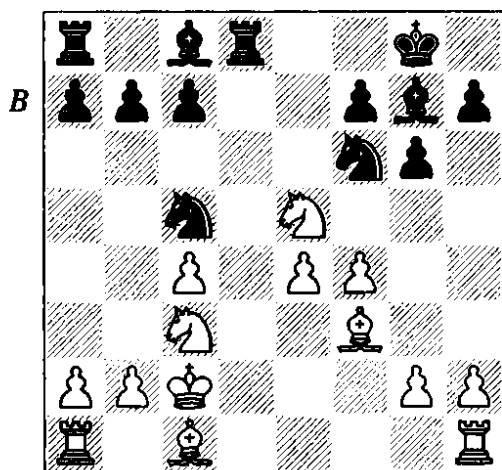
3) 12 e5 ♙xf3 (the immediate 12...dxe5 is certainly worth considering) 13 ♘xf3 dxe5 14 ♘xe5 c6 15 ♗xd8 ♜axd8 16 ♙e3 ♘fe4 17 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 18 ♙xa7 f5! 19 ♙e3 ♙xe5 20 fxe5 ♜xe5 and Black was at least equal in McNally-Bennett, Scottish Ch 1994.

4) 12 ♘b3 ♙xf3 13 ♗xf3 ♘xb3 14 axb3 c6 is ♯ according to Knaak. This may seem a surprising assessment but Black's position has been eased by the exchange of a pair of minor pieces each and White also possesses the most serious weakness in the position – the e4-pawn. A good plan would be to double rooks on the e-file although I must admit that I don't consider Black to be better after 15 ♙e3 (=).

5) 12 ♘c2 ♙xf3 13 ♗xf3 c6 is also pleasant for Black.

8 ... dx e5
9 ♖xd8

White can also capture on e5 at once: 9 ♖xe5 (9 fxe5 ♖xd1 10 ♖xd1 ♗g4 11 ♖f4 ♗b4 ♞ Belov) 9...♗c5 10 ♖f3 (10 ♖c2? ♗fxe4 11 ♗xe4 ♖f5 12 ♖f3 ♖xe5 13 fxe5 ♖xe4 14 ♖xe4 ♖h4+ 15 g3 ♖xe4+ 16 ♖xe4 ♗xe4 with a clearly better ending for Black) 10...♖xd1+ 11 ♗xd1 ♖d8+ 12 ♖c2 (12 ♖e2 ♖e6 13 ♗d5 ♗fd7! 14 ♖e3 ♗xe5 15 fxe5 ♗d7 16 ♖g5 ♖xd5! 17 cxd5 ♖e8 was slightly better for Black in Gorelov-Belov, USSR 1987) and now (D):



1) 12...♗fxe4 13 ♗xe4 ♖f5 14 ♖e1 ♖xe5 15 fxe5 ♖d4 when there is:

1a) 16 ♖c3 ♖d3+ 17 ♖b4 (17 ♖c2 ♖d4 =) 17...♗a6+ 18 ♖a5 b6+ 19 ♖xa6 ♖c8+ 20 ♖b5 ♖d7+ 21 ♖a6 is a pretty draw given by Belov which later occurred in Ca.Hansen-Berg, Århus 1991.

1b) 16 b3 is a risky winning attempt. After 16...♗xe4 (16...♖xe4+ 17 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 18 ♖a3 ♖xe1 19 ♖xe1 ♗e6 20 ♖d1 looks like an edge for White) 17 ♖b2 ♗c5 18 ♖a3

♗d3 19 ♖d1 Black has a choice between two lines:

1b1) The game Namgilov-Sepp, Rostov 1993 continued 19...c6 20 g4 ♖e6 21 ♖g5 when 21...♗xe5 22 ♖xd4 ♗xf3 23 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 24 ♖xd8 ♖xg4 25 ♖f6 is an inadvisable exchange sacrifice and 21...b5 22 cxb5 cxb5 23 ♖xa8? ♖a4+! 24 bxa4 b4# is pure fantasy on account of 23 ♖xd3!. Black should probably play 21...♖d7, maintaining the equilibrium as Sepp did in the game.

1b2) The fact that there are no queens shouldn't prevent us from playing for mate: 19...♖e8, intending ...♖e6-a6 would be more ambitious, e.g. 20 ♖b2 (20 ♖e3 ♖xe5!) 20...♖e6 (20...♖xe5? 21 ♖xd3) 21 ♖xb7 ♖d8 (threatening ...♖b6) 22 c5 ♖e4! (22...♖b8 23 c6 ♖xb7 24 ♖xd3 ♖xc6 25 ♖d8+ ♖g7 26 ♖d4! =) 23 c6 ♖d5 with a strong attack for Black.

2) 12...♖e6. If Black wants to keep the game going he must try this. Possible continuations are:

2a) 13 ♖e1 ♗fd7! (Black relies heavily on ...♗fd7 in this variation) 14 ♗xd7 ♖xd7 and now 15 ♖e2 ♖xc3 should be a little better for Black but after 15 b3 ♗d3 16 ♖e2 ♗b4+ 17 ♖b2 ♗d3+ 18 ♖c2 ♗b4+ I can't see a convincing way for Black to continue the struggle.

2b) 13 ♗d5 ♗cxe4 14 ♗xc7 ♖f5 15 g4 ♗xg4 16 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 17 ♗xa8 (17 ♗xg4 ♖ac8 18 ♗b5 ♖xc4+ 19 ♖b3 ♖c5 looks very nasty for White) 17...♖f5 is a suggestion by Belov. After 18 ♖e1, 18...♖xa8 is possible, but perhaps 18...f6 is the

most promising as both 19 ♖c7 fxe5 20 ♗d5 ♗c5+ and 19 ♗xg6 hxg6 20 ♗c7 ♗c5+ 21 ♖c3 ♗d3+ 22 ♖b4 ♗f8 are very good for Black.

2c) 13 ♗e3 ♗cxe4 14 ♗xe4 ♗f5 15 ♗hd1 ♗xe4+ (15... ♗xe4? 16 g4) 16 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 17 ♗xd8+ ♗xd8 18 ♗d1 must be level, although Black can unbalance the game by continuing 18... ♗xd1 19 ♖xd1 ♗d6 20 b3 ♗xe5!? 21 fxe5 ♗c8.

2c1) If Black can then get his king to e6 he will be able to claim an edge. For example, after 22 ♖c2 ♖f8 23 ♗d3 ♖e7 24 ♖e4 ♖e6 the knight will be able to get out via a7 (if White prevents ♗e7).

2c2) Unfortunately, White can prevent the king manoeuvre with 22 ♗c5! after which 22...b6 23 ♗a3 c5 24 b4! cxb4 25 ♗xb4 f5!? (25... ♖g7 26 ♖e2 f5 27 exf6+ ♖xf6 is also equal) 26 exf6 (26 e6 ♖g7 27 ♗c3+ ♖f8 28 ♗b4+ ♖e8 followed by ... ♗e7-c6 is a slightly risky winning attempt, but 28... ♖g7 is drawing) 26... ♖f7 27 ♖e2 ♖xf6 28 ♗d3 ♖e5 29 ♗c3+ ♖e6 also leads to a draw.

Perhaps you think that I have got a bit far in my attempts to keep the game going, but with the word 'Beating' in the title of this book I don't want to allow our opponents a forced draw straight out of the opening. Of course it is no easy matter playing for a win with Black, especially if White is content to draw, but if you opt for variation '2' you will at least give your opponent a chance to go wrong.

9 ... ♗xd8
10 ♗xe5

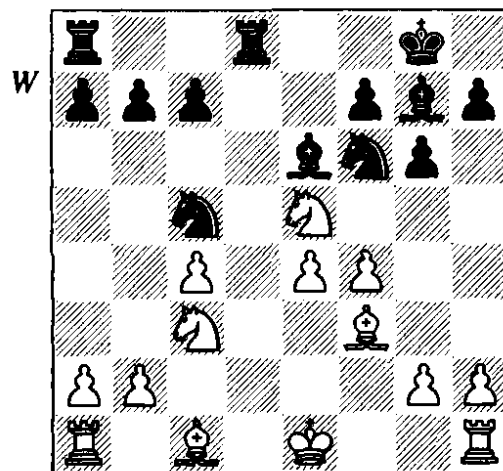
10 fxe5 ♗g4 11 ♗f4 ♗e8 12 ♗d1 has occurred a couple of times when Black has responded rather weakly with 12... ♗xe5 and 12... ♖f8. Best is 12... ♗c5, intending 13... ♗e6 which is also the reply to 13 h3. The point is that if the bishop drops back to g3 then the g4-knight will hop into e3 and if it moves along the c1-h6 diagonal then Black will simply recapture on e5.

10 ... ♗c5
11 ♗f3

11 ♗d5 was tried in Chiburdanidze-Xie Jun, Manila wom Wch (12) 1991. After 11...c6 12 ♗e7+ ♖f8 13 ♗xc8 ♗axc8 14 ♗e3 ♗fxe4 15 0-0 f6 16 ♗f3 f5 the game was level.

11 ... ♗e6 (D)

The immediate 11... ♗fd7 has also been seen. After 12 ♗xd7 ♗xc3+ (perhaps 12... ♗xd7 is better, as 13 e5 f6 gives Black good play) 13 bxc3 ♗xd7 14 ♗e3 ♗d3+ 15 ♖f1 ♗e6 16 c5 ♗c4 17 ♖g1 V.Ivanov considers that Black has compensation for his pawn.



12 ♗d5
Alternatively:

14 The Four Pawns Attack

1) 12 ♖e3 (awarded an '!' by V.Ivanov in *Informator* but he only took variation '1a' into account) and now:

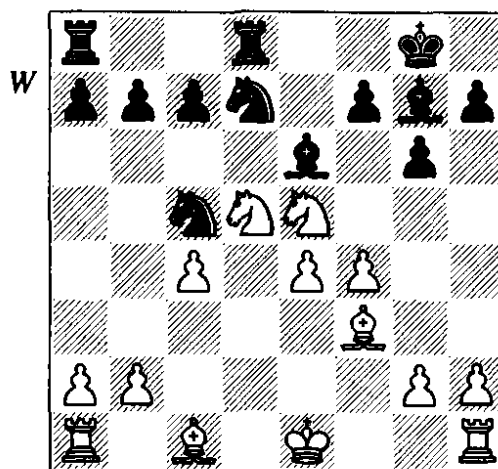
1a) 12...♟d3+ 13 ♟xd3 ♞xd3 14 ♖f2 ♖xc4 is given as = by Belov, who points out that 15 ♖e2? ♞xc3! 16 bxc3 ♟xe4+ 17 ♖f1 ♖xe2+ 18 ♖xe2 ♟xc3+ is good for Black, but fails to spot that 15 e5! wins material. V.Ivanov gives 15...♟d5 16 ♟xd5 ♖xd5 17 ♖e2 ♞xe3 18 ♖xe3 ♖xg2 19 ♞hg1 ±.

1b) 12...♟fd7! is a much better move. Sutter-Gallagher, Suhr 1992 continued 13 0-0 (13 ♟xd7 ♟d3+! is good for Black) 13...♟xe5 14 fxe5 ♟d3 (14...♟d7!? deserves attention as after 15 ♟d5 ♖xe5 16 ♖g5 Black now has 16...f6) 15 ♟d5 ♖xe5 16 ♖g5 ♞f8 (16...♖xd5 17 ♖xd8 ♖xc4 18 ♖h4 ♟xb2 is winning for Black, but White can play 17 cxd5 f6 18 ♖e2!) 17 ♖f6 (although I had always intended to capture on f6 I remember getting a nasty shock when I realized that my opponent was threatening to deliver mate in one) 17...♖xf6 18 ♟xf6+ ♖g7 19 ♟d5 ♞ac8 20 b3 c6 with a favourable endgame for Black.

2) 12 0-0! (perhaps this is the only way for White to obtain an equal position) 12...♟fd7 13 ♟xd7 ♖d4+! (13...♞xd7 14 ♖e3 is probably favourable for White) 14 ♖h1 ♞xd7 15 ♟d5 c6 and now 16 ♞d1? ♖g7! 17 ♞b1 (or 17 ♖e3 ♟a4!) 17...♞e8 18 b3 ♟xe4! 19 ♖xe4 cxd5 20 cxd5 ♖g4 21 ♖f3 ♖f5 won material for Black in A.Geller-Belov, USSR 1988 but 16 ♖e3! cxd5 17

♖xd4 dxe4 18 ♖xc5 exf3 19 ♞xf3 ♖xc4 is completely equal.

12 ... ♟fd7! (D)



A player coming across this position for the first time could be forgiven for thinking that Black is in serious trouble. A quick pawn-count will reveal a slight deficit for Black, whilst the most eye-catching features of the position are the seemingly dominant white knights on e5 and d5. But, to borrow a cliché from football, chess can be a funny old game. Black's last move guarantees the removal of the knight on e5, whilst the other one on d5, unless it helps itself to a c-pawn laced with poison, will soon be expelled by ...c6. From then on, with their diagonals cleared, Black's bishops will begin to show what they are capable of and White may also begin to regret having moved all his central pawns leaving so many weak squares behind them.

13 ♟xd7

As we have already commented, 13 ♟xc7? is not really an option. After 13...♟xe5 14 fxe5 Black has several tempting continuations, e.g.

14...♖d3+ (the other possibilities are 14...♙xc4 and 14...♙xe5) 15 ♖f1 (15 ♖e2 ♙xc4 16 ♙g5 ♖xe5+ 17 ♖f2 f6 18 ♖xa8 fxg5 is similar) 15...♙xc4 16 ♙g5 ♖xe5+ 17 ♙e2 f6 18 ♖xa8 fxg5 19 ♖c7 ♖d2 20 ♙xc4+ ♖xc4 21 ♖d5 ♖xb2 22 ♖c1 ♙d4 with an enormous attack for Black.

13 ... ♖xd7

14 0-0

Both 14 ♖e2?! ♖e8 15 e5 c6 16 ♙e3 ♖a4 17 b3 cxd5 18 bxa4 d4 19 ♙d2 f6, Vaiser-Weindl, Chiasso 1989 and 14 e5?! c6 15 ♖b4 a5 16 ♙e3 ♙f8 17 ♖xc6 ♖d3+ 18 ♖f1 ♖xb2 19 ♖d4 ♙xc4+, Stokstat-Berg, Copenhagen 1991 led to excellent positions for Black.

14 ... c6!

14...♙d4+ transposes to '2' in the note to White's 12th move.

15 ♖e3 ♖d4!

I recall feeling quite pleased with myself after finding this move, which wins back the pawn without relinquishing any of the positional pressure. Afterwards I discovered that 15...♙d4 was the recommended move and although this is quite good I still prefer my choice. So that you can make up your own mind, here are a couple of examples after 15...♙d4 16 ♖h1:

1) 16...♖d3 17 f5! led to great complications in Inkirov-J.Ivanov, Bulgaria 1992, which finally settled down into an equal endgame after 17...♖xc1 18 fxe6 fxe6 19 ♙g4! ♖e8 20 ♖d1! ♙xb2 21 ♖xd7 ♙xa1 22 c5 ♙f6! 23 ♖c4 ♖e7 24 ♖xe7 ♙xe7 25 ♙xe6+ ♖f8 =.

2) 16...f5 is more prudent. Cherniakov-Belov, Podolsk 1990 continued 17 exf5 gxf5 18 ♖d1 ♖ad8 19 ♖c2 ♙f6 20 ♙e3 ♖d3 21 ♙xa7 ♖xb2 22 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 23 ♖e1 ♙xc4 24 ♖e3 ♖d3! with some advantage for Black, but perhaps 18 g4 would be more critical, after which Burgess recommends 18...♖d3 19 gxf5 ♙f7 with plenty of activity for Black.

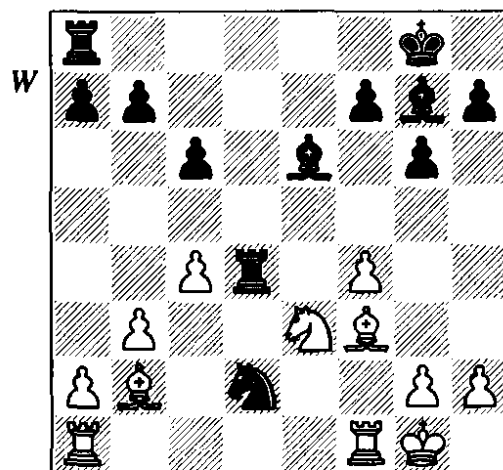
16 b3

Of course 16 e5 is answered by 16...♖xf4 and 16 ♖d1 ♖xd1+ 17 ♖xd1 ♙xc4 is also no solution to White's problems as e5 can always be met by ...f6.

16 ... ♖xe4

Watch this piece carefully as it performs impressive pirouettes in the heart of White's position. Each time White thinks he has consolidated, the knight does another little number just to emphasise who's in control.

17 ♙b2 ♖d2! (D)



This key move is the tactical justification behind 15...♖d4.

18 ♖f2

After 18 ♙xd4 ♙xd4 19 ♖fe1 ♖xf3+ 20 gxf3 ♙xa1 21 ♖xa1 White

16 The Four Pawns Attack

would be in for a long and difficult defence. 21...a5! looks like a good start to the technical exercise.

18 ... ♖d3
 19 ♔xg7 ♔xg7
 20 ♖e1 ♖ad8

With his base camp established far into enemy territory, Black has a clear advantage.

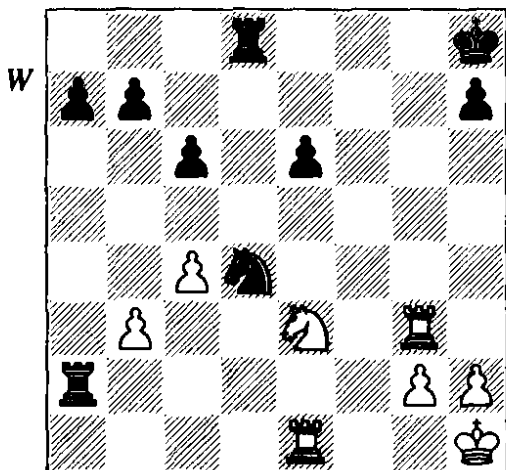
21 ♔d1 ♘e4!

The knight heads for c3 from where it can attack the base of the white pawn chain.

22 ♖ff1 ♘c3
 23 ♔c2 ♖d2
 24 f5

White understands that he won't be able to hold his queenside together (24 ♖a1 ♖e2 looks winning for Black and 24 a4 would fatally weaken b3) so he seeks counterplay on the kingside, only to see it snuffed out by another neat knight manoeuvre.

24 ... gxf5
 25 ♔xf5 ♖xa2
 26 ♖f3 ♘e2+!
 27 ♔h1 ♘d4
 28 ♖g3+ ♔h8
 29 ♔xe6 fxe6 (D)

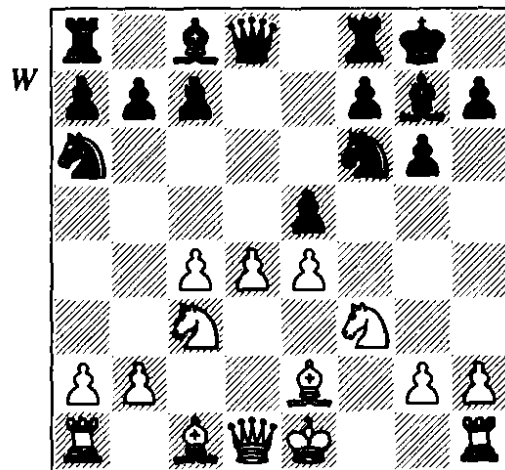


Black is a pawn up with a much better position. The remaining moves were: 30 h3 ♖g8 31 ♔h2 ♖b2 32 ♘g4 ♘f5 33 ♖f3 ♘h4 (the final knight dance) 34 ♖g3 ♖g6 35 ♖d1 h5 36 ♖d8+ ♔g7 37 ♖d7+ ♔f8 38 ♘e5 ♖xg2+ 39 ♖xg2 ♖xg2+ 40 ♔h1 ♖e2 41 ♖d4 ♘f5 42 ♘d7+ ♔e7 0-1

Game 2

Lautier – Kasparov
 Amsterdam 1995

1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 g6
 3 ♘c3 ♔g7
 4 e4 d6
 5 f4 0-0
 6 ♘f3 ♘a6
 7 ♔e2 e5
 8 fxe5 dxe5 (D)



9 d5

9 dxe5?! transposes to the line 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 fxe5!?, discussed on page 12.

9 ♘xe5?! is also doubtful but worth looking at in a little more detail. After 9...c5! 10 ♔e3 (10 d5 ♘xe4 11 ♘xe4 ♔xe5 is good for Black) there is:

1) 10...cxd4 11 ♖xd4 and now:

1a) Several commentators give 11...♗g4 an '!', quoting the game Bystriakova-Umanskaya, Stavropol 1989, where Black had good positional compensation for the pawn after 12 ♘f3 ♖xd4 13 ♗xd4 ♘b4 14 0-0-0 ♗xd4 15 ♙xd4 ♘c6 16 ♚d2 ♘g7 17 h3 ♘f6 18 ♜e1 ♖e6.

1b) Whilst this seems OK for Black, I don't see any real necessity to head for an ending a pawn down. One idea is 11...♘b4?!, but after 12 ♖c5 ♗a5 13 ♖xf8 ♖xf8 we have probably given up a bit much material for our beautiful position.

1c) Perhaps the best line of all is 11...♗e7! as 12 0-0 ♚d8 looks extremely awkward for White.

2) 10...♗g4!/? occurred to me after seeing variation '1a' above. Although it is playable, it is no more effective than 10...cxd4. I have examined:

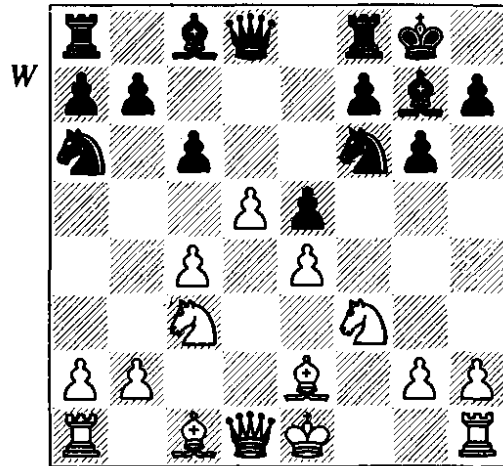
2a) 11 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 (you may wish to amuse yourself with 11...cxd4) 12 ♘xg4 (12 ♗xg4 cxd4 13 ♖g5 ♗a5) 12...cxd4 13 ♘h6+ ♖h8 14 0-0 f5! with good play for Black.

2b) 11 ♘xg4 cxd4 (11...♖xg4 12 d5!) 12 ♘h6+ ♖h8 (12...♖xh6 13 ♖xh6 ♗h4+ would be fine for Black but White should play 13 ♖xd4! with the advantage) 13 ♖f2! ♖e6 14 ♘d5 ♗a5+ 15 ♖f1 ♖xh6 16 ♖xd4+ ♖g7 17 ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 18 ♗d4+ f6 19 ♖f2 ♘b4! with adequate compensation for the pawn.

9 ... ♘c5

This was thought suspect until recently, as White will soon be able to kick the knight with b4. To do so,

though, he will have to part with the important dark-squared bishop. Of the alternatives, 9...c6 (D) is the most promising.



White then has:

1) 10 ♖e3?! ♗g4 11 ♗d2 (11 ♖g1 ♖h6 leaves Black very active) 11...cxd5 12 cxd5 f5 13 ♖xa6 bxa6 14 0-0 fxe4 15 ♗g5 ♖f5 16 ♚ad1 ♚b8 17 b3 ♖h6 with good play for Black, Siegmund-Schäfer, Nettetal 1991.

2) 10 0-0. Black now usually transfers his king's knight to the blockading square d6, but it's not clear whether he should first give a check with his queen:

2a) 10...♗b6+ 11 ♖h1 cxd5 12 cxd5 ♘e8 13 b4!? ♗c7?! (13...♘d6 looks more to the point) 14 ♘b5 ♗d8 15 d6 ♖d7? (15...♖e6) 16 ♖g5 f6 17 ♘xe5! ♖xb5 18 ♖xb5 ♗xd6 19 ♗b3+ ♖h8 20 ♘xg6+! hxg6 21 ♗h3+ ♖g8 22 ♖c4+ ♜f7 23 ♚ad1 ♗c6 24 ♗b3 ♗c7 25 e5! ♖f8 26 ♖xf7 ♗xf7 27 e6 ♗c7 28 ♚d7 ♗e5 29 e7+ and White soon won, Michaelsen-Schäfer, Bundesliga 1993.

2b) 10...♘e8 11 dxc6 (11 ♖e3 cxd5 12 cxd5 ♘d6 will perhaps be

tested in the future) 11...♖b6+ 12 ♖h1 bxc6 13 a3 (after 13 ♖a4 ♖b4 14 a3 ♖e7 15 ♖g5 ♖f6 16 ♖e3 ♖g7 17 ♖e1 ♖e6 Black had every reason to feel satisfied with the outcome of the opening in Vaiser-Lane, Cappelle la Grande 1994) 13...♖ac7 14 ♖a4 ♖b8 15 b4 ♖e6 16 c5 and Knaak concludes that White has an edge. He is probably right; after 16...♖8c7, White should not play 17 ♖d6? ♖d8 18 ♖xc6 as 18...♖b7 costs him his queen, but simply 17 ♖b2, with the intention of meeting 17...♖b5 by 18 ♖xb5 cxb5 19 ♖c3 ♖d4 20 ♖d5 and 17...♖d8 by 18 ♖b3!.

3) 10 ♖g5 h6 11 ♖h4 (11 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 12 0-0 is equal according to Lukin and 11...♖xf6 12 ♖d2 ♖g7 13 0-0 cxd5 14 cxd5 ♖b6+ 15 ♖h1 ♖d7 was comfortable for Black in D.Bischoff-Schäfer, Mengen 1990) 11...♖b6 12 ♖d2 ♖c5 13 ♖xf6 (13 ♖f2? ♖fxe4! and 13 ♖c2? ♖fxe4 14 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 15 ♖xe4 ♖f5 are a couple of lines for White to avoid) 13...♖xf6 and now:

3a) The game Bagaturov-Lukin, USSR 1989 went on 14 ♖b1?! cxd5! 15 cxd5 (15 ♖xd5 ♖xe4! is good for Black) 15...♖g7 16 b4 ♖a6 17 ♖a4 ♖d6 18 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 19 ♖c5 ♖d6 and, with ...b6 and ...f5 to come, Black stood very well.

3b) 14 ♖xh6 leads to a complex struggle after 14...♖xb2 15 ♖c1 ♖g7 16 ♖e3 f5! (16...♖d7 is solid) 17 0-0 and now:

3b1) Knaak gives 17...♖xe4 18 ♖xe4 fxe4 19 ♖b1 ♖c2 (19...♖xa2? 20 ♖a1 ♖c2 21 ♖fc1 ♖b2 22 ♖cb1 wins the queen as 22...♖c2 loses on

the spot to 23 ♖e1) 20 ♖fc1 ♖a4 21 ♖h4 ♖f6 22 ♖xe4 as ±. He points out that 22...♖f4 23 ♖xg6 ♖xh4 is refuted by 24 ♖e8+ ♖f8 25 ♖b3!, but doesn't consider 22...cxd5 23 ♖xd5+ ♖e6 24 ♖xb7 ♖d8, which looks like fair compensation for a pawn to me.

3b2) Withdrawing the queen at once by 17...♖b6!? deserves serious consideration.

10 ♖g5

White would like to play 10 ♖c2 but this runs into 10...♖fxe4! 11 ♖xe4 ♖f5 12 ♖d3 ♖xe4 13 ♖xe4 f5, when Black regains his piece with the better game.

10 ... h6

11 ♖xf6

11 ♖h4 g5 12 ♖g3 ♖fxe4 13 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 14 ♖xe5 g4! 15 ♖xg7 gxf3 wins for Black since 16 ♖xf3 ♖xg7 17 ♖xe4 drops a piece after 17...♖h4+ and 16 ♖xf8 ♖h4+ 17 g3 f2+ 18 ♖f1 ♖h3 is mate.

11 ... ♖xf6

12 b4 ♖a6!

By attacking b4 Black gains the time he requires to blockade the position with ...c5. The alternatives are less promising:

1) 12...♖xe4?! 13 ♖xe4 ♖f4 14 ♖fd2 f5 15 g3! ♖e3 16 ♖b3 ♖d4 17 ♖c3 e4 18 ♖c1 f4 19 ♖cxe4 ♖f5 20 ♖d3 ♖e5 21 gxf4 ♖xf4 22 ♖f1! and Black didn't have enough for his piece in D.Ilić-Certić, Belgrade 1989. Later Ilić felt that 21 0-0 would have been even better, giving 21...fxg3 22 hxg3 ♖ae8 23 ♖f3 as +- . I'm not so sure about this assessment as after 23...♖xg3+ 24 ♖xg3 ♖xd3 25 ♖fe1

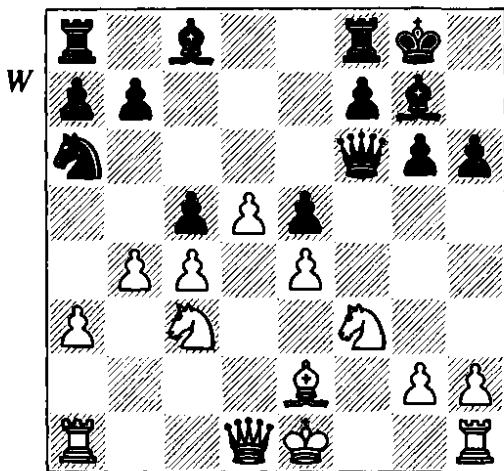
fxe1+ 26 fxe1 xc3 27 fe3 xd4
 Black is not without hope.

2) 12... d7 13 c5! a5 14 a3 axb4
 15 axb4 xa1 16 xa1 xf4 , Hausner-Khalifman, Bundesliga 1990/1, and now Khalifman gives 17 a2! f5 18 g3! e3 19 d2 as clearly better for White.

13 a3

After 13 b1 c5 , 14 a3 transposes to the game while 14 b5 c7 15 d6 e6 16 d5 may have gained a tempo on Lautier-Kasparov, but is in fact much worse for White because Black's bishop is actually better off on c8 in this position.

13 ... c5! (D)



14 b1 $\text{d7!?$

It would be interesting to know if this novelty was prepared beforehand or was simply a piece of over-the-board improvisation after being surprised by his opponent's choice of opening. An earlier game, O.Rodriguez-Dorfman, Costa Catalana 1994, went instead 14... $\text{b6!?$ 15 d2 d8 16 h4 h5 17 b5 c7 18 e3 d6 19 0-0 f8 20 h1 b6 21 f2 e8 with good play for Black.

15 $\text{b5!?$

The main idea behind Black's last move was to protect b5 so that he can play ... d6 in one go. For example, Gurevich gives 15 0-0 d6 (the line 15... cxb4 16 axb4 b6+ is also interesting since 17 c5 is met by 17... xc5!) 16 b5 (16 b3 is met by 16... f5 and 16 b5 c7 leaves Black free to concentrate on a kingside attack) 16... b6! 17 h1 cxb4 18 axb4 xb5 19 cxb5 c7 with advantage to Black. Lautier, not satisfied by such variations, selects a more aggressive continuation.

15 ... c7

16 d6

A double-edged choice, but otherwise Black will achieve his blockade.

16 ... e6

Black avoids 16... e8 on account of 17 d5! .

17 d5 d8

18 d2 d4

18... f5 would be very risky as White could then whip up a strong attack by 19 e7+ h7 20 h4! , intending to meet 20... fxe4 with 21 g5+ .

19 0-0 e6

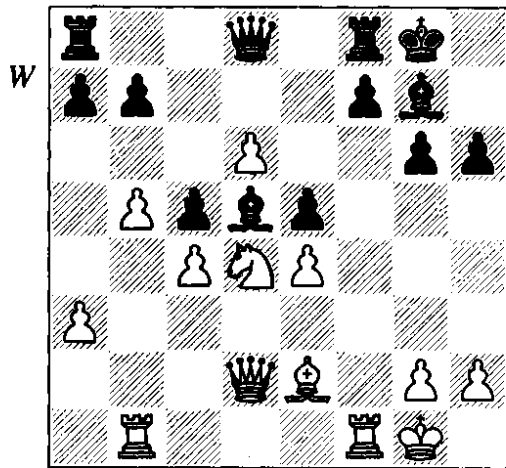
20 xd4 xd5 (D)

Black avoided 20... exd4 because of 21 e7+ h7 22 xf4 followed by e5 . However Ftačnik proposes 22... fe8 followed by 23... fxe7 as a reasonable exchange sacrifice.

21 c6!

Pretty and forced; 21 cxd5 exd4 22 xf4 xe8! , followed by ... xe5 , is good for Black according to Gurevich.

21 ... bxc6



Game 3
Vaiser – Berkovich
Tel Aviv 1992

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♘c3 | ♙g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | f4 | 0-0 |
| 6 | ♘f3 | ♘a6 |
| 7 | ♙d3 | |

21...♙xd6 drops a piece to 22 ♘a5! and 21...♙xc6 22 bxc6 bxc6 23 ♖b7 is horrible for Black.

22 cxd5 cxb5

Obviously not 22...cxd5 23 ♙xd5 when White is dominant on the light squares as well as retaining his monster on d6.

23 ♖xb5 ♙xd6
 24 ♙a5 f5!

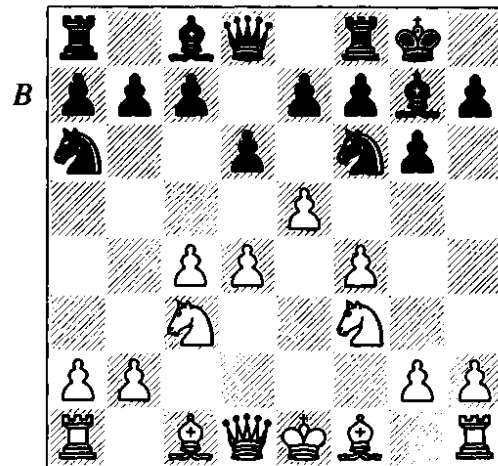
Black could have kept his c-pawn with 24...♙f6 as 25 ♖xc5? loses to 25...♙d8. However after 25 ♖b7! ♙d8 26 ♙b5 ♙b6 27 ♙c4 he would have had no winning chances.

25 ♖xc5 fxe4
 26 ♖c6 ♖xf1+
 27 ♙xf1 ♙f8
 28 d6

28 ♖xg6 e3 29 ♙e1 ♙f4! would give Black a strong initiative. Gurevich continues with 30 ♙g3 ♙h8! 31 ♖xg7? ♙f2+! 32 ♙xf2 exf2+ 33 ♙xf2 ♙xg7 winning for Black.

After 28 d6 the players agreed to a **draw**. Several commentators justified this with the variation 28...♖d8 29 ♙d5+ ♙h7 30 ♙xe4 ♖xd6 31 ♖xd6 ♙xd6 32 ♙d3 =, but, as Gurevich pointed out, 28...e3! would have left White with some work to do.

There is one other seventh move that has to be examined, namely 7 e5 (D).

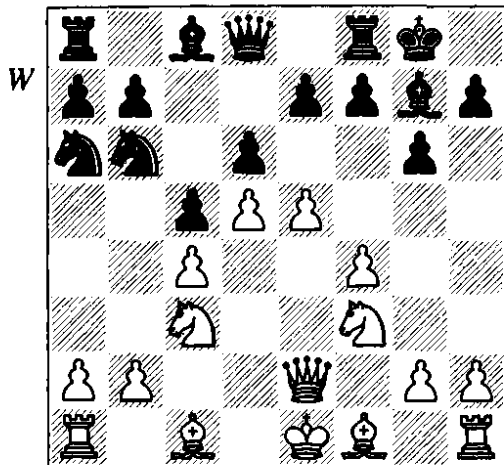


This is certainly White's most aggressive choice against 6...♘a6 and in some ways the most logical as well. After 7...♘d7 (7...♘e8 does not fit in well with the strategy of undermining the white centre but 7...♘h5!? worked well after 8 ♙e2 ♙h6 9 f5?! ♙xc1 10 ♙xc1 ♙xf5 11 ♙h6 f6 12 g4 ♙xg4 13 ♖g1 ♙xf3 14 ♙xf3 ♘g7 15 ♙xb7 ♙b8!, Vokač-Babula, Lazne Bohdanec 1996; 9 g3 must be the right move) White has quite a few possibilities:

- 1) 8 h4 dxe5! (8...c5 9 d5 dxe5 10 h5 is playable but dangerous for Black) 9 dxe5 (9 fxe5 c5!) 9...♘dc5

10 ♔e3 (10 ♖xd8 ♗xd8 11 ♘d5 ♕g4 gives Black good play according to Sokolin) 10...♕f5 11 ♘d4 ♖d7 12 ♘xf5 ♗xf5 13 g4 ♗e6 (White already looks over-extended) 14 ♗f3 ♗ad8 15 ♗d1 f6 16 b4 fxe5! 17 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 18 ♘d5 (18 f5 is well met by 18...e4!) 18...exf4 19 ♘xf4 ♗f7! 20 bxc5 e5 21 ♔g2 exf4 22 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 23 ♔xf4 c6 with a clear advantage for Black, Vaiser-Avrukh, Moscow Tal mem rpd 1992.

2) 8 ♗e2 c5 9 d5 ♘b6 (D) and now:



2a) 10 ♘e4 ♕g4 11 ♘eg5 f6! (destruction of the centre is what it's all about) 12 h3 (Kuzmin considers both 12 ♘xh7?! ♖xh7 13 ♘g5+ fxg5 14 ♗xg4 ♘b4! and 12 exf6 exf6 13 ♘e6 ♔xe6 14 dxe6 ♗e8 15 g4 f5 to be very good for Black) 12...♔xf3 13 ♘xf3 e6! (continuing the plan) 14 dxe6 fxe5 15 fxe5 ♗e7! 16 ♔e3 (Kuzmin considers 16 ♔g5 to be White's best but I'm not sure what he has in mind after 16...♗xe6 since 17 exd6 ♗xd6 18 ♔e7 allows the reply 18...♗g3+) 16...dxe5 17 0-0-0, Glek-Kuzmin, Podolsk 1990, and now 17...e4 18 ♘g5 ♘a4 is the

recommendation of Kuzmin, who doesn't fear 19 ♗d7 as after 19...♗f6 White's queenside is likely to cave in (20 ♗xb7 ♗ab8 21 ♘xe4 ♗xe6 doesn't solve White's problems while 20 ♗xg7+ looks insufficient as well).

2b) 10 h4 e6 11 h5 exd5 12 hxg6 hxg6 13 cxd5 ♘b4 14 a3 ♘4xd5 15 ♘e4 dxe5 16 fxe5 ♔g4 17 ♔h6 ♔xh6 18 ♗xh6 ♗e7 19 ♘eg5 ♗xg5 20 ♘xg5 ♔xe2 21 ♔xe2 ♗fe8 22 e6 f6 (22...♖g7 23 ♗h7+ ♖f6 24 exf7 ♗e7 is good for Black, but 23 exf7! leads to a draw after 23...♗xe2+ 24 ♖xe2 ♖xh6 25 ♘e6 ♘f4+! 26 ♘xf4 ♖g7 =) 23 ♗xg6+ ♖f8 24 ♔b5 (24 ♘h7+ ♖e7 25 ♔g4 ♗g8! is good for Black) 24...fxg5 25 ♔xe8 ♗xe8 26 0-0-0 and White eventually managed to draw this inferior ending, Vaiser-Hebden, London 1991.

3) 8 c5 (a pawn sacrifice to take the pressure off e5) 8...dxc5 9 d5 and now:

3a) 9...♘db8, aiming for ...c6, was the choice in the prototype game with 8 c5, Semkov-Hebden, Toulouse 1989. But this undevelopment is a little slow and after 10 h4! c6 11 h5 ♘b4 12 hxg6 hxg6 13 e6! fxe6 14 ♘e5 exd5 15 ♘xg6 ♔f5 16 ♗h5! White had built up a powerful attack, though Black did manage to escape into an extremely messy ending after 16...♗f6 17 ♗h7+ ♖f7 18 ♘e5+ ♖f8 19 ♗h8+! ♔xh8 20 ♗xh8+ ♖g7 21 ♗xd8 ♘c2+ 22 ♖f2 ♘xa1 23 g4 ♗f8 24 ♗xf8 ♖xf8 25 gxh5 ♘c2 which he managed to hold with difficulty.

3b) 9...♘b6 10 a3 (otherwise ...♘b4 will pick off the d-pawn) with a choice for Black:

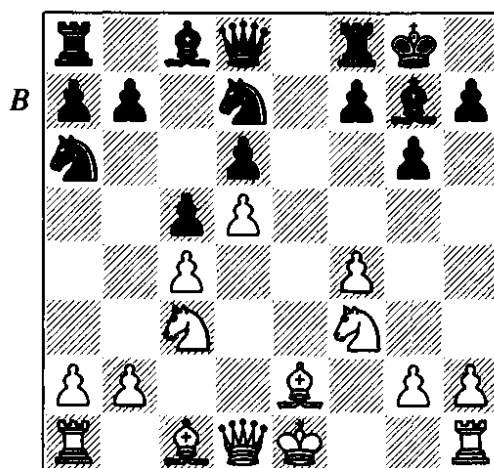
3b1) 10...e6 (10...f6 has also been suggested) 11 ♖xa6 (11 ♖e3 exd5 12 ♖xa6 d4) 11...bxa6 12 ♖e3 exd5 (12...♟xd5 13 ♟xd5 ♞xd5 14 ♞xd5 exd5 15 ♖xc5 is unclear) 13 ♖xc5 ♜e8 14 ♖xb6 axb6 15 ♞xd5 ♖g4 16 ♟g5? ♞xd5 17 ♟xd5 ♖xe5! and Black won material in Birens-Van Laatum, Ostend 1992. Better was 16 0-0, although Black's position is still preferable.

3b2) 10...♟b8!? was my selection in Videki-Gallagher, Kecskemet 1990, as I didn't want my pawn structure to be ruined and felt that playing for ...c6 was the right idea. The position is similar to that of Semkov-Hebden, with the important difference that here the black knight is more actively placed on b6, as opposed to a6 in that game. Play continued 11 ♖e3 c6 12 dxc6 ♟xc6 13 ♖xc5 ♖g4 14 ♖e2 ♜c8 (I think Black already has an edge) 15 ♞xd8 ♜fxd8 16 ♜d1 ♜xd1+ 17 ♞xd1 ♖xf3 18 ♖xf3 ♟xe5! 19 ♖xb6 ♟xf3 20 ♖xa7 ♖xc3 21 bxc3 ♜xc3! 22 gxf3 ♜xa3 and now White gave back the piece with 23 ♜e1, but the rook ending proved to be untenable. I had expected the self-bottling 23 ♖g1, after which Black should probably take the two f-pawns and hope to convert his material advantage.

4) 8 ♖e2!? c5 9 exd6 (9 d5 dxe5 10 0-0 ♞c7 is not worth a pawn) and now:

4a) White's devious idea is revealed after 9...exd6 10 d5 (D).

Then a position akin to one of the main lines of the Four Pawns Attack has been reached. If you compare the



position in the diagram to the one after 1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♟c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0 6 ♟f3 c5 7 d5 e6 8 ♖e2 exd5 9 exd5 you will notice that the sole difference is in the positioning of the black knights: a6 and d7 in the diagram as opposed to b8 and f6 in the 9 exd5 variation. One may argue that the knight on a6 is better placed than the one on b8, but the knight on d7 is certainly worse off than the one on f6. I doubt whether Black has a better move than 10...♟f6 (10...f5 possibly, but I don't like the look of it) transposing directly into the 9...♟a6 line of the exd5 variation, a line which is supposed to favour White.

4b) 9...cxd4 10 ♟xd4 (10 dxe7? ♞xe7 11 ♟xd4 ♟b6 with ...♜d8 to follow is out of the question for White) 10...♟b6!? 11 0-0 ♞xd6 (11...exd6 12 ♟db5 ♖e6 13 ♟xd6 ♞c7 is a pawn sacrifice which deserves consideration) 12 ♖e3 ♞c5!? (not 12...♜d8? 13 ♟db5! ♞xd1 14 ♜fxd1 ♜xd1+ 15 ♜xd1 ♖e6 16 b3 with a very good ending for White, while 12...♞b4?! intending to grab a pawn is likely to end in heartbreak) 13 ♟e4 ♞c7 14 ♞b3 (14 c5 ♟d5 15

♟b5 ♖c6 16 ♙d4 ♟e3! 17 ♙xe3 ♖xe4 ♣ is a line given by Knaak) 14...♞d8 and now:

4b1) Vokač-Kovalev, Ostrava 1993 continued 15 ♞ad1 ♙d7 16 c5 ♟d5? 17 ♖xd5 ♙c6 18 ♖c4 ♙xe4 19 ♟e6! with advantage to White. However Black should have played 16...♟xc5 after which Knaak gives 17 ♟xc5 ♖xc5 18 ♟b5 ♖f5 19 ♟xa7 ♟c8 20 ♟xc8 ♞axc8 21 ♙b6 ♙e6 22 ♞xd8+ ♞xd8 23 ♖a3 as = but this seems to underestimate Black's chances. After 23...♞d2! 24 ♙f3 ♞xb2 Black is much better as 25 ♖xe7 loses to 25...♙f8 followed by 26...♞xb6 and 27...♙c5+.

4b2) Knaak proposes instead 15 ♟b5 ♖c6 16 ♟xa7 ♖xe4 17 ♙f3 (17 ♖xb6 ♞d6 when 18 ♖b3 ♞xa7 19 ♙f3 ♖xe3+ wins for Black and 18 ♙f3 ♞xb6 { 18...♖xc4 transposes to '4b223' } 19 ♙xe4 ♞e6! 20 ♟xc8 ♞xe4 21 ♟b6 ♞d8 looks at least slightly better for Black) and now:

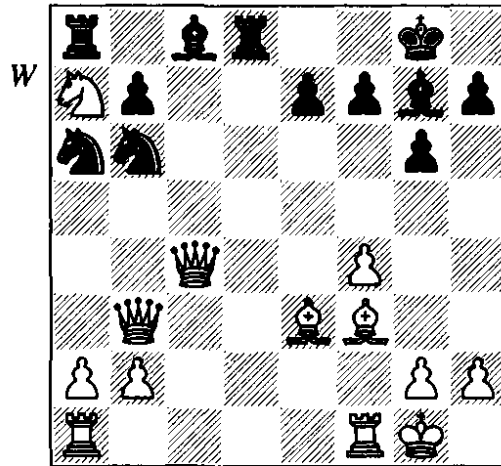
4b21) He continues 17...♖xe3+ 18 ♖xe3 ♙d4 19 ♖xd4 ♞xd4 20 ♟xc8 ♞xc8 21 ♙xb7 ♟b4 (White also retains winning chances after 21...♞cxc4 22 ♙xa6 ♞c2 23 ♞f2 ♞xf2 24 ♟xf2 ♞d2+ 25 ♟f3 ♞xb2 26 a4) 22 ♙xc8 ♟xc8 23 b3 ♟d6 ±.

4b22) However, Knaak doesn't consider 17...♖xc4 (D), which appears to equalize the game.

For example:

4b221) 18 ♙xb6? ♙d4+.

4b222) 18 ♟xc8 ♞axc8 19 ♖xb6 ♟b4!? 20 ♞ac1 (after 20 ♙xb7 ♞b8 21 ♞ac1 ♖d3 22 ♞fd1 { 22 ♙f2 ♟d5 appears to be favourable for Black } 22...♖xd1+ 23 ♞xd1 ♞xd1+ 24 ♟f2,



the solid move 24...♞d7 gives Black good winning chances) 20...♖xc1+ 21 ♞xc1 ♞xc1+ 22 ♟f2 ♟d3+ 23 ♟g3 (23 ♟e2 ♞d6! followed by ...♞e1+) 23...♞cc8 with unclear play. Black should aim to play ...e5 to expose the white king.

4b223) 18 ♖xb6 ♞d6 with a further branch:

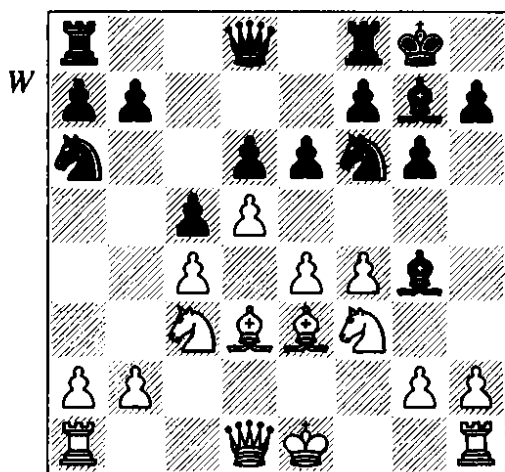
4b2231) 19 ♞fc1 (19 ♞ac1 gives Black the option of 19...♖xa2, which is probably quite good as 20 ♖b5 ♙d7 21 ♖xb7 ♞b8 looks very suspect for White) 19...♞xb6 (19...♖d3 is met by 20 ♞d1! and 19...♖e6 20 ♖b3 ♙xb2 21 ♞xc8+ ♞xc8 22 ♟xc8 ♙xa1 23 ♟xd6 exd6 24 ♖xe6 fxe6 25 ♙xb7 ♟c5 26 ♙c6 leaves Black with some work to do) 20 ♞xc4 ♙e6 21 ♙xb6 (21 ♞c2 ♞b4!) 21...♙xc4 22 ♞c1 (after 22 ♞e1, 22...e6 23 b3 ♙d5 24 ♙xd5 exd5 25 ♞e7 looks like an edge for White, so Black should probably play 22...♙e6 and if 23 b3 then 23...♟b4 gives active play; note that ♙xb7 is always met by ...♞b8) 22...♙xa2 23 ♙xb7 ♞b8 24 ♞c8+ ♞xc8 25 ♟xc8 ♟b4 26 ♟xe7+ ♟h8 and as White can't save his pawn on b2 it's time to agree a draw.

4b2232) 19 ♖b3 ♗xb3 20 axb3 ♜d3 (the simplest path to equality) 21 ♘xc8 ♜xc8 22 ♙xb7 (22 ♙f2 ♜xb3) 22...♞b8 23 ♙xa6 ♜xe3 with a level ending.

7 ... e5

7...♙g4 is an important alternative. White now has:

1) 8 ♙e3 c5 9 d5 e6 (D):

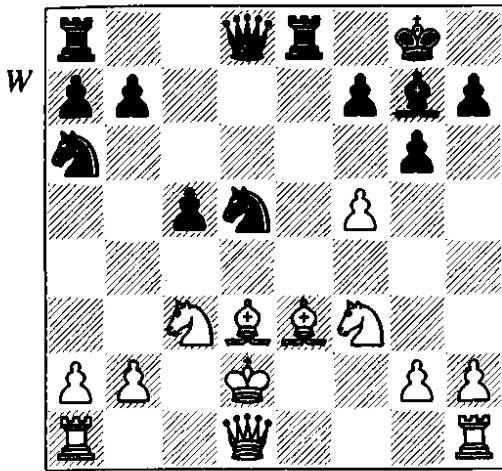


1a) Vaiser-Gallagher, Suhr 1990 continued 10 0-0 exd5 11 exd5 (11 cxd5 ♞e8 places the White centre under a lot of pressure, e.g. 12 h3 ♙f5! 13 e5 ♙xd3 14 ♗xd3 dxe5 15 fxe5 ♘b4) 11...♞e8 12 ♙d2 ♗d7! (it's important to be able to meet h3 with ...♙f5) 13 a3 ♘c7 14 b4?! cxb4 15 axb4 b5! (in order to protect his strong point on d5 White would like to play b3 but it's too late for that now) 16 ♞a5 a6 17 ♗b3 ♙xf3! 18 ♞xf3 ♘g4 19 ♘d1 (Vaiser avoided 19 ♘e2 on account of 19...♘xd5 20 cxd5 ♗a7+ 21 ♙h1 ♘f2+ 22 ♞xf2 ♗xf2 but White may be able to defend after 23 ♗d1) 19...bxc4 20 ♙xc4 ♘b5 21 ♙xb5 axb5 22 h3 ♘f6 23 ♘f2 ♗b7 ♞.

1b) During the post-mortem of the above game Vaiser thought that

10 dxe6 would have been better, meeting 10...♙xe6 with 11 f5 and also preferring White's structure after 10...fxe6. Indeed in *ECO* he gave 10 dxe6 fxe6 11 0-0 as ±, which rather excited me as I had found a massive improvement for Black. I didn't have long to wait until the pleasant San Bernardino tournament where I once again found myself facing Vaiser with the black pieces. The morning was spent fine tuning my novelty and lunch was then taken in a confident state. Afterwards, I decided to take in some alpine air and as I strolled around admiring the mountain peaks who should suddenly join me but... Vaiser. To my horror he started complaining about his health and then made me what he thought to be a very generous draw offer. When I hesitated he took offence and exclaimed "You don't think I'm going to play the Four Pawns, do you? It's going to be ♘f3 and g3 and you'll never beat me in a million years". So, I accepted his offer and five years later I still haven't got to play my novelty and, unfortunately for me, I'm so bad at keeping secrets that I can't stop myself from sharing it with you. The point is that after 10 dxe6 ♙xe6 Black doesn't have to worry about 11 f5 (the threat of ...♘g4 means that Black is also well-placed after other moves) as he has a powerful piece sacrifice in 11...♙xf5!! 12 exf5 ♞e8. Now with 13 ♗d2 or 13 ♗e2 losing to a combination of ...♘g4 and ...♙h6, White must defend his bishop with 13 ♙d2 when Black can blow open the centre

with 13...d5! 14 cxd5 (no choice as 14...d4 and 14...dxc4 were threatened) 14...♞xd5 (D) and now:



1b1) 15 ♞xd5 ♞xd5 16 ♞b3 ♞ad8! 17 ♞xd5 (17 ♙g5 is met by 17...c4) 17...♞xd5 catches White in a deadly pin (18 ♚e2 just exchanges one deadly pin for another deadly pin and loses to 18...♙h6). A combination of ...♞ed8, ...♞b4 and ...c4 is going to win Black his piece back with a winning position.

1b2) 15 ♙g5 ♞a5 (15...♞xc3 16 bxc3 ♞d7 is tempting but I can't find anything against 17 ♚c2!) when White has several defensive tries:

1b21) 16 ♞b3 c4! 17 ♙xc4 (on 17 ♞xc4, 17...♞ac8 is not so clear on account of 18 ♞ae1!, but 17...♞xc3 18 bxc3 ♞ac8 wins easily) 17...♞c5 18 ♞c2 ♞e4+ 19 ♚c1 ♞dxc3 20 bxc3 and Black has a monstrous attack. One way to win is 20...♞ac8 21 ♞b3 ♞xc3+ 22 ♞xc3 ♙xc3, but there may be even better.

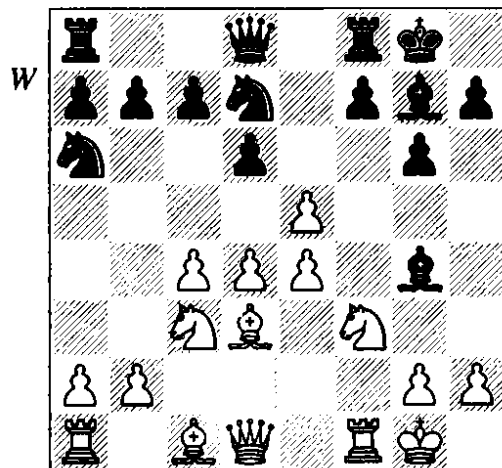
1b22) 16 ♞c1 ♞ab4 looks very good for Black, for example 17 ♞b3 ♞xd3 18 ♚xd3 ♞b4+ 19 ♚d2 ♞ad8+! 20 ♙xd8 ♞xd8+ 21 ♞d5 ♙h6+ 22 ♚d1 ♞xd5 wins while 17

♙c4 is strongly met by 17...♞b6 when Black has similar ideas based on ...♞ad8+, e.g. 18 ♞b3 ♞ad8+ 19 ♙xd8 ♞xc4+ 20 ♞xc4 ♞xd8+ and wins.

1b23) 16 f6 may delay the attack for a move or two but it doesn't alter the fact that the white king is stuck on open files in the middle of the board. After 16...♞xf6 I can't see anything resembling a defence for White: 17 ♞a4 is met by 17...♞e4+! and after 17 ♚c1 ♞ad8 there seems to be no defence against ...c4, while 17 ♞b3 c4! (17...♞ad8) 18 ♙xc4 (18 ♞xc4 ♞ac8 19 ♞b3 ♞c5) 18...♞e4+ 19 ♚c2 ♞b4+ 20 ♚b1 ♞xg5 21 ♞xg5 ♞f5+ also loses. Perhaps these variations are not the whole story but I have faith in the black attack.

2) 8 0-0 and now Black has a choice:

2a) 8...e5 (the most common continuation but it's safer to employ the move-order of variation '2b') 9 fxe5 ♞d7 (D) (9...dxe5 10 d5 ±) and now, apart from 10 ♙e3 c5 11 d5 transposing to '2b', White has a couple of interesting possibilities:



2a1) 10 ♖e2 ♗xf3 (10...dxe5 11 d5 looks a little better for White) 11 gxf3 c5 (11...dxe5 12 d5 ±) 12 exd6 cxd4 (12...♗xd4+ 13 ♖h1 ♗f6 14 f4 ♗xd6 15 e5 is good for White) 13 ♘d5 ♘ac5 14 ♖h1 b6 15 ♗f4 with a clear advantage to White, Blokh-V.Ivanov, Moscow Ch 1992. He didn't take long to finish Black off either: 15...d3 16 ♗xd3 ♗xb2 17 ♗h6 ♖e8 18 ♘e7+ ♖h8 19 f4 ♘f6 20 e5 ♘d3 21 ♗xd3 ♗xa1 22 ♗g5 ♘g4 23 ♘xg6+ fxg6 24 ♗xd8 1-0.

2a2) 10 ♗e1 is the latest word, after which Black has:

2a21) 10...c5 11 ♗g5! (to make this move possible is one of the main points behind ♗e1) 11...♗a5 12 ♗h4 ♗xf3 13 ♖xf3 with very good attacking chances for White. Belov gives 13...cxd4 14 ♘d5 dxe5 15 ♘e7+ ♖h8 16 ♖h3 h5 17 ♗g4, but fails to spot 16 ♗xh7+! ♖xh7 17 ♖h3+ ♗h6 18 ♗xh6 ♘f6 19 ♗d2+ +-.

2a22) 10...♗xf3 11 gxf3! dxe5 (11...c5 12 d5 ♘xe5 13 ♗e2 f5 14 f4 ♘d7 15 exf5 is clearly better for White according to Belov) 12 d5 ♘ac5 13 ♗c2 a5 14 ♗e3 ♗e7 15 ♖h1 with an edge for White, Hubert-Belov, Porz 1995.

2a23) 10...dxe5 11 d5 ♘dc5 12 ♗b1 (12 ♗e2) 12...c6 13 ♗e3 cxd5 14 ♘d5 (14 cxd5 looks more natural) 14...♘e6 15 ♗g3 ♗xf3 16 ♗xf3 ♘d4 with a double-edged game, Sutter-Gallagher, Bern 1995, but as this was in a quickplay event it is perhaps best not to take much notice of it.

2b) 8...♘d7 when White can try:

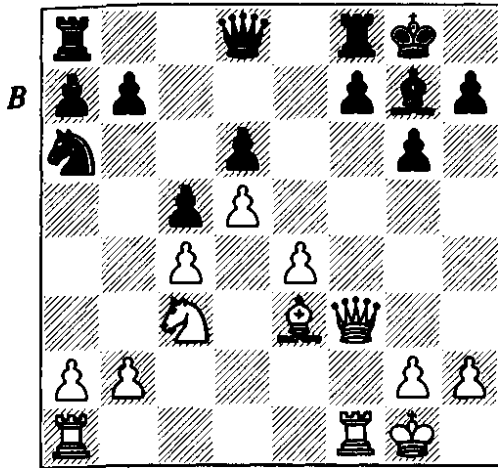
2b1) 9 d5 c6 10 ♗e3 ♘ac5 11 ♗c2 ♗b6 12 ♖b1 ♗b4 13 ♗b3 ♘xb3 14 ♗xb3 a5 with a decent game for Black, Khan-Panzer, Budapest 1993.

2b2) 9 ♗e2 is interesting since 9...e5 10 fxe5 transposes to '2a' and 9...c5 10 d5 looks quite good for White. Perhaps Black should play 9...♗xf3!? before committing himself in the centre. 10 gxf3 would be quite strange now while 10 ♗xf3 e5 11 dxe5 (11 fxe5 c5! is now quite good for Black as he will obtain control over ...e5) 11...dxe5 12 f5 is probably the critical line. An interesting idea for Black is 12...♘b6, intending to meet 13 b3 or 13 ♗e2 with 13...♗d4+! whilst after 13 ♗xd8 ♖fxd8 14 b3 c6 the position looks very comfortable.

2b3) 9 ♗e3 e5 10 fxe5 c5! 11 d5 (11 exd6 obviously loses to 11...cxd4 and on 11 dxc5 both 11...dxe5 and 11...dxc5 look entirely playable) 11...♘xe5 12 ♗e2 ♘xf3+ (less good are 12...♗xf3 13 gxf3! f5 14 f4 ♘f7 15 exf5 gxf5 16 ♖h1, Petronić-Belov, Pravets 1989 and 12...♗d7 13 ♗d2 ♘c7 14 ♗g5 ♗e8 15 ♖h1 a6 16 a4 b6 17 ♗e1 f6 18 ♗d2 ♘f7 19 ♗d3, as in Arkhipov-Belov, Moscow 1987, with the better chances for White in both cases) 13 ♗xf3 (now 13 gxf3 ♗h3 14 ♖f2 f5 is quite good for Black) 13...♗xf3 14 ♗xf3 (D) with a branch:

2b31) 14...♘b8? 15 ♗f4! and the knight will never make it to its dream home on e5.

2b32) 14...♗e7 15 ♗f4 ♘c7 (the lines 15...♗e5 16 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 17



♖f6 and 15...f5 16 **♖g3 ♜ad8** 17 **♞b5** are both good for White) 16 **♖g3!** (ensuring that ...**♙e5** doesn't equalize at once) 16...**♜ad8** 17 **♚h1!** (17 **♙g5 ♙d4+** 18 **♚h1 f6** is level) 17...**♙d4!** 18 **♞ae1 f6** 19 **♞e2 ♙e5** 20 **♞g1! a6** (20...b5 could have been played without preparation) 21 **♞f3 ♙xf4** 22 **♖xf4 b5** 23 **b3 ♜b8?** (according to Ftačnik Black could still have held the balance by blocking the queenside with 23...b4 and then carrying out the torturous manoeuvre ...**♞c7-a8-b6-d7-e5**; now White is able to crash through on the queenside) 24 **b4! cxb4** 25 **c5! ♜bd8** 26 **♞d4** (perhaps 26 **c6** is even stronger) 26...**dxc5** 27 **♞c6 ♖d7** 28 **♞xd8 ♖xd8** 29 **♞c1!** (forcing the c-pawn to advance deprives Black of an outpost on d4 for her knight) 29...c4 30 **d6 ♞e6** 31 **♖d2 ♖d7?** (the last chance was 31...a5) 32 **♖xb4 ♞g5** 33 **♖c5 ♜e8** 34 **♞ce1! ♜e6** 35 **e5 f5** 36 **a4!** (White plans to invade on the a-file) 36...**♞f7** 37 **axb5 axb5** 38 **♖c7! ♖xc7** 39 **dxc7 ♜c6** 40 **e6 ♜xc7** (40...**♞d6** loses to 41 **♞d1**) 41 **e7 ♞d6** 42 **e8 ♖+** **♞xe8** 43 **♞xe8+ ♚f7** 44 **♞b8 c3** 45 **♚g1** 1-0 Zsu.Polgar-Chiburdanidze, St Petersburg 1995.

2b33) 14...**♞b4** has been suggested by Arkhipov and deserves an outing. Black is now threatening to get his knight to one of the key central squares via d3 or c2 so White must play 15 **♖e2** whereafter 15...**♖e7** 16 **a3** (perhaps White can improve on this move but the knight does have annoyance value on b4) 16...**♞a6** 17 **♙f4 ♙e5** (Black should still avoid 17...**♞b8**, this time on account of 18 **♞b5 ♜d8** 19 **♖f3!** when White is threatening to capture on d6) looks roughly equal. Basically, Black's knight foray has prevented White from getting his queen to g3.

8 fxe5

Just as with the bishop on e2 (Game 1) accepting the pawn promises White nothing: **8 dxe5 dxe5** and now:

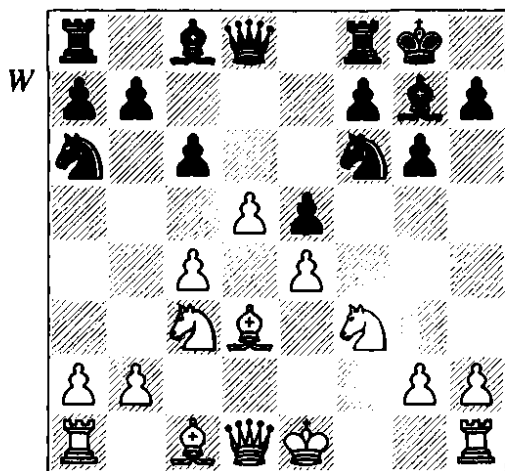
1) **9 fxe5 ♞c5!** 10 **♙c2** (10 **exf6 ♞xd3+** 11 **♚e2 ♞xc1+** 12 **♞xc1 ♖xf6**) 10...**♖xd1+** 11 **♚xd1 ♞g4** 12 **♚e2 ♞xe5** with a long-term positional advantage for Black.

2) **9 ♞xe5 ♞c5** (9...**♞g4** 10 **♞xg4 ♙xg4** 11 **♙e2 ♙xc3+** 12 **bxc3 ♖xd1+** 13 **♙xd1 ♙xd1** 14 **♚xd1 ♜ad8+** 15 **♚c2 ♜fe8** is supposed to give compensation according to Sokolin but I find this line slightly less convincing) 10 **♙e3** (10 **♙c2 ♖xd1+** 11 **♚xd1 ♞g4!** 12 **♞xg4 ♙xg4+** 13 **♚e1 ♙xc3+** 14 **bxc3 ♞xe4** 15 **♙xe4 ♜fe8** is a little better for Black) 10...**♞xd3+** (10...**♙g4** 11 **♙e2 ♙xe2** 12 **♖xd8 ♜fxd8** 13 **♙xc5!** is good for White) 11 **♖xd3 ♖xd3** 12 **♞xd3 ♜e8** (not 12...**♞xe4** 13 **♞xe4 ♜e8** 14 **♞e5 f6** 15 **♞xf6+ ♙xf6** 16 **♙d4 ±**) 13 **e5** (much safer

is 13 ♖e5 with an equal game after 13...♗g4 14 ♖xg4 ♙xc3+ 15 bxc3 ♙xg4 16 e5 f6 as 17 ♙d4 can be met by 17...c5) 13...♗g4 14 ♙g1 ♙f5 15 ♖c5 b6 16 ♖a6 ♙xe5!? 17 fxe5 ♗xe5+ 18 ♖d2 ♗d8+ 19 ♖d5 c6 is an extremely sharp variation given by Knaak, who considers this position to be unclear. We can take this line just a little further: 20 h3 cxd5 (20...♖f6 or 20...♖h6 are met by 21 ♙d4) 21 hxg4 dxc4+ 22 ♖c3 ♙xg4 and here Black has three pawns, a more co-ordinated position and a continuing attack for his piece (of course 23 ♖xc4 loses to 23...♙e2+).

8 ... dx e5
9 d5 c6 (D)

9...♖c5 (quite effective with the bishop on e2) 10 ♙c2 a5 is suspect as Black won't be able to prevent a3 and b4 in the long term.



10 0-0

Alternatively 10 ♙g5 with two lines:

1) 10...♗b6 and now:

1a) 11 ♗d2?! ♖c5 12 ♗b1 cxd5 13 cxd5 ♖g4! (Sokolin) and White can't prevent ...f5 as 14 h3 is refuted by 14...♖f2!.

1b) 11 ♖a4! renders the above line redundant. After 11...♗a5+ 12 ♙d2 ♗d8 13 0-0 cxd5 14 cxd5 ♖e8 15 ♙xa6 bxa6 16 ♙b4 ♖d6 17 ♗c1 White had the better chances in Garcia Palermo-Danailov, Alicante 1992, although 11...♗b4+ 12 ♙d2 ♗e7 must be a slight improvement for Black.

2) 10...h6! 11 ♙xf6 (11 ♙h4 ♗b6 is now fine for Black as after 12 ♖a4 ♗b4+ there is no 13 ♙d2) 11...♙xf6 12 ♗b1 ♖c7 (perhaps there are more dynamic moves available in the position, 12...♗b6 for example, but one shouldn't grumble about the text as Black will feel very comfortable once the knight has arrived on d6) 13 0-0 cxd5 14 cxd5 ♖e8 15 ♖h1 a6 (the knight doesn't take up immediate residence on d6 as this would allow White to exchange it off with ♖b5, which would be a rather sad end to such a lengthy manoeuvre) 16 ♗b3 ♖d6 17 ♖a4 ♙g7 18 ♖b6 ♗b8 19 ♗be1 ♙g4 with a roughly level game, Garcia Palermo-Comas, Ibercaja 1992.

10 ... cxd5
11 cxd5 ♖e8
12 ♗e2

On 12 ♙xa6, Black has the reply 12...♗b6+.

12 ... ♖c5
13 ♙g5

It is somewhat surprising that Vaiser allowed the exchange of his bishop as Black seems to have comfortable equality afterwards. Knaak suggests 13 ♙c2 b6 14 b4 ♙a6 15 b5 ♙b7 which he assesses as ±. Perhaps this is true as White does have a

passed pawn and a potentially decisive outpost on c6, but these assets will be very difficult to exploit; the d-pawn is firmly blockaded and the white knights are currently in no position to occupy c6. Black should complete his development with a combination of ...♖c8, ...♘d6, and ...♙d7 (or ...♙e7) and then, depending on the circumstances play ...f5 or perhaps double his rooks on the c-file. I am sure that the majority of King's Indian players would happily settle for this position.

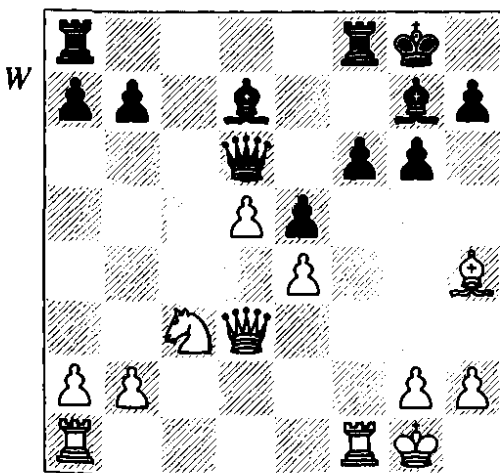
13 ... f6
14 ♖h4

White has developed his bishop in this fashion in order to hold up ...f5.

14 ... ♘xd3
15 ♙xd3 ♘d6
16 ♘d2

Planning to exchange the strong knight on d6 but this is all very time-consuming.

16 ... ♘d7
17 ♘c4 ♙c7
18 ♘xd6 ♙xd6 (D)



White's passed pawn is compensated for by the bishop pair, the probable first use of the c-file and the

chance to play the undermining move ...f5.

19 ♙f2 f5
20 a4 a6
21 b4 ♖ac8!

Of course Black doesn't play 21...♙xb4 which would allow White to infiltrate to the seventh rank after 22 ♖ab1, but instead prepares a bishop-activating exchange sacrifice. Perhaps White should not accept the offer although this would be inconsistent with the move b2-b4 which has, incidentally, already compromised White's position on the queenside.

22 ♙c5 ♖xc5
23 bxc5 ♙xc5+
24 ♔h1 ♙d4!

This is probably what White had underestimated or overlooked.

25 ♖f3

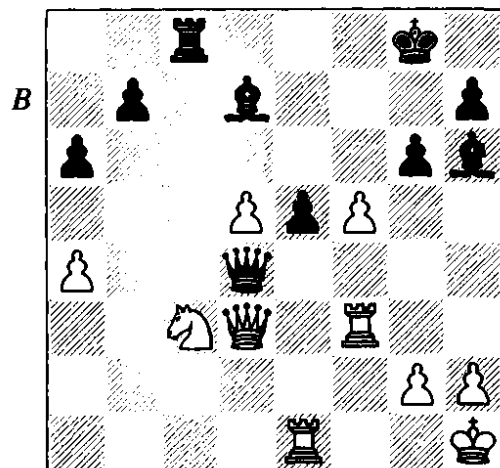
25 ♖ad1 ♖c8 is very uncomfortable for White as 26 ♖f3 would lose to 26...♖xc3!.

25 ... ♖c8
26 ♖e1 ♙h6!

With the awkward threat ...♙d2.

27 exf5 (D)

and a draw was agreed, somewhat prematurely on Black's part.



30 *The Four Pawns Attack*

After 27...♙xf5 28 ♖xd4 exd4 29 ♗d1 (29 ♗e2 ♜e8!) Black's powerful pair of bishops and dangerous d-pawn provide ample compensation for the exchange. He can also consider 27...♙d2!?, as I can't see

anything better for White than 28 ♖xd4 exd4 29 ♗e4 ♙xe1 30 ♗f6+ ♚f7 31 ♗xd7 (31 fxg6+ hxg6 32 ♗xd7+ ♚e7 is similar) 31...gxf5 32 ♜xf5+ ♚e7 33 ♗e5 ♚d6 with what should be a won endgame for Black.

2 h3 Systems

An early h3 by White in the King's Indian has two main ideas behind it. The first is to pave the way for ♖e3 as Black will now be unable to harass the bishop with ...♘g4. Of course White quite often plays ♖g5 but he still needs to be ready to meet ...h6 with ♖e3. The second idea is to support the advance g4, which can be played to gain space on the kingside or to dissuade Black from playing ...f5. Although these intentions are similar to those of White in the Sämisch the two variations lead to quite different types of game. In h3's favour is that it keeps open the option of ♘f3 and doesn't weaken the dark squares as much as f3, whilst on the other hand White does nothing to support the all-important e4-square.

My main recommendations are centred around Black playing the traditional ...e5 in conjunction with the modern ...♘a6 which has, in fact, been the main line for many years. The struggle is often very sharp and both players can attack on either wing (the centre is almost always blocked). White tends to win games by taking control over the crucial e4-square, whilst Black's victories usually occur when he achieves the advance ...e5-e4 or when White has neglected the safety of his king (or a combination of both).

The material is split up as follows:
Game 4: White delays, or omits altogether, ♘f3.

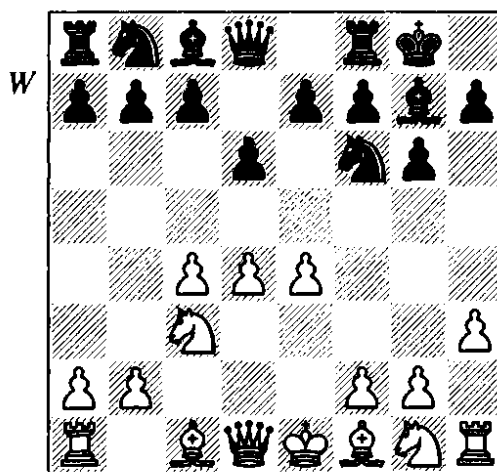
Game 5: White plays h3, ♘f3 and ♖e3.

Game 6: White plays h3, ♘f3 and ♖g5.

Game 7: A fashionable line from the Petrosian System.

Game 4
Paunović – Kupreichik
Yugoslavia 1992

1	d4	♘f6
2	c4	g6
3	♘c3	♖g7
4	e4	d6
5	h3	0-0 (D)



6 ♖g5

After 6 ♖e3 ♘a6 there are three lines:

1) 7 ♘f3 e5 8 d5 transposing to Game 5.

2) 7 g4 e5 8 d5 ♘c5 (8...c6 is an alternative) 9 f3 a5 10 ♖d2 c6 11 dxc6!? bxc6 12 0-0-0 ♘b7 13 c5 d5 14 exd5 (14 g5 d4) 14...♘xd5 15 ♙c4 (15 ♘xd5 cxd5 16 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 17 ♗xd5 ♙e6) 15...♘xe3 16 ♖xe3 ♖e7 with a roughly level game, Gomez-Topalov, Seville 1992.

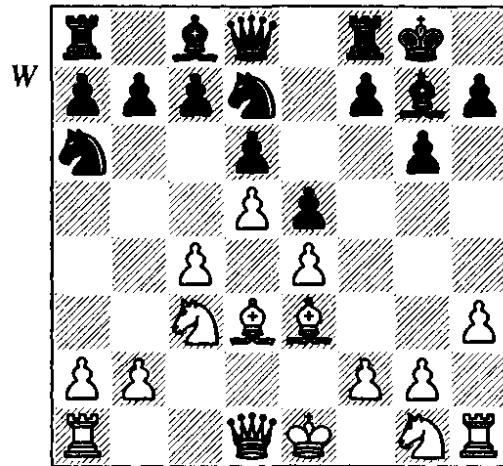
3) 7 ♙d3 (more common) 7...e5 8 d5 and now we shall examine a couple of possibilities for Black:

3a) 8...♘h5 9 g3 ♖e8 (or 9...♘c5 10 ♙e2 ♘f6 11 ♖c2 a5 12 0-0-0 a4 13 g4, Knaak-Piket, Hamburg 1991, and now instead of the immediate 13...♘e8, Piket suggests 13...♙d7, delaying ...♘e8 until ♘f3 has been played as it will then be more difficult for White to advance on the kingside) 10 ♙e2 ♘f6 11 ♘f3 ♘d7! (more logical than 11...♙d7 which has been played a few times; ...♘h5-f6-d7 may look like a waste of time but White has only gained ♙d3-e2 and g2-g3, which don't really help him) 12 g4 f5 13 a3 ♘ac5 14 gxf5 gxf5 15 ♘d2 ♘f6 16 ♙xc5 dxc5 17 ♖c2 ♘xe4 18 ♘dxe4 fxe4 19 ♘xe4 ♙f5 20 ♙d3 ♖h5 21 ♖e2 ♖h4 with an active game for Black, I.Sokolov-Van Wely, Groningen 1994. It will be difficult for White to maintain both his blockade on e4 and material equality.

3b) 8...♘d7 and now (D):

3b1) 9 ♘ge2 ♘dc5 10 ♙c2 f5 11 exf5 (11 f3 ♙h6) 11...gxf5 12 0-0 f4 13 ♙xc5 ♘xc5 14 f3 is unclear according to Kuzmin.

3b2) 9 g4 ♘dc5 10 ♙b1?! (10 ♙c2) 10...f5 11 exf5 gxf5 12 ♘ge2 ♖h4 13 a3 e4 14 gxf5 ♙xf5 15 ♘d4



♙g6 16 ♙c2 ♘d3+ 17 ♙xd3 ♙xd4! was excellent for Black in Avshalumov-Kupreichik, Blagoveshchensk 1988.

3b3) 9 a3 ♘ac5 10 ♙c2 f5 11 b4 (11 f3 ♙h6) 11...♘xe4 12 ♙xe4 fxe4 13 ♘xe4 ♖h4 14 g4!, Barlov-Kir.Georgiev, is given as better for White by several commentators, but the simple 13...♘f6! promises Black a good game. White is far too underdeveloped to maintain his grip on e4. 14 ♙g5 should be met by 14...♙f5.

6 ... ♘a6

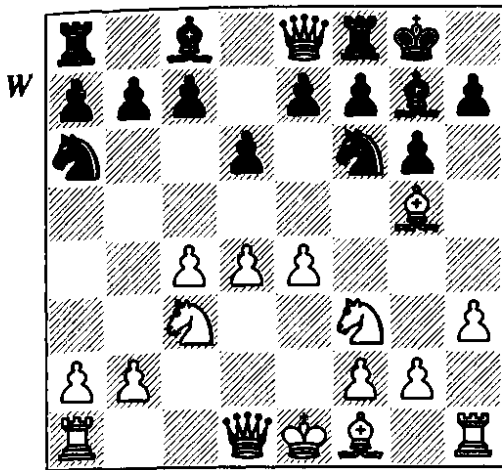
6...c5 is quite popular, but after 7 d5 e6 8 ♙d3 exd5 9 cxd5! we are in the Modern Benoni, which is outside the scope of this book.

7 ♙d3

There are a couple of alternatives, line '1' being the most important:

1) 7 ♘f3 ♖e8! (Black plans 8...e5 but with this tricky move order he can meet 9 d5 with an immediate ...♘h5; it is also possible to play 7...e5 as 8 d5 transposes to game 6 and 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♖xd8 ♗xd8 10 ♘d5 ♗d6 is fine for Black) and now (D):

1a) 8 ♙d3 e5 9 d5 (this falls in with Black's plans, but 9 0-0 didn't



look very impressive in Shabalov-Edelman, New York 1993: 9...♘h5 10 ♖e1 exd4 11 ♘d5 f6 12 ♙c1 c6 13 ♘f4 ♘xf4 14 ♙xf4 ♚d8 15 ♘xd4 f5 with advantage to Black) 9...♘h5 10 g3 f5 11 ♙d2 ♘c5 12 ♙c2 fxe4 13 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 14 ♙xe4 ♘f6 15 ♙c2 e4 with a decisive advantage for Black, Bronstein-Nijboer, Wijk aan Zee 1992. Bronstein can't have been concentrating that day.

1b) 8 ♘d2 is also met by 8...e5 9 d5 ♘h5.

1c) 8 e5 is perhaps more critical but so far experience is limited to one quick draw: 8...dxe5 9 dxe5 ♘d7 10 ♚e2 f6 11 exf6 exf6 12 ♙e3 1/2-1/2 Bykhovsky-Istratescu, Tel Aviv 1994.

1d) 8 g4 can be met by 8...e5 9 d5 ♘d7 transposing to the main game, or perhaps more logically by Burgess's suggestion 8...c5 9 d5 e6 10 dxe6 when Flear-Wood, London 1993 continued 10...♚xe6 11 ♚e2 ♖e8 12 0-0-0 ♘xe4 13 ♘xe4 ♚xe4 14 ♚xe4 ♖xe4 15 ♖xd6 ♖e8 with a comfortable game for Black, while Burgess recommends 10...♙xe6 11 ♚xd6 ♙xg4 12 hxg4 ♘xe4 13 ♘xe4 ♚xe4+ 14 ♙e2 ♖fe8 but doesn't

take 15 ♙e3 into account [*yes indeed, this line was somewhat over-optimistic! – editor's note*]. I would prefer 11...h6 12 ♙e3 ♖d8 13 ♚g3 ♘b4 14 ♖c1 b6 with plenty of compensation for the pawn.

1e) 8 ♚c2 c6!? 9 ♖d1 e5 10 d5 cxd5 11 cxd5 ♙d7 12 ♘d2 ♖c8 13 ♙xa6 bxa6 14 ♚b3 ♙b5 15 ♚a3 ♘h5! (Miles clearly enjoys himself when he plays the King's Indian) 16 g3 f6 17 ♙e3 f5 18 ♙xa7 ♖f7 19 ♙b6 ♙d3 20 ♙a5?! (maybe White could have tried 20 ♚xd6) 20...♚e7 21 h4 ♚a7 (threatening ...♘xg3) 22 ♖h2 ♘f6 23 ♚xd6 ♘g4 24 ♚e6 ♖xc3 0-1 Comas-Miles, Benasque 1995.

2) 7 g4 seems to be played only against me. 7...c5 is obviously an option but both my games have gone 7...e5 8 d5 ♚e8 (8...c6 might be better) 9 ♘ge2 and now:

2a) The game Suba-Gallagher, Kuala Lumpur 1992 went 9...♘h8 (the idea is to be ready to play ...♘g8 and ...f5 at a moment's notice) 10 ♚d2 c6 11 ♘g3 cxd5 12 cxd5 ♙d7 13 ♙e2 ♘c5 14 f3 ♘g8! 15 h4 f5 16 gxf5 gxf5 17 exf5 ♙xf5 18 ♘ce4 (18 ♘xf5) 18...♙xe4 19 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 20 fxe4 ♚a4! 21 ♙d3 ♘f6 22 ♚e2 ♘d7 with an unclear position. White has the bishop pair but his king is exposed.

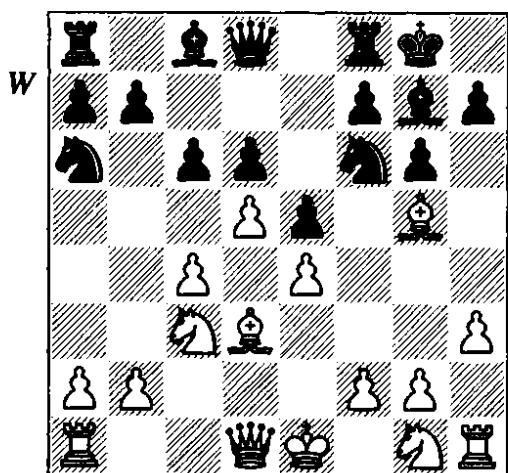
2b) In Cramling-Gallagher, Biel 1994 I opted for 9...c6, not because it was a prepared improvement but because I'd completely forgotten the Suba game (a large percentage of novelties are born this way). Play continued 10 ♘g3 cxd5 11 cxd5

♙d7 12 ♙d3 ♘c5 (12...b5 13 a4 ♘c7 14 axb5 ♘xb5 15 ♙xb5 ♙xb5 16 ♚f3!, winning a piece, is a nasty trap and typical for this line) 13 ♙c2 a5 14 a4 ♚d8! (it was around about here that I felt that 8...c6 may have been better) 15 ♖b1 ♖c8 16 ♚f1 ♘a6!? 17 ♙d3 ♘c5 18 ♙b5 (my opponent was of the opinion that I had made a serious strategic error in permitting the exchange of light-squared bishops, whilst I believed the exchange to be in my favour as it brought me some much-needed space; I must confess that the transparent trap, 18 ♚g2 ♘xd3 19 ♚xd3 ♘xd5!, helped to tip the scales in favour of 16...♘a6) 18...♙xb5+ 19 axb5 ♚d7 with a roughly equal position.

2c) I should also point out that I refrained from the natural 9...♘d7 on account of 10 ♘g3 ♘dc5 11 a3! f5 12 b4 ♘xe4 13 ♘cxe4 fxe4 14 ♘xe4 when White is much better.

7 ... e5
8 d5 ♚e8

Black unpins, the first step towards playing ...f5. The alternative is 8...c6 (D), with the following possibilities:



1) 9 ♚d2 (probably not very accurate as White neither wants to castle long nor play ♙h6) 9...cxd5 10 cxd5 ♘c5 11 ♙c2 a5 12 ♘ge2 ♙d7 13 g4?! (13 a4 would have maintained equality) 13...b5 14 ♘g3 b4 15 ♘d1 ♚b6 16 ♙h6 ♙xh6 17 ♚xh6 ♚h8! (intending to drive the queen away with ...♘g8; a common ploy in the King's Indian) 18 ♘h5? (this just opens more lines in Black's favour) 18...♘xh5 19 gxh5 ♚d8! 20 hxg6 fxg6 21 ♘e3 ♚f6 22 0-0-0 a4 0-1 Steinbacher-Brunner. Of course White is losing but it was a little unsporting to resign before any blood was drawn.

2) 9 ♘ge2 ♘c5 10 ♙c2 ♚b6 (10...a5 is also possible) 11 0-0 cxd5 12 cxd5 (12 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 13 ♘xd5 ♚d8 14 b4 ♘e6 15 ♘xf6+ ♚xf6 16 ♚d2 b6! is nothing for Black to worry about according to Kasparov) and now:

2a) 12...♙d7 13 ♖b1 a5 14 ♚d2 (14 ♙e3 transposes to Petursson-Züger, Horgen 1994 when 14...♖fc8 15 f3 ♚d8 16 a4 ♚e8 17 g4 b5 was about equal, but 16 a3 may give White an edge) 14...♖fc8 15 ♚h1 ♚d8 16 a3 a4 17 ♖be1 ♖a6 18 ♘c1 ♚a5 19 ♙b1 ♘h5 20 ♘d3 ♘b3 21 ♚e3 f6 22 ♙h6 g5 23 ♙xg7 ♚xg7 with equality, Ivanchuk-Kasparov, Horgen 1994.

2b) Kasparov believes that White has no more than a draw after 12...♚xb2. He gives 13 ♖b1 ♚a3 14 ♘b5 ♚xa2 15 ♖a1 (15 ♘xd6 ♚a5 and 15 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 16 ♖a1 ♚c4 {16...♚b2 17 ♘ec3!}) 17 ♘xd6 ♚b4 are both OK for Black) 15...♚b2 16

$\mathbb{R}b1$ (16 $\mathbb{C}ec3$ $\mathbb{C}fxe4!$) 16... $\mathbb{W}a2$ 17 $\mathbb{R}a1 =$.

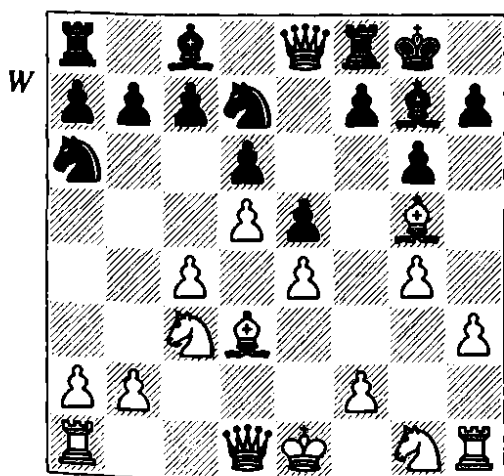
9 g4

Alternatively:

1) 9 $\mathbb{C}ge2$ $\mathbb{C}d7$ 10 0-0 f5 11 exf5 gxf5 12 f4 e4 13 $\mathbb{R}c2$ $\mathbb{W}h5!$ (the f4 blockade is very common in the King's Indian, but here the bishop on g5 is misplaced) 14 $\mathbb{C}d4$ $\mathbb{W}xd1$ 15 $\mathbb{R}axd1$ $\mathbb{C}b4$ 16 $\mathbb{R}b1$ $\mathbb{C}c5$ with a good game for Black, Cramling-Gallagher, Bern 1992 (although 1-0 after a mammoth 124 moves, 47 of which were spent mating with bishop and knight against king).

2) 9 a3 $\mathbb{C}c5$ 10 $\mathbb{R}c2$ a5 11 $\mathbb{W}f3?!$ $\mathbb{C}fd7$ 12 $\mathbb{C}b5$ $\mathbb{C}a6$ 13 g4 $\mathbb{C}dc5$ 14 $\mathbb{C}e2$ (14 b4 axb4 15 axb4 $\mathbb{C}xb4!$ is good for Black) 14...f5 15 $\mathbb{W}g2?!$ fxe4 16 $\mathbb{R}xe4$ $\mathbb{C}xe4$ 17 $\mathbb{W}xe4$ $\mathbb{R}d7!$ 18 a4 $\mathbb{C}c5$ 19 $\mathbb{W}e3$ $\mathbb{R}xb5$ 20 axb5 e4! and the rest was carnage, Chernin-Gallagher, Basle rpd 1995. What I like about these h3 systems is that when things go wrong for White they go really wrong.

9 ... $\mathbb{C}d7$ (D)



10 $\mathbb{C}f3$

In the same Basle quickplay mentioned above, Chernin played 10 a3

here against Cvitan. After 10... $\mathbb{C}dc5$ 11 $\mathbb{R}c2$ f5 12 b4 $\mathbb{C}xe4$ 13 $\mathbb{C}xe4$ fxe4 14 $\mathbb{R}xe4$ Black should have brought his knight back into play at once with 14... $\mathbb{C}b8$.

After 10 $\mathbb{C}ge2$, Kupreichik proposed 10...f5 11 exf5 e4 12 $\mathbb{C}xe4$ gxf5 13 gxf5 $\mathbb{C}e5$ but, as Howell pointed out, this is a load of garbage; 14 f6! is very good for White so long as after 14... $\mathbb{W}h5$ he plays 15 $\mathbb{C}d4!$ and not 15 fxg7?!, which allows mate in three. Instead of 10...f5 I suggest 10... $\mathbb{C}dc5$ 11 $\mathbb{R}c2$ f5.

10 ... f5
11 gxf5 gxf5
12 $\mathbb{R}g1$

12 exf5 is very strongly met by 12...e4!.

12 ... $\mathbb{C}h8$
13 $\mathbb{C}h4$ $\mathbb{C}dc5$
14 $\mathbb{R}c2$ fxe4
15 $\mathbb{C}xe4$ $\mathbb{C}xe4$
16 $\mathbb{R}xe4$ $\mathbb{C}c5$
17 $\mathbb{W}c2$

The bishop must be protected as retreating it would allow 17...e4!.

17 ... $\mathbb{C}xe4$

As Kupreichik points out 17... $\mathbb{R}f4$ is met by 18 $\mathbb{R}xh7$ and 17... $\mathbb{W}h5$ 18 $\mathbb{R}xh7!$ $\mathbb{W}xh7$ 19 $\mathbb{C}g6+$ $\mathbb{C}g8$ 20 $\mathbb{C}e7+$ leads to a draw.

18 $\mathbb{W}xe4$ (D)
18 ... $\mathbb{W}h5!?$

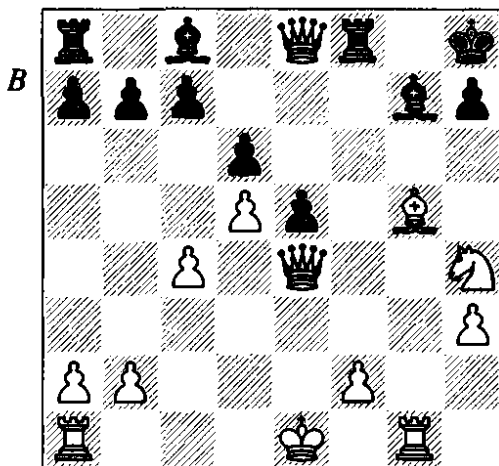
18... $\mathbb{W}f7$, intending 19... $\mathbb{R}f5$, also looks quite good.

19 $\mathbb{R}c1$

With the intention of swinging his queen's rook to the kingside.

19 ... $\mathbb{R}d7$

An attacking player like Kupreichik would be considering ... $\mathbb{R}f4$ at



each turn – here it was rejected because of 20 ♖xf4 ♜xh4 21 ♜g2 – but it is clear that it, and other attacking ideas, will be more effective once the queenside is developed.

20 ♖c3 ♖ae8

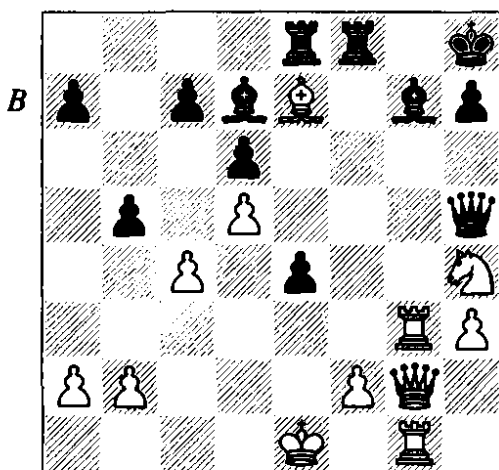
21 ♖cg3 b5!

21...♖f4 22 ♜g2! is less good as Black can't play ...e4.

22 ♜g2 e4!

23 ♖e7 (D)

After something like 23 ♖e3 ♖xb2 (or maybe 23...♖f6) White has no killer blow.



23 ... e3!

24 f3

Completely hopeless, but so are 24 ♖xf8 exf2+ 25 ♖f1 ♜e2 mate, 24 ♖xg7 exf2+ 25 ♜xf2 ♖xe7+! 26

♖xe7 ♖xf2 and 24 fxe3 ♖xe7 25 ♖xg7 ♜xh4+ 26 ♖d1 ♜h5+ 27 ♖c1 ♜e8! 28 ♜g5 ♖ef7!. Black would have to work a bit harder after 24 ♖xe3 but Kupreichik points out that 24...♖xb2! should be decisive. It's not so much the pawn that is important but the possibility of playing ...♖c3+, e.g. 25 ♖xf8 ♖c3+!, 25 ♜e4 ♖f7! and 25 ♜g3 ♖g8! 26 ♜h2 ♖c3+!

24 ... ♖xe7

And White resigned as after 25 ♖xg7 ♜xh4+ there is no good square for his king.

If a game is lost so quickly without any clear error then it must mean that the whole strategy is wrong. I have serious doubts about White's combination of g4 and ♖f3 in this game.

Game 5

Chernin – J.Polgar

New Delhi 1990

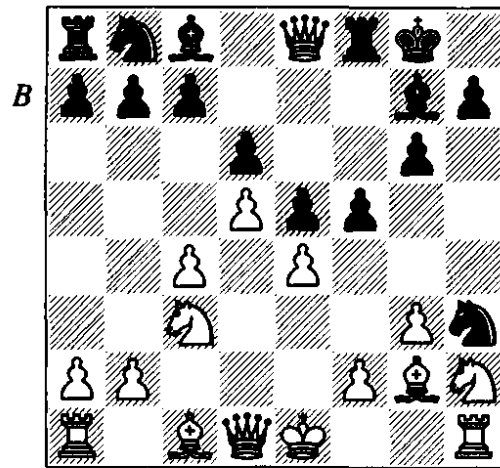
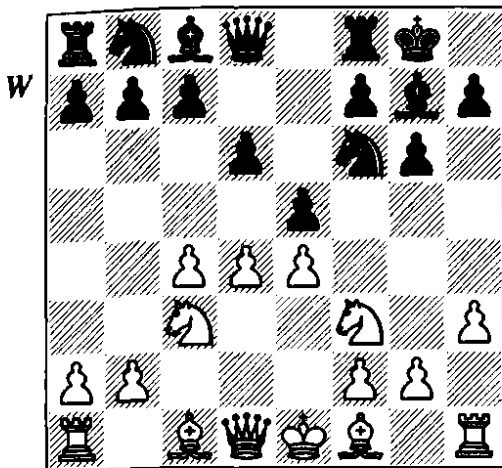
- 1 d4 ♖f6
- 2 c4 g6
- 3 ♖c3 ♖g7
- 4 e4 d6
- 5 h3 0-0
- 6 ♖f3

Of course 5 ♖f3 0-0 6 h3 is the same.

6 ... e5 (D)

It is equally possible for Black to play 6...♖a6 7 ♖e3 e5, which has the advantage of avoiding the boring ending considered in the next note and gives him the option of meeting 7 ♖g5 with 7...♜e8.

7 d5



7 **dxe5** **dxe5** 8 **Wxd8** **Wxd8** is no more dangerous for Black here than in the Classical Variation (see Chapter 5). In fact the extra h3 White has gained seems to make no difference at all to the line recommended there. For example, Cvetković-Zontakh, Arandjelovac 1993 continued 9 **g5** **Ne8** 10 **d5** **Qxd5** 11 **cxd5** **c6** 12 **Qc4** **cxd5** 13 **Qxd5** **Qd7** 14 **Qd2** **Qc5** 15 **Qc4** **Qf8** 16 **0-0** **Qe6** 17 **Qxe6** **Qxe6?** 18 **Qf6** with an edge for White, but if the reader turns to page 89 he will find that 17...**Wxe6!** gives Black a good game in the position with the pawn on h2, so it surely does here as well.

7 ... **Qa6**

7...**Qh5** has received a bad press over the years, the general opinion being that Black should wait for **Qe3** before playing ...**Qh5** as then the f-pawn will have something to latch onto. The supposed antidote runs 8 **Qh2!** **Wf8** 9 **Qe2** **Qf4** 10 **Qf3** **f5** 11 **g3!** **Qxh3** 12 **Qg2** (D) and now:

1) 12...**fxe4** 13 **Qe3** **Qf5** (13...**Wf7** 14 **Wd2** **h6** 15 **Qxe4** is also good for White) 14 **Qg4!** with advantage to White, Bagirov-Vukić, Banja Luka 1976.

2) 12...**f4** 13 **Qf3** **g5** (13...**Qxf2!**? 14 **Qxf2** **Qg4** certainly deserves further investigation and could well put this line back in business; Vilela-Frolov, Havana 1991 continued 15 **Wxh7** **Qxf3** 16 **Wxg7+** **Qxg7** 17 **Qxf3** **Qd7** but perhaps more serious tests of Black's sacrifice can be found) 14 **Wxh3** (14 **Qxh3** **g4** 15 **Qg2** comes to the same) 14...**g4** 15 **Wf1** **gxf3** 16 **Wxf3** **Wg6** 17 **Qh3**, Vaganian-Chiburdanidze, USSR 1981, 17...**Qxh3** 18 **Wxh3** **Qd7** 19 **Qd2** **Wf7** 20 **0-0-0** with an edge for White.

8 **Qe3**

8 **Qg5** is the next game.

8 ... **Qh5**

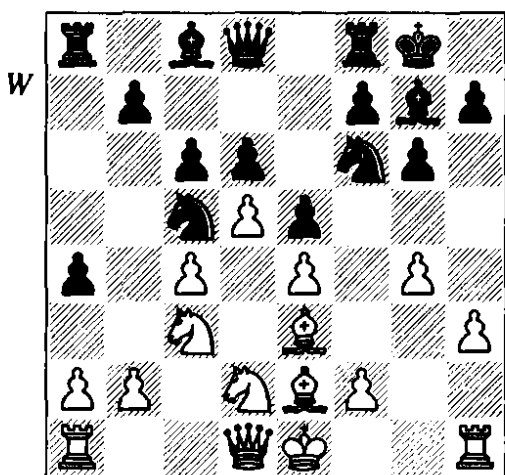
8...**Qc5** 9 **Qd2** **a5** is an alternative plan, with the following possibilities:

1) 10 **a3** (recommended by *ECO*) 10...**Qfd7!**? (but they don't consider this, nor 10...**a4**, which is an interesting pawn sacrifice) 11 **b4** **f5!** 12 **exf5** **gxf5** 13 **bxc5** **f4** 14 **Qde4** **fxe3** 15 **fxe3** (15 **f3** **Qxc5** is also very good for Black) 15...**Qxc5** 16 **Wc2** **Qh6** with an advantage bordering on the decisive, Verat-Hébert, Paris 1995.

2) 10 **Qe2** **Qe8** (10...**c6**) 11 **g4** (11 **0-0** **f5** 12 **exf5** **Qxf5** 13 **Qf3** **Wf7**

14 ♖e1 b6 = Gligorić-Byrne, Leningrad IZ 1973; presumably Black refrained from 12...gxf5 on account of 13 f4) 11...f5 12 gxf5 (12 exf5 gxf5 13 ♖g1 ♗e6!?) is suggested by Knaak and is a familiar motif in these lines) 12...gxf5 13 exf5?! (13 ♖c2 is better) 13...♗xf5 14 ♗f3 ♗g6 with an active game for Black, Cramling-Djurhuus, Reykjavik 1995.

3) 10 g4 c6 (it seems logical to dissuade White from castling long once he has played g4; on the other hand 10...♗e8 11 ♖e2! f5 12 gxf5 gxf5 13 0-0-0 is promising for White) 11 ♗e2 (intending h4) 11...a4!?! (this is Dolmatov's patent) and now (D):



3a) 12 ♗xc5 dxc5 13 ♗xa4 ♖a5 (13...♗h6 was Dolmatov's original recommendation) 14 ♗c3 ♗h6 15 ♖c2 ♗d7 16 ♖g1 1/2-1/2 Bagirov-Dolmatov, Lucerne Wcht 1993. Black's dark-squared grip gives him enough compensation for the pawn. I imagine Dolmatov has analysed this in some depth so keep a look-out for his next game as it will no doubt prove more informative than this one.

3b) 12 b4 axb3 13 axb3 ♖xa1 14 ♖xa1 ♗a6 15 ♗f1?! (15 ♖b1 c5 =)

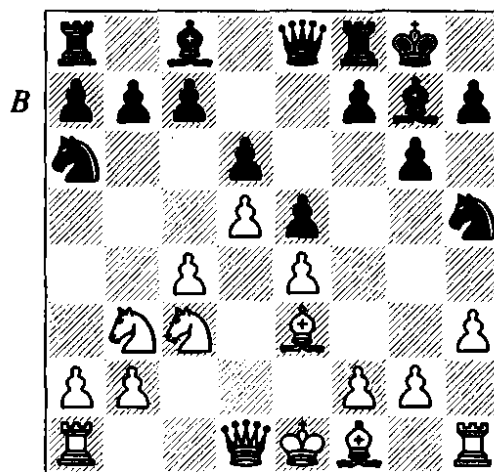
15...♗e8 16 ♗g3 ♗f6! 17 ♖c1 ♗h4 18 ♗d3 ♗g7 with good play for Black, Shabalov-Dolmatov, Philadelphia 1993. As in line '3a', the white king will struggle to find a safe home.

3c) An important point behind Dolmatov's idea is that 12 h4?! ♖a5! leaves White facing the unpleasant threats of 13...♗xe4 and 13...a3.

9 ♗h2

White usually takes some defensive measures against the threat of ...f5 and this strange-looking knight move has become the main line. The alternatives are:

1) 9 ♗d2 ♖e8 10 ♗b3 (9 ♗d2 looks more natural than 9 ♗h2 but the problem is that after 10 ♗e2 ♗f4 11 ♗f3 Black has 11...♗d3+) and now (D):



1a) 10...f5 11 c5 with a further branch:

1a1) 11...f4 12 ♗d2 ♗xc5 13 ♗xc5 dxc5 14 b4!?! (14 ♗e2 ♖f6! 15 ♗b5 ♖e7 16 ♗a5 f3! 17 ♗xf3 ♗f4 18 ♗xc7 c4 ♢ Markov-Sirota, corres 1987) 14...cxb4 15 ♗b5 f3 16 g4 ♗g3 17 ♗xc7 ♖f7 18 ♗xa8 ♗xh1

is unclear according to Koopman. I suspect that White is better, though, as his knight is much more likely to escape than Black's. Black should probably look for an improvement earlier; one possibility, instead of the flashy 16...♘g3, is 16...♘f4 as 17 ♘xc7 fails to 17...♘g2+ 18 ♙xg2 fxc7 19 ♖g1 ♗f7; therefore White should play 17 ♗xf3 and the best I can see for Black is 17...♘e6! followed by 18...♘d4 with a mess that could easily work out in his favour.

1a2) 11...♘f4!? 12 cxd6 (12 g3 ♘h5 with ...f4 to follow) 12...cxd6 13 exf5 gxf5 14 ♙xf4 exf4+ 15 ♙e2 (Burgess points out 15 ♗e2 ♘b4 16 0-0-0 ♘xa2+! 17 ♘xa2 ♗a4) 15...f3! 16 gxf3 ♙d7 17 ♖g1 ♘h8 18 ♗d2 ♖c8 19 0-0-0 ♘b4 20 ♘b1 f4 21 ♘d4 ♗e5! ♢ Koopman-Burgess, Biel 1987.

1b) 10...b6!? may be a tempo well spent. Klimenok-Lybin, corres 1993 continued 11 ♙e2 ♘f4 12 ♙f3 f5 13 0-0 (13 h4!?) 13...♘c5 14 ♘xc5 bxc5 15 ♖e1 ♗f7 16 ♖b1 a5 with a comfortable game for Black.

2) 9 ♘g1 ♗e8 10 ♙e2 and now:

2a) 10...♘f4 11 ♙f3 f5 12 g3 (12 ♘ge2 ♗e7 13 exf5 was Vilela-Pecorelli, Havana 1991, when Vilela gives 13...gxf5 14 ♙xf4 exf4 15 0-0 ♙e5 ♢) and now Burgess's suggestion 12...♘b4 looks like fun. After 13 gxf4 fxe4 14 ♘xe4 exf4 White has a couple of bishop moves:

2a1) 15 ♙d2 ♙f5!? (15...♘d3+ 16 ♘f1 ♘xb2 17 ♗b3 ♘xc4 18 ♗xc4 ♙xa1 regains some material but after 19 ♗xc7 Black has lost the initiative) 16 ♙xb4 ♙xe4 17 ♗e2

(17 ♘f1 ♙xb2) 17...♙xf3 18 ♘xf3 ♗a4 19 ♗d2 a5 20 ♙c3 ♖ae8+ 21 ♘f1 ♗xc4+ 22 ♘g2 ♖e2 23 ♗d1 ♙xc3 24 bxc3 ♖f5! and Black will pick up a third pawn leaving the situation unclear.

2a2) 15 ♙c1 ♙f5 16 ♗e2 ♗a4! with ...♖ae8 to follow looks awkward for White.

2b) It would be interesting to see an example of 10...f5!?. I'm not sure if White can do better than 11 exf5 ♘f4 12 ♙xf4 (with the knight on h2 White can castle here with a roughly level game) 12...exf4 13 fxc6 ♗xc6 14 ♘f1 ♘c5 15 ♘f3, transposing to the note to move 15 in the main game.

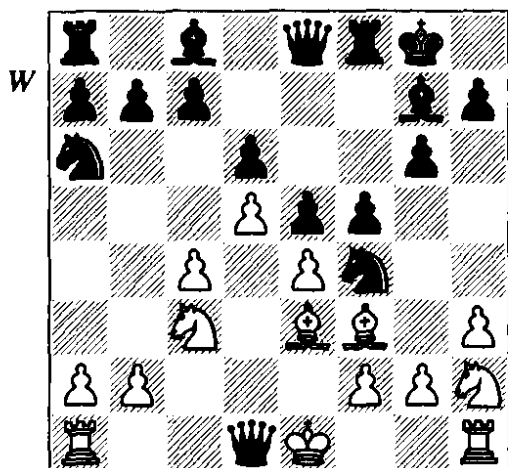
3) 9 a3 is a different approach whereby White hopes to lock the knight on a6 out of the game. However, it seems risky to ignore Black's kingside play. Flear-Cvitan, Bern 1993 continued 9...f5 (Piket once played 9...♗e8 but it is unnecessary to support the knight on h5 since 10 exf5 gxf5 11 ♘xe5 ♗e8! wins material for Black as ...f4 is coming) 10 b4 ♘h8!? (Cvitan had previously played 10...♘b8) 11 ♖c1 c5 12 dxc6 bxc6 13 ♙e2 fxe4 14 ♘xe4 d5 15 cxd5 cxd5 16 ♙g5 ♗d7 17 ♘c5 ♘xc5 18 ♖xc5 ♙b7 and Black's centre was very impressive.

9 ... ♗e8

10 ♙e2 f5

10...♘f4 11 ♙f3 f5 (D) is an important alternative:

1) 12 h4!?, intending to hit the knight with g3 (12 g3? ♘xh3 13 ♙g2 f4 doesn't work here) disappeared from practice after the game



Kavalek-Kasparov, Bugojno 1982: 12...♖e7 13 g3 ♘b4! (a typical piece sacrifice for this variation) and now:

1a) 14 ♖b3? was the move Kavalek actually played, but is 'boldness bordering on suicide' (Kasparov): 14...♘fd3+ 15 ♖e2 f4 16 ♙d2 and now 16...♘xf2! was best. Kasparov's analysis runs 17 ♖xf2 ♘d3+ 18 ♖g2 fxg3 19 ♖xg3 ♖f4! 20 ♙xf4 (20 ♘g4 h5! 21 ♘e3 ♙f6! 22 ♘g2 ♙xh4+ 23 ♖xh4 ♖g5+ is winning) 20...exf4+ 21 ♖g2 ♖xh4 22 ♖hf1 ♙h3+ 23 ♖h1 ♙xf1 24 ♖xf1 ♘f2+ 25 ♖xf2 ♖xf2 26 ♖xb7 ♖f8 with advantage to Black.

1b) Alternatively 14 gxf4 loses to 14...fxe4! 15 ♘xe4 (15 fxe5 ♘d3+ 16 ♖e2 ♖xf3! 17 ♘xf3 ♙g4 18 ♘xe4 ♘xe5 -+) 15...exf4 16 ♙d2 ♘d3+ 17 ♖e2 ♘c5.

1c) White had to try 14 0-0 against which Kasparov proposes 14...g5.

2) 12 0-0 ♘c5 (12...g5 13 ♖e1 ♖g6 14 ♘f1 ♖h6 15 exf5 ♙xf5 16 ♙g4 ♙g6 17 ♘g3 left White with a firm grip on the central light squares in Anastasian-A.Kuzmin, Blagoveshchensk 1988; 12...♖e7 and 12...b6 have also been played but these are

less active than 12...♘c5) 13 exf5 (13 ♖c2 a5 14 ♖ad1 b6 15 ♖fe1 ♖f7, Guseinov-A.Kuzmin, USSR 1991, 16 exf5 ♙xf5 17 ♘e4 with equality; 13 ♙xc5 dxc5 14 ♖d2 ♙d7 is unclear) 13...gxf5 (13...♙xf5 was recommended by Kuzmin) 14 ♙xf4 exf4 15 ♖e1 ♖d8 16 ♖d2 ♖g5 17 ♘b5 ♘e4! 18 ♖d3 ♖f7 19 ♖e2? (19 ♘d4 ♘c5 20 ♖d1 ♙e5 21 b4 ♘e4 22 ♖c1 would have given White some queenside counterplay) 19...♙e5 20 ♘d4 ♘c5 21 ♖d2 ♖g7 22 ♖h1 ♖h8 23 ♖g1 ♖f6 24 ♖d1 ♙d7 with an excellent position for Black, Nikčević-Miles, Toulouse 1994.

11 exf5

Other moves don't seem to pose any problems for Black, e.g.:

1) 11 ♙xh5 gxh5 12 ♘f3 fxe4 13 ♘d2 ♖g6 14 ♖e2 ♙f5 15 0-0-0? (15 a3 is better) 15...♘b4 with a clear advantage to Black, Anastasian-Nevelev, Minsk 1990.

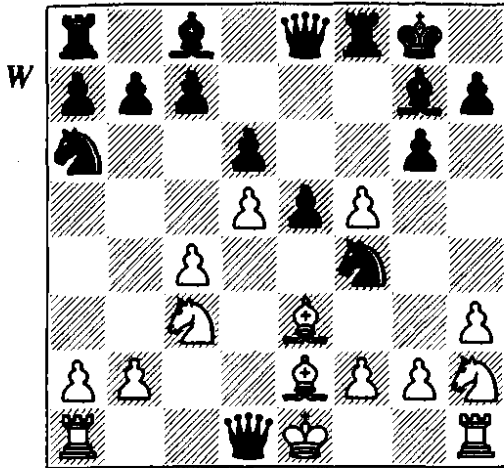
2) 11 ♙f3 ♘f6 (11...♘f4 transposes to the note to Black's 10th move) 12 g4 fxe4 13 ♙xe4 b5! with good play for Black, Berkovich-Reeh, Budapest 1991.

3) 11 0-0 ♘f6 12 exf5 gxf5 13 f4 exf4 14 ♙xf4, Gheorghiu-Cooper, Novi Sad OL 1990 and now Gheorghiu gives 14...♘c5! 15 ♘b5 ♖f7 16 ♘d4 ♘ce4 as unclear.

11 ... ♘f4 (D)

12 ♙xf4?

More prudent is 12 0-0, when C.Hansen-Kasparov, Tåsinge 1990 continued 12...♙xf5 13 ♖e1! (intending ♘f1-g3 and eyeing up the black queen) 13...♖f7 14 ♘f1 (14 a3 ♘c5 15 ♙xc5 dxc5 16 ♙f3 e4! gave



Black active play in Ibragimov-Kruppa, Kherson 1991) and now:

1) Kasparov sacrificed unsoundly with **14...♙xh3?** and after **15 gxf3 ♖xh3+ 16 ♔g2 ♜xf2 17 ♚b1!** (not allowing ...♚f5) **17...e4 18 ♜g3!** (threatening ♚f1) **18...♚d7 19 ♙xf2 ♚xf2+ 20 ♔xf2 ♚h3 21 ♚xe4! ♞c5** (21...♚f8+ 22 ♙f3 ♚h2+ 23 ♔f1 ♚xg3 24 ♔e2 ♚h2+ 25 ♙g2 ♞c5 26 ♚g4 and Black has at most a few swindling chances) **22 ♚e7 ♙e5** (22...♚f8+ 23 ♚xf8+) **23 ♚g1 ♚f8+ 24 ♔e1 ♙xg3+,** the improvement **25 ♚xg3! ♚xg3 26 ♔d2** would have defused the attack.

2) **14...♞b4** is better and after **15 ♜g3:**

2a) The game Flear-McDonald, Dublin 1991 continued **15...♙d3 16 ♚d2 e4?! (16...♙xe2 ±) 17 ♞cxe4 ♞xe2+ 18 ♞xe2 ♙xe4 19 ♚xb4 ♙xg2 20 ♔xg2 ♚f3+ 21 ♔h2 ♚ae8 22 ♚d2 ♙e5+ 23 ♜g3 h5 24 ♚e2 ♚xe2 (24...h4 25 ♚xf3 ♚xf3 26 ♔g2) 25 ♚xe2 h4 26 ♚ae1 hxg3+ 27 fxf3 ♚f3 28 ♙f4** and Black's entertaining play had only succeeded in bringing him a lost ending.

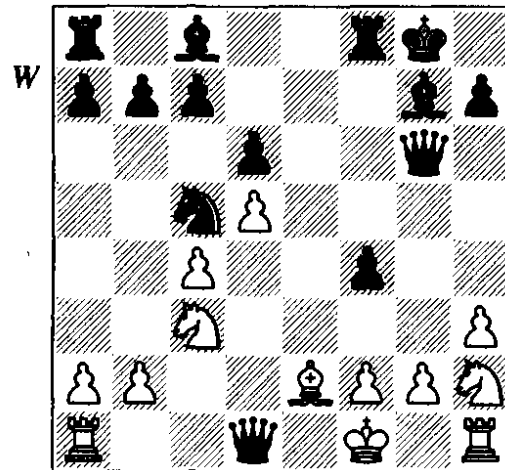
2b) Kasparov gives the variation **15...♞c2 16 ♙xf4 ♞xe1 17 ♞xf5**

gxf5 18 ♙d2 ♞xg2 19 ♔xg2 ♔h8 as unclear.

12 ... exf4
13 fxf6 ♚xg6
14 ♔f1

14 ♙g4 ♙xg4 15 hxg4 ♚ae8+ is equally unpleasant for White.

14 ... ♞c5 (D)



For a pawn White has forfeited his right to castle, parted company with his important dark-squared bishop and opened files on the kingside for the black rooks; a heavy price by anyone's standards. In addition, with the extra pawn defending his king it will only be in the ending that he can hope to derive any benefit from it. The odds are heavily stacked against him arriving there with the rest of his army intact.

15 ♚c1

White gives himself the option of playing **b4**. Wegner-Cramling, Hamburg 1991 went instead **15 ♞f3 ♙d7 16 ♔g1 ♔h8 17 ♔h2 ♚g8 18 ♚g1 ♚h6 19 ♚d2 ♙f6** (threatening ...♚xg2+) **20 ♔h1 a5 21 ♚ae1 ♚g6 22 ♞h2 ♚ag8** (Black has calmly and purposefully built up her position) **23 ♙f3 ♙f5 24 ♞e4 ♞xe4 25 ♙xe4**

♙xe4 26 ♖xe4 ♙e5! (26...♗xh3 27 ♗xf4 is not so clear, but now it is definitely a threat) 27 ♖ee1 (27 ♖f3 ♖xg2!) 27...♗g7 28 f3 ♙d4 and Black won the exchange and eventually the game. A model performance from Black.

15 ... ♙f5
16 ♖f3 ♙f6!

Preventing ♖h4 and clearing the g-file for the rooks.

17 ♖g1?!

As in Wegner-Cramling White plays ♖g1-h2 in order to connect his rooks, but this is very slow. Polgar suggests 17 ♖d4 as an alternative and after 17...♙xd4!? 18 ♗xd4 f3! 19 gxf3 (19 ♙xf3 ♖ae8 20 ♖g1 ♖d3 21 ♖d1 ♖e1!) 19...♖f7 she concludes that Black has a strong attack.

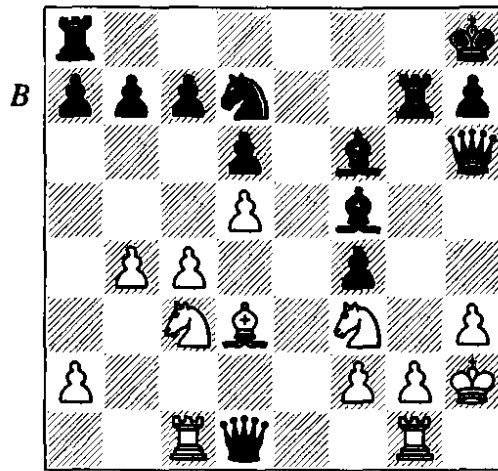
17 ... ♖h8
18 ♖h2 ♖g8
19 ♖g1
19 ♙f1 allows 19...♖d3!
19 ... ♗h6!
20 ♙f1

White digs in, defending his most sensitive spots on g2 and h3. A more carefree move, such as 20 b4, would have led to a similar fate to the one that White soon met: 20...♖xg2+! 21 ♖xg2 ♙xh3.

20 ... ♖g7
21 b4 ♖d7
22 ♙d3? (D)

Suddenly, Chernin can take the suffering no longer and makes a doomed bid for freedom. An understandable reaction as there was not much future in waiting for Black to complete her rather plodding build-up and the only other active-looking

move, 22 ♖d4, loses to 22...♙xd4! 23 ♗xd4 ♖e5 24 ♙e2 f3!.



22 ... ♖xg2+!

Not the sort of opportunity that Judit Polgar is likely to let pass by.

23 ♖xg2 ♙xh3

The rook on g2 has no square (24 ♖g1 ♙f1+) and apart from the mating threats there is the simple threat to play 24...♙xg2 25 ♖xg2 ♙xc3 26 ♖xc3 ♗g7+ picking up the rook. Hence White's reaction.

24 ♖e4 ♖e5!
25 ♖xe5

If 25 ♖xf6, then 25...♙g4+ wins a whole wad of material, while 25 ♖g1 ♙xg2 26 ♖xg2 ♖g8+ 27 ♖f1 ♗h1+ is also immediately decisive.

25 ... ♙xe5
26 ♖g5

26 f3 loses prettily: 26...♙xg2+ 27 ♖xg2 ♖g8+ 28 ♖f1 ♗h1+ 29 ♖e2 ♖g2+ 30 ♖f2 ♖xf2+! 31 ♖xf2 ♙d4+ 32 ♖e2 ♗g2+ 33 ♖e1 ♗f2#.

26 ... ♙xg2+
27 ♖xg2 ♗xg5+
28 ♖f3

Or 28 ♖f1 f3!.

28 ... ♖g8
29 ♖e2

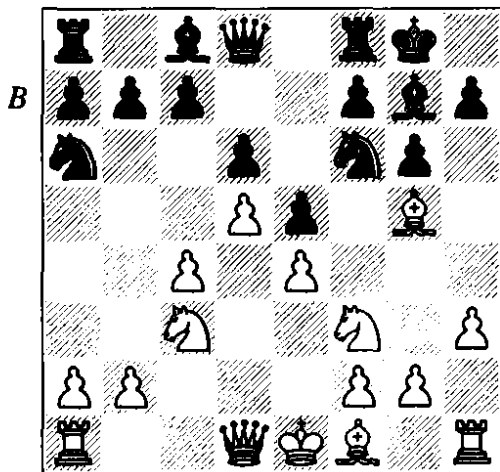
29 ♖e4 ♜g6+ 30 ♖f3 ♜g4+ 31 ♖e4 f3+ is the end.

29 ... f3+
0-1

30 ♖e1 ♖f4 and 30 ♖xf3 ♜g4+ 31 ♖e3 ♖f4+ are the reasons for White's resignation.

Game 6
Raetsky – Gallagher
Hastings 1992/3

- | | | |
|---|---------|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♟f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♟c3 | ♖g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | ♟f3 | 0-0 |
| 6 | h3 | e5 |
| 7 | d5 | ♟a6 |
| 8 | ♖g5 (D) | |



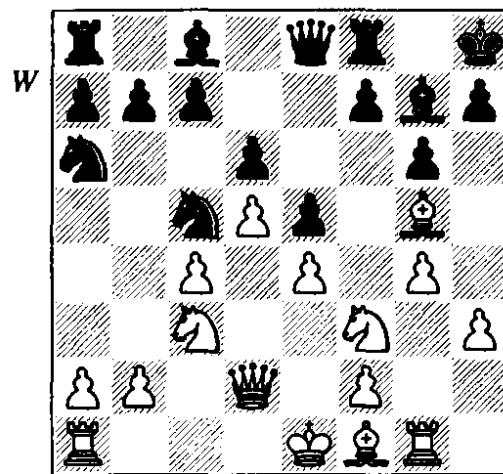
8 ... h6

The other way to unpin, 8...♜e8, is more fashionable. After 9 g4 (otherwise ...♟h5) 9...♟d7 (9...c6!?-Dolmatov) there is:

1) 10 ♜d2 ♟dc5 11 0-0-0 ♖d7 (it looks risky to play ...f5 before connecting the rooks) 12 ♖e2 (12 ♖e3, as played in San Segundo-Illescas, Madrid 1994, should be met

by 12...c6) 12...c6 13 ♖h6 cxd5 14 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 15 ♜xd5 (15 cxd5 b5 is good for Black) 15...♖c6 16 ♜xd6 ♟xe4 17 ♟xe4 ♖xe4 18 ♜he1 ♜fd8! 19 ♜xe5+ ♜xe5 20 ♟xe5 ♟b4! 21 b3 ♟xa2+ 22 ♖b2 ♟b4 23 f3 ♖c2! 24 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 25 ♖c3 a5 with an edge for Black, Anka-Gallagher, Biel 1992.

2) 10 ♜g1 ♖h8 11 ♜d2 ♟dc5 (D) and now:

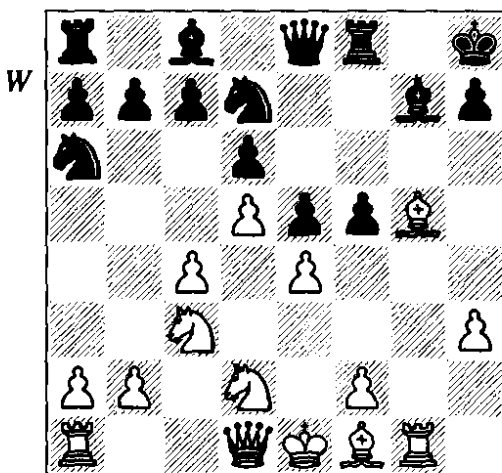


2a) 12 0-0-0 ♖d7 13 h4 f5 (a good rule of thumb is that when White is threatening the asphyxiating h5, it's time to lash out with ...f5) 14 gxf5 gxf5 15 ♖h6 ♖xh6 16 ♜xh6 ♜e7 17 ♟g5 fxe4! (White's position looks more menacing than it actually is; Dolmatov also gives 17...♜f6 18 ♜h5 ♜af8 as ♯) 18 ♟cxe4 ♟xe4 19 ♟xe4 ♜f4 20 ♖d3 ♟b4 21 ♖b1 ♟xa2+ 22 ♖d2 ♖f5 23 ♖e3 San Segundo-Cvitan, Moscow OL 1994, and now instead of 23...♜xh4? 24 ♜g5!, with the point that after 24...♜xg5 25 ♟xg5 White is threatening ♟f7#, 23...♜f8 would be very good for Black.

2b) 12 ♟h4 is presumably motivated by a desire to prevent ...f5 and

a reluctance to commit the king to the queenside where it may come under attack. It is awarded an '!' by Burgess and Hjartarson who both give 12...♗d7 13 ♜b1 ♖a4 14 ♖xa4 ♗xa4 15 f3 ♗d7 16 ♜c1 ± Østestad-Mäki, Haifa Echt 1989. This assessment is perhaps debatable, but anyway Black's play wasn't very convincing. I would prefer 12...c6 and after 13 ♜b1 (13 dxc6 ♜xc6) 13...cxd5 14 cxd5 ♗d7 Black doesn't have to worry about 15 b4 ♖a4 16 ♖xa4 ♗xa4 17 b5 ♖c5 as he can free his bishop with ...a6. Although White can undoubtedly do better than this variation, his underlying problem, king security, is not going to disappear.

3) 10 ♖d2 f5 11 gxf5 gxf5 12 ♜g1 (12 exf5 ♖dc5 13 f6 ♗xf6 14 ♗h6 ♜g6 15 ♗xf8 ♖xf8 16 ♜f3 ♗f5 gave Black plenty for the exchange in Shirov-Badea, Moscow 1991) 12...♖h8 (D) and now:



3a) 13 ♗d3?! ♖dc5 14 ♗b1, Gulko-Hjartarson, Reykjavik 1991, and now 14...fxe4 15 ♖dxe4 ♗xh3 16 ♗e3 ♗f5 17 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 18 ♗xf5 ♜xf5 19 ♗xc5 dxc5 20 ♖e4

♜e7 followed by ...♗h6 gives Black a clear advantage according to Hjartarson.

3b) 13 a3 ♖f6 14 ♜c2 ♖c5 15 ♗e3 ♖cxe4 16 ♖dxe4 fxe4 17 0-0-0 ♗f5 was unclear in Bagirov-Lingnau, Cuxhaven 1994.

3c) 13 exf5 ♖dc5 (13...♜xf5 14 ♖de4 ±) 14 f6 ♗xf6 15 ♗h6 ♜g8 16 ♜xg8+ ♜xg8 17 ♜h5 ♗d7 (San Segundo gives the nice variation 17...♖b4 18 ♖de4 ♖xe4 19 ♖xe4 ♖c2+ 20 ♖d2 ♖xa1 21 ♖xf6 ♜g6 22 ♜xg6 hxg6 23 ♗d3 ♗f5 24 ♗xf5 gxf5 25 ♖c1 when the black pieces are strangely paralysed) 18 0-0-0 ♗e8 19 ♜f5 ♗g7 20 ♗e3 ♗g6 21 ♜g4 ♜f7 with about equal chances, San Segundo-Shirov, Madrid 1994.

9 ♗e3 ♖c5

There are a number of differences created by the black pawn being on h6. One of them is that 9...♖h5 is not so good as in Game 5, as after 10 ♖h2 ♜e8 11 ♜d2 White gains a tempo hitting the h-pawn. Comas-Komljenović, San Sebastian 1991 continued 11...♖h7 12 0-0-0 ♗d7 13 ♖g4 f5 14 exf5 gxf5 15 ♗xh6 (15 ♗d3!? e4 16 ♗c2 is worth considering as 16...fxg4 17 hxg4 is dangerous for Black) 15...♜g6 (15...fxg4 16 ♗d3+ gives White a strong attack) 16 ♗xg7 ♖xg7 17 ♖e3 f4 18 ♖c2 ♗f5 19 ♗d3 ±. Black has some positional compensation in return for the pawn.

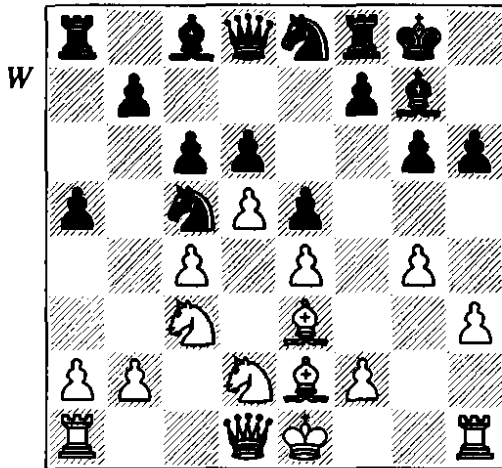
10 ♖d2 a5

11 g4

11 ♗e2 is a more solid approach and this actually transposes to Game 7.

I haven't seen any examples of **11 a3** here, but I suggest that Black continues as in Game 6 (11...♞fd7 12 b4 f5) although it won't be quite as devastating as he doesn't have ...♞h6.

11 ... c6
12 ♞e2 ♞e8!? (D)



Playing on both wings may seem to be over-ambitious and although it worked well in this game many players may prefer line '2' below. If Black does wish to play with ...♞e8 he should wait for ♞e2 so that the dangerous plan of ♞e2 and 0-0-0 is no longer available to White. Alternatives for Black are:

1) 12...a4. Recommended with the pawn on h7, but as one of the main points behind the pawn sacrifice is to activate the bishop via h6, it is obviously less effective here.

2) 12...♞d7. Conversely, this is one of the situations where it seems favourable for Black to have a pawn on h6 as White doesn't have the annoying reply g5. Instead, there is:

2a) 13 f3 ♞b8 14 ♞f1 (14 ♞b3 b6 15 ♞d2 cxd5 16 cxd5 a4 17 ♞xc5 bxc5 was pleasant for Black in Grivas-Ehlvest, Komotini 1992) 14...h5

(14...cxd5 15 cxd5 b5 looks worth a try) 15 ♞g5 cxd5 16 cxd5 ♞b6 17 ♞d2 ♞h7 18 ♞h4 ♞f6 19 ♞xf6 1/2-1/2 Grivas-Smirin, Komotini 1992.

2b) 13 h4?! a4 14 g5 (14 ♞xc5 dxc5 15 ♞xa4 cxd5 16 ♞xc5 dxe4 is promising for Black according to Nunn; White may pick up a pawn but his king has no home) 14...hxg5 and now:

2b1) 15 hxg5 ♞h7 16 ♞g1 (16 ♞f3 ♞a5) 16...♞a5 17 ♞c1 cxd5 18 cxd5 b5 with a healthy initiative for Black, Zeller-Poldauf, Berlin 1993.

2b2) 15 ♞xg5 ♞a5 16 ♞b1 cxd5 17 cxd5 b5 18 a3 ♞fb8 with an excellent game for Black, Chiburdanidze-Nunn, Linares 1988.

13 ♞b3

13 h4 is clearly an alternative to which Black should reply 13...f5.

13 ... cxd5!

Perhaps White missed that Black would be able to support his knight on c5 with ...b6. Of course 14 ♞xc5 is now met by 14...d4!

14 cxd5 b6

15 h4 f5

16 gxf5 gxf5

17 exf5 ♞xf5

18 ♞xc5 bxc5

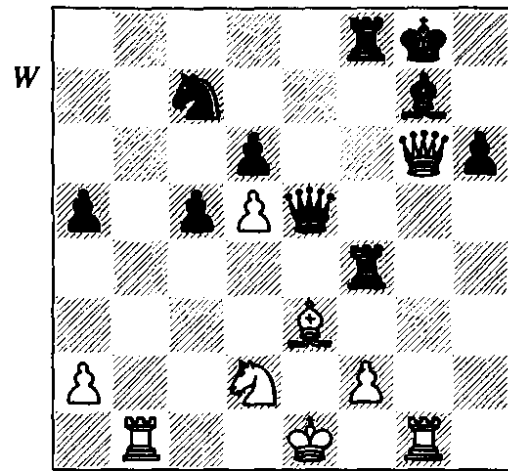
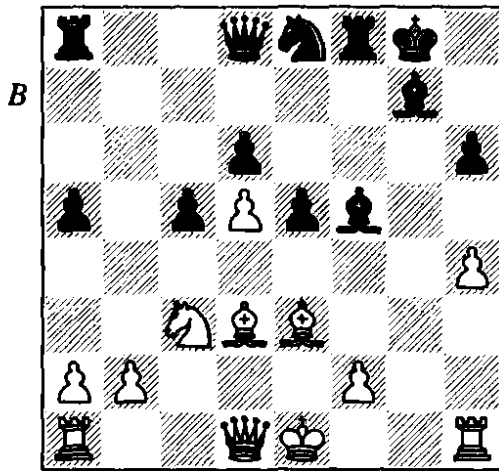
19 ♞d3 (D)

19 ... e4!

Naturally White is not going to be allowed to calmly blockade the e4-square.

20 ♞xe4

After 20 ♞xe4 ♞xc3+ 21 bxc3 Black can choose between 21...♞xe4 22 ♞g4+ ♞g7 23 ♞xe4 ♞f6 and 21...♞f6, both of which offer plenty of compensation for the sacrificed



pawn. During the game I intended the latter.

- | | | |
|----|------|-------------|
| 20 | ... | ♖b8! |
| 21 | ♘g3 | ♙xd3 |
| 22 | ♙xd3 | ♖f6! |

Combining defence of the king-side with the attack on the queen-side.

- | | | |
|----|------------|-------------|
| 23 | ♘e4 | ♙xb2 |
| 24 | ♖d1 | ♙e5 |
| 25 | ♖g1 | ♖b4! |
| 26 | ♘d2 | ♖xh4 |

Black's miraculous major pieces have netted a pawn through some heavy industry.

- | | | |
|----|-------------|-------------|
| 27 | ♙g6 | ♘c7! |
| 28 | ♖b1! | |

With his whole position collapsing White finds the only chance.

- | | | |
|----|-----|------------------|
| 28 | ... | ♖hf4? (D) |
|----|-----|------------------|

Under severe time-pressure I was quite pleased with this move but, in fact, it throws the win away. Much better was **28...♖b4!** (not **28...♘xd5?** **29 ♖b7**) **29 ♙xh6** (**29 ♖xb4 axb4 30 ♙xh6 ♙a1+** followed by **...♙xg1**) **29...♖xb1+** **30 ♘xb1 ♘xd5 -+.**

- | | | |
|----|-------------|--|
| 29 | ♖b7? | |
|----|-------------|--|

And fortunately White fails to take his chance. After **29 ♙xg7+!** **♙xg7 30 ♖xg7+ ♔xg7 31 ♙xf4 ♖xf4**

32 ♖b7 ♖f7 33 ♘c4 ♘xd5 34 ♘xd6 ♖xb7 35 ♘xb7 the ending looks like a draw.

- | | | |
|----|-----|-------------|
| 29 | ... | ♖4f7 |
|----|-----|-------------|

Now everything is under control again.

- | | | |
|----|-------------|--------------|
| 30 | ♘e4 | ♘xd5 |
| 31 | ♖xf7 | ♖xf7 |
| 32 | ♘xd6 | ♙a1+ |
| 33 | ♔e2 | ♙xa2+ |
| 34 | ♔e1 | ♙a1+ |
| 35 | ♔e2 | ♙b2+ |
| 36 | ♔e1 | ♙c3+ |
| 37 | ♔e2 | ♖e7 |

White lost on time in a hopeless situation. Incidentally, **37...♖xf2+** would have been stronger as after **38 ♔xf2 ♙xe3+** **39 ♔f1 ♙c1+** **40 ♔f2 ♙d2+** **41 ♔g3 ♙e3+** White can resign.

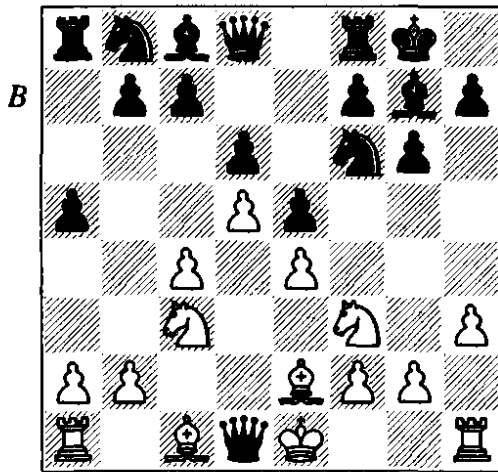
0-1

Game 7

Alexandrov – Zakharevich
St Petersburg 1994

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♘c3 | ♙g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | ♙e2 | 0-0 |

6 ♖f3 e5
 7 d5 a5
 8 h3 (D)



This line used to be about as far off the beaten track as you could get (in fact the first time I came across the move was when Novik played it against me three years ago), but a glance at *Informator 64* will reveal no fewer than four games with 8 h3. Its main champion is the young Russian Zviagintsev, but other strong grandmasters, such as Beliavsky and Gulko, have also thought it worth a whirl. Although strictly speaking the variation belongs to the Petrosian System its spiritual home is to be found amongst the h3 systems of this chapter and, indeed, there are many direct transpositions to the other games. However, it seems to me (and others) that an early ♖e2 reduces White's options and denies him some important resources. For example, ♖h3 is no longer available and the queen's path to the kingside has been blocked. True, Black has committed himself to ...a5 but this is a much more useful move which will very rarely harm him. My conclusion,

therefore, is that whilst 8 h3 is fashionable at the moment it is destined for a return to the wilderness.

8 ... ♖a6

8...♖bd7 is less flexible so the only alternative worth considering is 8...♖h5 after which there is:

1) 9 g3 f5 (9...♖a6!?) 10 exf5 gxf5 11 ♖g5 (11 ♖g5 ♖e8 is unclear) 11...♖f6 12 g4 (White wishes to control e4) 12...♖e7 13 gxf5 ♖xf5 14 ♖g4 ♖xg4 15 hxg4 ♖g6 16 ♖e6, Pogorelov-Becerra, Cordoba 1995, and now as Pogorelov points out, 16...♖a6 17 ♖xf8 (17 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 18 ♖h6 ♖f6 and 17 ♖g5 ♖f7 are also playable for Black) 17...♖xf8 would give Black a lot of play for the exchange (which makes it hard to understand why he sprinkled White's preceding moves so liberally with exclamation marks).

2) 9 ♖d2 ♖f4 10 ♖f1 ♖a6 11 g3 ♖h5 (both sides have wasted time on the kingside and Black hopes to profit from the weakness on h3) 12 ♖b3 (on 12 ♖e2, Beliavsky recommends 12...♖f6 followed by ...c6, while Knaak suggests 12...♖c5, not fearing 13 ♖xh5 gxh5 14 ♖xh5 f5; but here Beliavsky proposes 13 ♖b3) 12...c6 13 ♖e3 ♖d7 (intending ...a4) 14 a4 ♖b4 15 ♖c1 ♖e7 16 c5!? cxd5 17 cxd6 ♖d8! (17...♖xd6 18 ♖c5 ♖f6 19 ♖xa5!) 18 ♖xd5 (18 exd5 b6!) 18...♖xd5 19 ♖xd5 ♖f6 20 ♖d3 ♖a4 with a double-edged game, Zviagintsev-Beliavsky, Yugoslavia 1995.

9 ♖g5

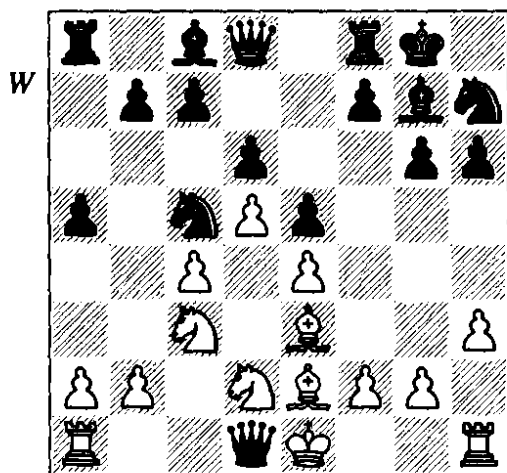
9 ♖e3 has not been played much so much here, as White prefers to

encourage Black to play ...h6. In fact the position after 9...♘c5 10 ♘d2 is considered in Game 5.

9 ... ♖e8

9...h6 is Black's main alternative. After 10 ♖e3 ♘c5 11 ♘d2 we are going to concentrate on 11...♘h7, which is an attempt to exploit the free ...h6 that Black has been given. Before doing so though, it should be pointed out that 11...♘e8 12 g4 c6!? (12...f5) transposes to Raetsky-Gallagher, Game 6.

After 11...♘h7 (*D*), there is:



1) 12 g4 f5 13 gxf5 gxf5 14 ♖g1 ♖h8 15 exf5 ♖xf5 and Nunn, who originally suggested 11...♘h7, comments that White's position is simply not strong enough for him to gain control over e4. For example, after 16 ♖xc5 dxc5 17 ♖g4 ♖h4! White's king is far from safety.

2) 12 h4 h5!? (12...f5 13 h5 ♖f6 14 ♖c2 ♘a6 15 f3 f4 16 ♖f2 g5 was also satisfactory for Black, Yermolinsky-Hellers, New York 1993) 13 ♘b3 b6 14 f3 f5 15 ♘xc5 bxc5 16 ♖c2 ♘f6 17 ♖d3 f4 18 ♖f2 ♖d7, Zviagintsev-Nevednichy, Yugoslavia 1995, with about equal chances.

3) 12 ♘b3 ♘xb3 (12...b6!?) 13 axb3 ♖d7 (13...f5 14 b4) 14 ♖d2 h5 15 0-0 ♖f6 16 c5 ♖g5 17 cxd6 cxd6 18 ♘b5 ♖xb5 19 ♖xb5 ♖xe3 20 ♖xe3 ♘f6 21 ♖fc1 and I can't decide whether White has an edge or not. In Hjartarson-Hellers, Östersund Z 1992 Black managed to hold the balance with the aid of some resourceful play: 21...h4 22 ♖a4 ♖c8! 23 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 24 ♖g5 (24 ♖xa5 ♖c2) 24...♖g7 25 ♖c4 ♖d8 26 ♖e3 (26 ♖xh4? ♖b6 27 ♖a4 ♖a6 and ...b5 is going to hurt) 26...♘h5 27 ♖c3 (so that the bishop can return home in the event of ...♘f4) 27...♘f6 28 ♖c4 ♘h5 29 ♖c3 1/2-1/2.

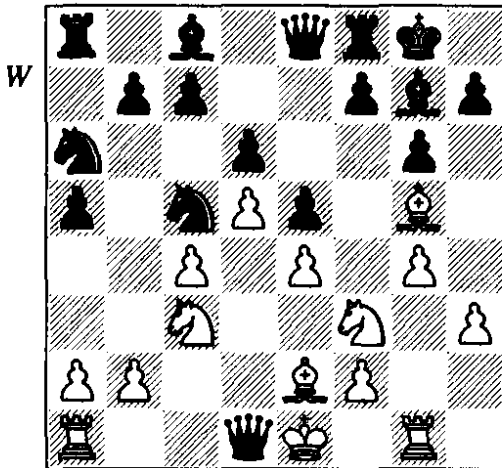
4) 12 0-0 ♖d7 (12...f5 13 exf5 ♖xf5!?) 13 ♖c2 ♘g5!? 14 h4 ♘h7 15 h5 ♘f6 (of Black's last five moves, four have been with this knight and it has ended up where it started; in return for this scandalous waste of time he has lured the white h-pawn forward and White is about to take back his move ♖c2) 16 ♖d1 gxf5 17 ♖xh5 ♘d3 18 ♖f3 ♖c8 19 ♖c2 ♘f4 20 c5 dxc5 21 ♖xc5 ♖e8 22 ♘e2 ♖b5 23 ♘c4 ♘4xd5! with a good game for Black, Beliavsky-Sher, Bern 1995.

10 ♘d2

The immediate 10 g4 may simply transpose after 10...♘d7 11 ♖g1 ♘dc5 (*D*) and then 12 ♘d2, but there are a couple of important 12th move alternatives for White:

1) 12 ♖d2 ♖h8 with a couple of examples:

1a) 13 h4 f6 14 ♖e3, Zviagintsev-Novik, St Petersburg 1994, and now Glatman gives 14...f5 15 gxf5 gxf5



16 ♖h6 ♜g8 17 ♖xg7+ ♜xg7 18 ♜xg7 ♝xg7 19 ♞g5+ ♞g6 20 ♞e7+ ♞f7 21 ♞g5+ as equal. There's obviously plenty to investigate here but it's clear that Black should prefer 14...f5 to 14...♗d7 15 h5, which was Novik's choice in the game.

1b) 13 0-0-0 ♗d7 14 h4 and now:

1b1) 14...♘b4! (threatening to play 15...♘xa2+) 15 ♚b1 f5 16 gxf5 ♘xe4?! 17 ♘xe4 ♗xf5 18 ♗d3 ♞a4 19 b3 ♞a3 20 ♞e2 a4 21 ♗c1 (Black must have missed this when he embarked on the combination) 21...axb3 22 ♗xa3 ♜xa3, Piskov-Damljanović, Belgrade 1995, looks like pure fantasy to me, although judging by Piskov's notes in *Informer* he was a worried man at the time. He managed to beat off the attack by returning a large chunk of material: 23 ♘fg5! ♜fa8 24 axb3 ♜xb3+ 25 ♞b2! ♜xb2+ 26 ♝xb2 ♘xd3+ 27 ♜xd3 h6 28 f3 hxg5 29 hxg5 with a clear advantage for White.

1b2) 14...f5 looks better to me. After, for example, 15 gxf5 gxf5 16 ♗h6 ♗xh6 17 ♞xh6 ♞e7 Black is ready to expel the queen with ...♜f6 and, if necessary, ...♗e8.

2) 12 h4 and now:

2a) 12...c6 13 h5 cxd5?! (better is 13...h6 14 ♗e3 g5, although after 15 ♘d2, intending ♘f1-g3, White still has an edge) 14 h6! ♗h8 15 cxd5 (15 ♘xd5 is also good) 15...♗d7 16 a4 with a clear advantage for White, Piket-J.Polgar, Aruba 1995.

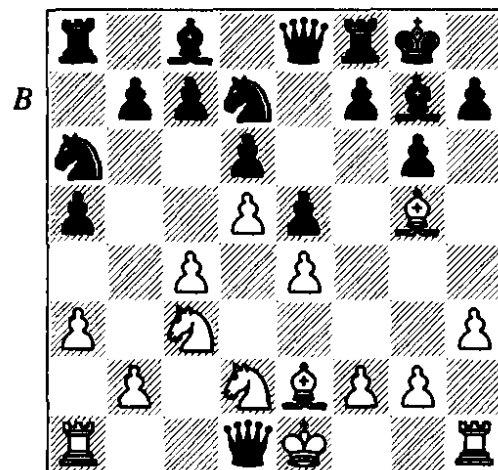
2b) Piket prefers to drive the bishop away immediately and proposes 12...h6 or 12...f6 as possible improvements, but I believe the critical line to be 12...♝h8 13 h5 (13 ♞d2 transposes to line '1') 13...gxh5! 14 gxh5 f5 with a double-edged game.

10 ... ♘d7

Black intends ...♘d7-c5 followed by ...f5. I believe this plan was introduced into practice by your not so humble author who knew the idea in similar positions. Another method is 10...h6 11 ♗e3 ♘h7 12 g4 f5, but the only comment I have seen on this is 'unclear, Piskov-Arsović, Belgrade 1995'; not very illuminating.

11 g4

11 a3! (D) forces Black to switch plan as 11...♘dc5 would now be met by 12 b4. Alternatively, Black can try:



1) 11...f5 12 exf5 and now since 12...gxf5?? 13 ♔h5 drops a queen, Black can play 12...♖xf5 (which I don't like) or try 12...e4!? (as suggested by Poluliakhov). After 13 fxc6 ♗xc6 14 ♕dxe4 ♕ac5 15 ♕xc5 ♕xc5 16 ♔e3 ♗xc2 17 ♔f3 ♗g6, Black certainly has good play, but I'm not so sure about 13 ♕dxe4 gxf5 14 ♕d2!, e.g. 14...♗g6 15 f4 ♔xc3 16 bxc3 h6 17 ♔h5 ♗g7 18 ♔h4 ♗xc2 19 ♗f3! looks very difficult for Black.

2) 11...f6 12 ♔h4 and now:

2a) 12...♔h6 13 b4 ♔g5 14 ♔xg5 fxc6 15 c5 dxc5 16 bxa5 ♕f6 17 ♕c4 was good for White in Krasenkov-Zakharevich, St Petersburg 1994.

2b) Perhaps Black can try 12...g5 13 ♔g3 f5 14 exf5 (14 f3 ♕f6) 14...♕f6 after which I can't see anything devastating for White, e.g.:

2b1) 15 ♗c2 ♕h5! when 16 ♔g4 should be met by 16...♕f4! rather than 16...♕xg3 17 fxc3 h5 18 f6! when White gains control of e4.

2b2) 15 h4 gxf4 16 ♔xh4 ♔xf5 looks fine for Black.

2b3) 15 b4 ♔xf5 and White has no good way to defend his pawn on b4.

2b4) 15 ♕de4 ♔xf5!? 16 ♕xg5 ♕c5 17 0-0 a4 with what looks like a good pawn's worth of compensation.

11 ... ♕dc5
12 ♖g1 ♔h8
13 ♕f1!?

If Black is going to play ...f5 then he must do so now as once the knight arrives on g3 it will be very risky.

13 a3 presents Black with no particular problems. M.Ivanov-Cvitan, Cappelle la Grande 1995 continued 13...♔d7 14 h4 f5 15 gxf5 gxf5 16 h5 ♔f6 17 ♔xf6+ ♖xf6 18 ♗c2 ♗f8! 19 0-0-0 fxe4 20 ♕cxe4 ♖f4 21 f3 ♔f5 ♞.

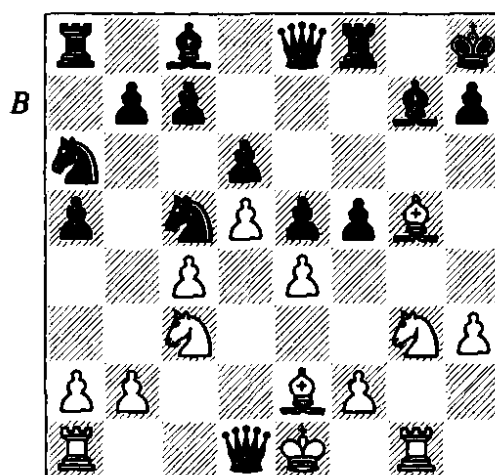
13 ... f5!

In Novik-Gallagher, Oberwart 1993 Black didn't have the courage of his convictions and played 13...c6 after which he was a little fortunate not to get into difficulties. The game continued 14 ♕g3 cxd5 15 cxd5 ♔d7 16 h4 b5 17 ♗d2 b4 18 ♕d1 f6 19 ♔e3 ♗e7 (intending ...f5) 20 h5 gxh5 21 f3!? hxg4 22 fxc4 and now 22...f5! gained some desperately needed space on the kingside. The position is unclear (0-1, 50 after many adventures).

14 gxf5 gxf5

15 ♕g3 (D)

Novik points out that 15 ♔h5 ♗d7 16 ♕g3 f4 17 ♕f5 can be met by 17...♕xe4; even if this tactic were not available, the exchange sacrifice with 17...♖xf5 seems to be pretty crushing.



15 ... fxe4!?

If I remember correctly my post-mortem with Novik concluded that **15...♗f6** was quite good for Black; I don't think we examined the text, which commits Black to a queen sacrifice, albeit an extremely powerful one.

16 ♖h5

This looks very strong but Black has a nasty surprise in store for his opponent. Alternatively, **16 ♖cxe4 ♗xe4 17 ♖xe4 ♗f5 18 ♗h5 ♜b8** (to avoid exchanging the light-squared bishops; I suppose **18...♗xe4?!** is a bit fanciful and unnecessary) **19 ♜e2** is unclear according to Knaak. If Black is feeling ambitious he may try **19...b5** intending to 'sac' the exchange after **20 ♗e7 (20 cxb5 ♗xe4** followed by **...♖c5)** with **20...bxc4** (or **20...♗xe4**) **21 ♗xf8 ♜xf8 22 ♜xc4 ♗xe4 23 ♜xe4 ♖c5 24 ♜f3 ♜e7**. White has a rough ride ahead of him

16 ... ♜f7

Forced, as **16...♗g8 17 ♖xg7 ♗xg7 18 ♗e7+!** wins for White.

17 ♗h4

17 ♗g2 is met by **17...♗xh3** and **17 ♖xg7 ♜xg7** looks favourable for Black, who can of course also investigate **17...♜xf2+**.

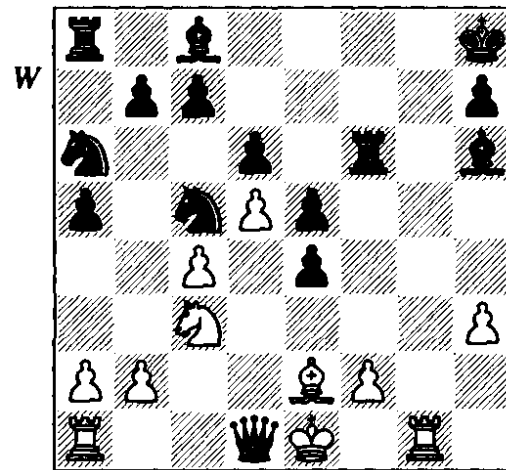
17 ... ♗h6!!

Perhaps White had been expecting **17...♗g8** when **18 ♗xg7! ♗xg7 19 ♗f6 ♜xf6 20 ♖xf6 ♗g1+ 21 ♗f1 ♗xh3 22 ♜h5!** gives him a winning attack (Knaak).

18 ♗f6+ ♜xf6

19 ♖xf6 ♗xf6 (D)

So what does Black have for his queen? Well, materially speaking



he has bishop, knight and pawn, which works out as a two-point deficit (please forgive me for being so basic) or the equivalent of an exchange less. Quite a meagre amount, in fact, when you take Black's massive positional advantage into account. White's king is stuck in the middle and the black rooks will soon be doubled against one of White's most sensitive points, namely f2. The black minor pieces are also a group worth envying; the bishops simply radiate power and the knights are poised to infiltrate the enemy camp. I suspect that the white position is already beyond redemption.

20 a3 ♗f5

21 ♗g3

White's last two moves have been geared towards preventing **...♖d3+**. A position such as the one that arises after **21 b4 ♖d3+ 22 ♗xd3 exd3 23 ♜h5 ♗af8** would be completely hopeless for him.

21 ... ♗af8

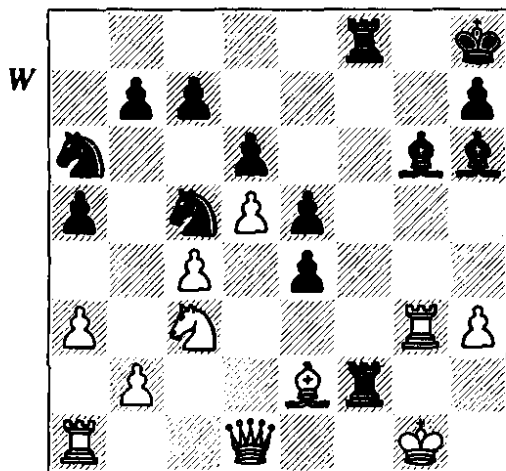
22 ♗f1

The king attempts to hide in the corner – probably the only chance.

22 ... ♗g6

23 ♗g1

23 ♖g2 doesn't help on account of
23...♗e3.
23 ... ♖xf2 (D)



24 b4?!

Against Knaak's suggestion 24 ♖b1 Black can maintain the bind with 24...a4 or search for something more devastating. It may be that 24 ♗h5 is White's last chance.

24 ... axb4
25 axb4 ♗xb4

Black has now achieved material parity.

26 ♗h5

White can exchange a rook with 26 ♖a8 ♖xa8 27 ♖xf2 but this does not lessen Black's pressure.

26 ... ♗c2!

27 ♗xg6

27 ♖b1 loses to 27...♗e3 and 27 ♖a2 ♗xh5 28 ♖xh5 ♖f1+ 29 ♖h2 ♖8f2+ 30 ♖g2 ♗f4 is mate.

27 ... ♗xa1

28 ♗xe4

28 ♖xa1 hxg6 29 ♖d1 (29 ♖xg6 ♗e3) 29...e3 is given by Below.

28 ... ♗ab3

29 ♖h5 ♖2f6

30 ♖f3?

This loses material. White had to play 30 ♗g2 although Black has a winning advantage after 30...♗d4.

30 ... ♗xe4

31 ♗xe4

White must have overlooked that 31 ♖xf6 is met by 31...♗e3+! 32 ♖g2 ♗xf6.

31 ... ♖xf3

32 ♖xh6 ♗d4

33 h4 ♖3f4

34 ♗g5 ♖f1+

35 ♖g2 ♖8f2+

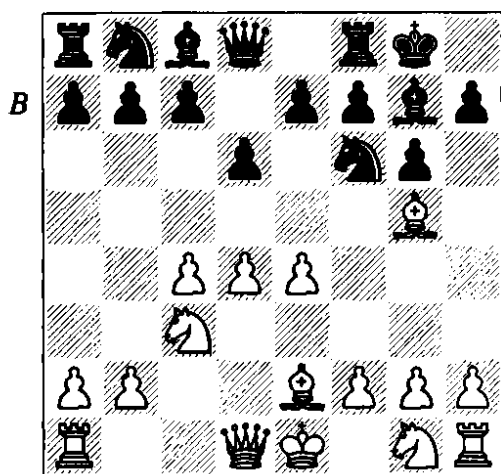
36 ♖h3 ♖h1+

0-1

36 ♖g3 ♗f5+ and 36 ♖g4 ♖f4+ are the end.

3 The Averbakh

The Averbakh system is characterized by the moves 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♗e2 0-0 6 ♗g5 (D).



The original idea was to try to stifle Black's traditional kingside counterplay by making it difficult for Black to play ...e5 and ...f5. The first point is that 6...e5?? loses at once: 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 9 ♘d5. So if Black is not going to abandon the plan of playing for ...e5, he must first play a preparatory move. Until recently there were thought to be only a couple of options. Firstly, he could drive the bishop away with 6...h6 and then play ...e5. But ...h6 is not always a desirable move for Black to play in the King's Indian. Not only does it weaken his kingside but very often White will be able to gain a tempo with ♗d2. The second idea was to support the advance ...e5 by means of 6...♘bd7, but this too has

its downside. As the knight on d7 cramps the whole of the black queenside it cannot remain there too long. This means that Black has to play an early ...♘c5 and ...a5, which, although a solid idea, often leaves Black passively placed.

Following the modern trend in the King's Indian a third idea has come to Black's rescue, namely 6...♘a6. The advance ...e5 is now playable as, for example, 7 ♗d2 e5 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 10 ♘d5 leads nowhere as Black can simply reply 10...♜d6. Although the basic idea behind 6...♘a6 is to prepare ...e5, the move is very flexible and in certain cases Black can follow up with ...c5 or even ...c6 followed by ...♘c7.

Game 8 concentrates on 7 f4 and a few unusual White moves, Game 9 game deals with 7 ♘f3 and 7 h4, whilst Game 10 tackles the main line, 7 ♗d2. I am proposing that Black continues 7...e5 8 d5 ♗e8!?

Game 8 Yakovich – Smirin Munich 1993

1	d4	♘f6
2	c4	g6
3	♘c3	♗g7
4	e4	d6
5	♗e2	0-0
6	♗g5	♘a6

7 f4 (D)

The other main lines, 7 h4, 7 g3 and 7 d2 will be considered in subsequent games, whilst below we examine a few rarely played variations:

1) 7 f3 c6 8 d2 e5 9 g2 e8 10 0-0 h5 11 d5 and now:

1a) Hort-Cramling, Prague 1995 continued 11...cxd5 12 f6!? f6 13 xd5 g7?! (13...d8 may leave the black king a little bare but would at least allow the knight on a6 to get into the game) 14 ec3 d7 15 fd1 d8 16 b4 e6 17 e3 b6 18 a4 with a big plus for White.

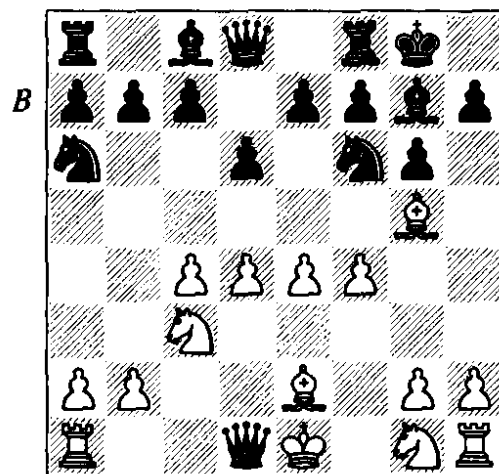
1b) 11...h7 12 e3 c5 would have been my choice and the logical follow-up to 10...h5.

2) 7 d3. White often repositions this bishop on c2 in the Averbakh, but he usually waits until a decent interval has passed before moving it again; if I had played 5 e2 followed by 7 d3 for my old school team I would have been benched for the rest of the season and I'm sure that a similar fate would have befallen Bareev, notwithstanding any elaborate explanations he may have offered. 7...e5 (I suppose 7...c5 also comes into consideration) 8 d5 c6 (8...e8) 9 ge2 c5 10 c2 a5 11 d2 (after 11 a3 cxd5 12 cxd5 Black can sacrifice a pawn with 12...a4!?, or allow White to advance his b-pawn as 12...d7 13 b4 axb4 14 axb4 xa1 15 xa1 a6 is unclear) 11...cxd5 12 exd5!? (12 cxd5 d7 intending ...b5 looks OK for Black whilst 12 xd5? cxe4! 13 xe4 xe4 14 xd8 xd2 15 e7

xc4 16 xf8 xf8 leads to an unpleasant ending for White) 12...d7 13 0-0 b6 14 g3?! (Gelfand prefers the immediate 14 e3) 14...fc8 15 e3 a6 16 e2 e8 17 f4 f5 18 b5, Bareev-Gelfand, Linares 1994, and now, according to Gelfand 18...e4! would be better for Black. After 19 d4 d3! 20 b3 (20 xd3 exd3 21 xd3 xc4 ♣) 20...b4!?, Black threatens 21...xd5 22 cxd5 xd4 as well as ...a4.

3) 7 c1 (perhaps this avoids some tricks based on ...fxe4, but it still leaves me pretty confused) 7...e5 8 d5 c6 9 f3 e8 (9...cxd5 10 cxd5 d7 followed by ...c8 is suggested by Glek) 10 0-0 h5 (or 10...c5!?) 11 dxc6! bxc6 12 d1 f6 13 e3 f5!? 14 xd6 f4 15 d2 g5! and Black had good attacking prospects in return for his pawn, Palatnik-Glek, Philadelphia 1990.

4) 7 f3 has little independent significance. After 7...e5 8 d5 e8 (8...c6) 9 d2 we have transposed elsewhere in this chapter.



7 ... c6!?

In the Four Pawns Attack proper such a plan would be considered too

slow but here, with the white bishop on the double-edged g5-square, other factors come into play. Black intends to follow up with ...♖c7 after which he will be ready to challenge the white centre with ...d5 or embarrass the bishop on g5 by ...♗e6.

7...♖e8, preparing ...e5, is an important alternative, with the following possibilities:

1) 8 ♖f3 and now:

1a) 8...e5 9 fxe5 (9 dxe5 dxe5 10 ♖xe5 ♖c5 and the threats of ...♗e6 and ...♖cxe4 provide adequate compensation for the pawn) 9...dxe5 10 d5 (10 ♖xe5 c5 is good for Black and 10 dxe5 ♖g4 11 ♖d5 ♖xe5 12 ♗e7 c6 is a perfectly playable exchange sacrifice) 10...h6 11 ♗xf6 (11 ♗h4 ♖g4 allows Black to become very active) 11...♗xf6 12 a3 ♖e7 13 0-0 ♗d8 14 ♗b1 c5 15 ♖d2 ♗g7 16 ♗fd1 ♗d7 17 b4 ♖d6 with a roughly level position, Mohr-Miles, Bad Wörishofen 1990.

1b) 8...h6 (perhaps an improvement on the immediate ...e5) 9 ♗h4 e5 and now:

1b1) 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 ♖xe5 ♖c5 (11...g5!?) 12 ♗f3 (12 ♖c2? ♖fxe4! 13 ♖xe4 ♗f5 14 ♗d3 ♖xd3+ 15 ♖xd3 ♗xe5 16 fxe5 ♖xe5) 12...g5 (now 12...♖cxe4 13 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 14 ♗xe4 f6 is not playable because of the weakness of g6) 13 ♗f2 (13 ♗g3 g4) 13...♖cxe4! 14 ♖xe4 (or 14 ♗xe4 gxf4) 14...♖xe4 15 ♗xe4 gxf4 16 ♗d4 c5! 17 ♗c3 ♗xe5 with a clear advantage for Black.

1b2) 10 fxe5 dxe5 11 ♗xf6. The problem for White is that 11 d5 allows 11...♖g4, but after the text he is

playing variation '1b' with a tempo less. In Sorin-Ubilava, Ibercaja 1992, Black decided to use this tempo to prevent White from playing c5 without having to play ...c5 himself. The game continued 11...♗xf6 12 d5 ♗e7!? 13 a3 ♖b8 14 b4 b6 (Black's position may look passive, but as long as he avoids being steam-rollered on the queenside his bishop pair and potential kingside attack will give him a good game) 15 ♖b5 ♗d8 16 0-0 a6 17 ♖c3 ♗e7 18 ♗h1 ♗d6 19 ♖e1 ♖e7 20 ♖d3 ♖d7 21 ♗c1 a5 22 ♖b3 ♗a6 23 ♗g4 ♗fb8 24 ♗f3?! ♖f6 25 ♗h3 ♖h7! 26 ♗f2 h5 27 g3 h4 28 ♗cf1 hxg3 29 hxg3 ♖g5 30 ♗g4 ♗g7 with an excellent game for Black. The remaining moves were 31 ♗h2 ♗h8 32 ♗ff2 ♖h7 33 bxa5 bxa5 34 a4 ♖g5 35 ♗f3 ♖f6 36 ♗xh8 ♗xh8+ 37 ♗g2 ♗c8 38 ♖e2 ♖e3 39 c5 ♖xe4 40 cxd6 ♖xf2 41 ♖dc1 ♗h3+ 42 ♗g1 ♖d3+ 0-1.

2) 8 ♖d2 (White believes that his first priority is to establish some control over the dark squares) 8...e5 9 fxe5 dxe5 10 d5 ♖c5 11 ♖e3 ♖a4 12 ♖b5 ♖e7 13 0-0-0 a6 14 d6 cxd6 15 ♖xd6 ♖c7 16 ♗b1 ♖c5 17 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 18 ♖xc8 ♗axc8 19 ♗g4 ♖e6! 20 ♗xe6 fxe6 21 ♗c1 b5, Tukmakov-Mortensen, Reykjavik 1990, and now 22 c5! would have been equal.

8 ♖f3

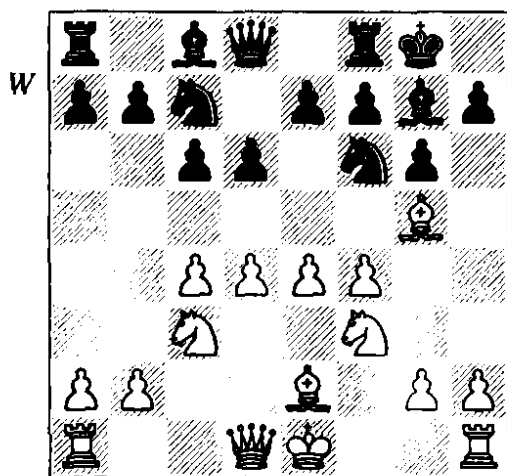
8 ♖d2 ♖c7 is likely to transpose back into the main line after 9 ♖f3, but in the game Moskalenko-Nadyrkhanov, Alushta 1994, Black tried 8...b5!?:

1) The game continued 9 e5 b4 10 exf6 bxc3 11 bxc3 (11 ♖xc3 exf6 12 ♙h4 ♜e8 is less good as White may experience some trouble on the e-file and his d4-pawn is less secure) 11...exf6 12 ♙h4 ♖a5 13 ♘f3 ♙f5 14 0-0 ♜fe8 with an equal position according to Belov.

2) Belov also examines White accepting the pawn sacrifice, giving 9 cxb5 cxb5 10 ♙xb5 ♜b8 11 ♙e2 ♖b6 12 ♜b1 ♘c7 13 ♘f3 ♙b7 as unclear. A possible continuation is 14 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 15 0-0 (15 d5 ♙xc3! 16 ♖xc3 f5 looks quite good for Black) 15...♘e6 16 ♜fd1 (16 e5 ♙xf3) 16...♘xd4! 17 ♘xd4 e5 with at least equal chances for Black.

8 ... ♘c7 (D)

8...b5 has also been tried here. After 9 cxb5 cxb5 10 ♙xb5 ♜b8 11 ♖e2 ♘c7 12 ♙c4 d5 13 exd5 ♘cxd5 14 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 15 0-0 ♘h5 Black had decent positional compensation for his pawn, Gulko-Barlov, Montreal 1992.



9 ♖d2

9 d5 prevents Black's two main ideas (...d5 and ...♘e6) but allows a third, 9...♘h5!. Seirawan-Gelfand,

Tilburg 1990 continued 10 f5 (10 ♖d2 f6 11 ♙h4 ♙h6 12 g3 e5! is good for Black as after 13 dxe6 ♘xe6 the bishop on h4 is in trouble) 10...gxf5? 11 exf5 ♘f6 12 dxc6 bxc6 13 g4! ♜b8 14 ♖d2 ♘a6 15 ♘d4 with good prospects for White. Seirawan, however, considers that 10...cxd5! 11 cxd5 ♘f6! 12 fxg6 hxg6 13 ♖d2 ♘a6 is very good for Black.

9 ♙h4 has also been seen. Sorin-O.Foisor, Olot 1992 continued 9...d5 10 cxd5 cxd5 11 e5 ♘e4 12 ♖b3 ♙h6 13 g3 (13 ♙g3 may be better) 13...b6 14 0-0 ♙b7 15 ♜ad1 ♘e6 16 ♘e1 ♘xc3 17 ♖xc3 f6! with good play for Black.

9 ... d5

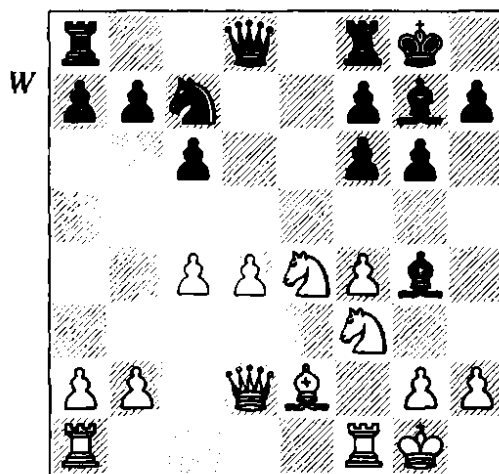
9...♘e6 10 ♙h4 ♙h6 11 g3 ♘h5 is also interesting.

10 ♙xf6 exf6!

A big improvement on 10...♙xf6 11 cxd5 cxd5 12 e5 ♙g7 13 h4, with advantage to White, Moskalenko-Nijboer, Wijk aan Zee 1992.

11 0-0 dx e4

12 ♘xe4 ♙g4! (D)



Black's whole strategy is based on pressurizing the d-pawn. By eliminating the knight on f3, playing ...f5

and a rook to the d-file Black should be able to force the pawn to advance to d5. He will then hope to blockade this pawn with a knight on d6, which in conjunction with his better bishop and safer king should, at the very least, compensate for White's central passed pawn. I am, of course, writing this with the benefit of hindsight, but I'm sure that Smirin envisaged all this when he played 10...exf6, and most probably at home before the game.

13 ♖ad1 ♖e7
14 ♘f2

This is not an especially good square for the knight and it might have been better to play 14 ♘c3. Smirin then gives 14...♖ad8 15 h3 ♙xf3 16 ♙xf3 f5 17 d5 ♖c5+ and 18...♖xc4, but White should be able to improve on his 15th move; 15 ♖fe1 looks logical, upon which Black can try 15...♘e6.

It may, in fact, not be essential for White to move his knight as after 14 ♖fe1 ♖xe4 15 ♙d3 the black queen is trapped. Instead Black should play 14...♖ad8 when White should avoid 15 h3 on account of 15...♙xh3!.

14 ... ♙xf3
15 ♙xf3 f5

Black must, of course, play this before White can play f5 himself.

16 d5

Perhaps White pushed his d-pawn at once to pretend that he was advancing out of choice, rather than necessity. 16 ♖fe1 ♖d6 followed by a rook to d8 would have been similar to the game.

16 ... cxd5

17 cxd5

17 ♙xd5 ♖fd8 18 ♖fe1 ♖f6 (but not 18...♖d6? 19 ♙xf7+) 19 ♖e5 (19 b3 ♘xd5 20 cxd5 ♖d6) 19...♘xd5 (19...♖b6) 20 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 21 cxd5 ♖d8 is a little better for Black as his pieces are more active than their counterparts.

17 ... ♖d6
18 g3 ♘b5
19 ♙g2 ♖ac8?!

Black starts to lose the thread around here. Better was 19...♖b6, intending ...♘d6, as 20 d6 would simply be pushing the pawn to its doom.

20 ♙h1 ♖c4

It still wasn't too late for ...♖b6.

21 ♘d3 ♖fc8
22 ♖c1 h5?

This is a serious error which could have proved costly. Black should have settled for the equal ending that he could have forced by chopping all the rooks off.

23 ♖e2?

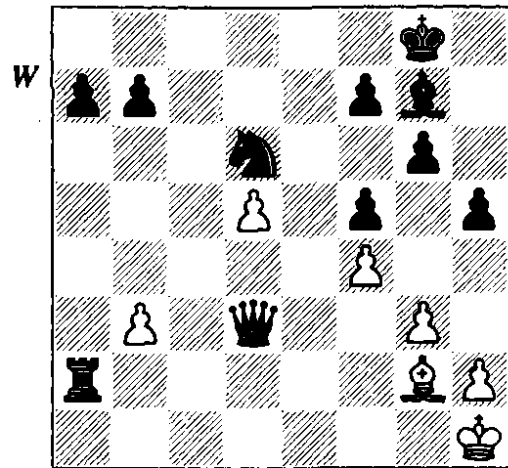
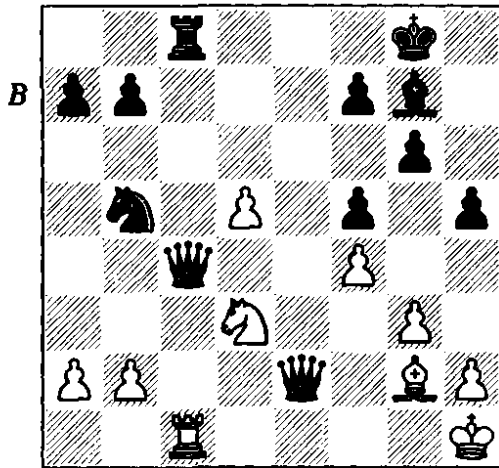
White misses his chance: 23 ♖xc4 ♖xc4 24 ♘e5! ♖c8 (24...♙xe5 25 ♖e2!) 25 ♖e1 would have pushed Black onto the defensive.

23 ... ♖c7!
24 ♖xc4 ♖xc4
25 ♖c1? (D)

White should have kept his hands off the black queen and played 25 a3 instead, which Smirin assesses as $\bar{=}$.

25 ... ♖xc1+!
26 ♘xc1 ♖xc1+
27 ♙f1 ♘d6

Theoretically speaking Black has insufficient material for the queen, but the truth is that his position is



close to winning. The pieces that he does have co-ordinate beautifully and his king is completely safe. White, on the other hand, has an extremely exposed king and a bishop that is virtually irrelevant. The d-pawn also remains firmly blockaded and it is ironic that White would have more chances without it as then his bishop would become a piece again.

- 28 b3 ♖b1
- 29 ♔d3 ♖b2
- 30 ♔g2

White lets his a-pawn go because of the variation 30 a4 ♘e4 31 ♔b5 ♔d4 when he is liable to get mated.

- 30 ... ♖xa2 (D)

But now Black can combine his threats against the king with pushing a passed pawn on the queenside. White's position is hopeless.

- 31 h4 a5
- 32 ♔e3 b5
- 33 ♔b6 ♔f8
- 34 ♔f3 ♖a3
- 35 ♔g2 b4
- 36 ♔d1 ♖a2+
- 37 ♔f1 ♘e4
- 38 ♔e1 ♔c5?

38...♖a1 would have won on the spot as there is nothing to be done

about ...♘c3. Now Black has to back-pedal a little.

- 39 ♔b8+ ♔h7
- 40 ♔e8 ♔g7!

Perhaps Black had originally intended 40...♔f2+ 41 ♔f1 ♘xg3+ 42 ♔g2 but this would lose control of the position.

- 41 ♔e5+ ♔g8
- 42 ♔b8+ ♔f8
- 43 ♔f3?

The only chance was to play 43 d6!. After 43...♘xd6 44 ♔f3 ♖c2! 45 ♔d5 ♖c5 Black should still win but his task would be more complicated.

- 43 ... ♘d6
- 44 ♔b6 ♖a3
- 45 ♔d1 ♘e4
- 46 ♔f3 ♖a1+
- 47 ♔e2 ♘d6!

Now Black is threatening to pick up the b-pawn.

- 48 ♔d3
- 48 ♔d2 a4! decides the issue.
- 48 ... ♖c1!

Black just needs one passed pawn.

- 49 ♔xa5 ♖c3+
- 50 ♔e2 ♖xb3
- 51 ♔a4 ♖b2+
- 52 ♔d3 b3

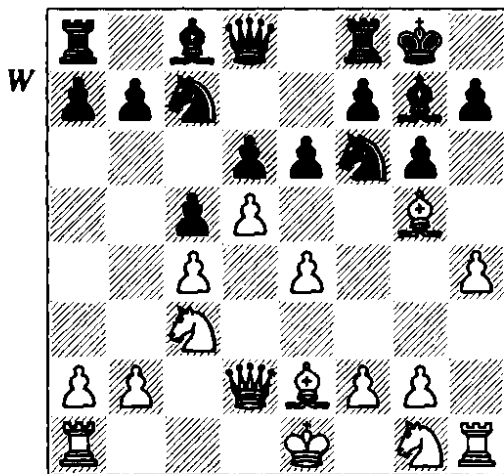
53 ♖d1 ♘e4
and White Resigned as 54 ♙c4
♞b1 55 ♙xb3 loses to 55...♞xb3!.

Game 9
V. Milov – Gallagher
Bad Ragaz 1994

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♘c3 | ♙g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | ♙e2 | 0-0 |
| 6 | ♙g5 | ♘a6 |
| 7 | ♘f3 | |

7 h4 is a speciality of Bareev's although it has usually provided him with a nice round zero in the tournament chart. Black can respond in Benoni style or in traditional King's Indian fashion:

1) 7...c5 8 d5 ♘c7 9 ♙d2 e6 (D) and now:



1a) 10 e5 dxe5 11 d6 ♘ce8 was tried a couple of times by Bareev during Hastings 1992/3.

1a1) In the first game, against Judit Polgar, he played 12 0-0-0 but after 12...♙d7! (blocking the d-pawn and unpinning the knight on f6) 13

h5 b5!? 14 cxb5 ♙b7 15 ♙h6 ♙xd6! 16 ♙g5 (and not 16 ♙xd6 ♙xh6+) 16...♙xh6 17 ♙xh6 ♙e7 (Nunn prefers 17...♙c7) 18 ♙g5 ♘g7 19 ♙f3 e4 20 ♘xe4 ♙xe4 21 ♙xe4 h6 22 ♙e3 ♘xe4 23 ♙xe4 g5 24 ♘e2 (24 ♘f3 f6 is unclear) 24...a6! he probably wished his king was elsewhere (0-1, 49).

1a2) Consequently, in his next outing a few rounds later against Nunn, he preferred simply 12 ♙d1, intending to castle short some time in the future. After 12...♙d7!:

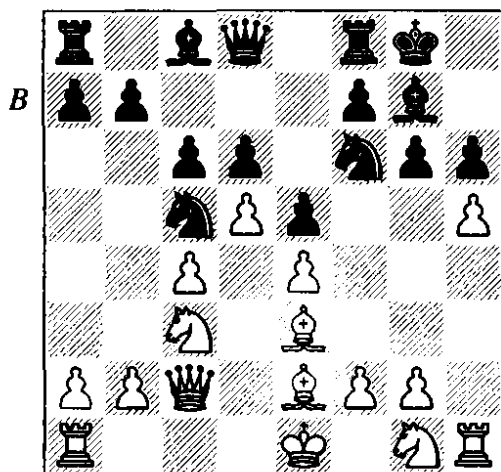
1a21) That game continued 13 ♙e3 (13 ♘f3 e4 14 ♘e5 ♙xd6! 15 ♙xd6 ♘xd6 16 ♞xd6 ♘e8 17 ♘xf7! ♙xf7 18 ♞d2 ♙xc3 19 bxc3 ♘f6, intending ...e5 followed by ...♙e6 is about equal according to Nunn) 13...b6 14 ♘f3 ♘h5! (Black is more than happy to part with an exchange if he can retain his central pawn mass) 15 ♙e7 (15 ♘xe5 ♙xe5 16 ♙xe5 f6) 15...f6! (originally Nunn intended 15...♘f4 but he suddenly noticed 16 ♙xe5!! ♙xe5 17 ♘xe5 when despite having only one piece for the queen White has the better game) 16 ♙xf8 ♙xf8 17 ♘e4 ♘f4 18 0-0 ♙g7! (ruling out any tricks based on ♘xf6+ and ♘xe5; the d-pawn can be rounded up later after Black has consolidated his position) 19 ♞fe1 ♙b7 20 ♙f1 ♙h6 21 ♙c3 ♙xe4 22 ♞xe4 ♘xd6 with a clear advantage to Black (0-1, 44).

1a22) White's latest try is 13 h5. Zakharevich-Dolmatov, Kazan 1995 continued 13...b5! 14 cxb5. ♙b7 15 ♙h6?! (15 hxg6 fxg6 16 ♘f3 is unclear) 15...♙xg2 16 ♞h2 ♙d5 17

♙xg7 and now best was 17...♘xg7. Zakharevich gives the following variation: 18 ♚g5 ♘fh5! 19 ♙xh5 (or 19 ♘xd5 exd5 20 ♚xe5 ♖ae8 21 ♚xd5 ♘f4 ♡) 19...f6 20 ♚g3 gxh5 21 ♘xd5 exd5 22 ♖xd5 ♚b5 with advantage to Black.

1b) 10 h5 is perhaps the most logical move and in Onishchuk-Wegner, Berlin 1993 White obtained the advantage after 10...exd5 11 exd5 b5! 12 cxb5 ♙b7 13 ♙f3 ♚d7 14 ♘ge2 ♘xb5 15 ♚f4 ♘xc3 16 ♘xc3 ♖fe8+ 17 ♡f1 ♚f5?! 18 ♚xf5 gxf5 19 h6 ♙h8 20 ♖h4. Black should not despair, though, as there are plenty of possible improvements; 11...♖e8, 14...♘g4! and 17...♖e5! spring to mind.

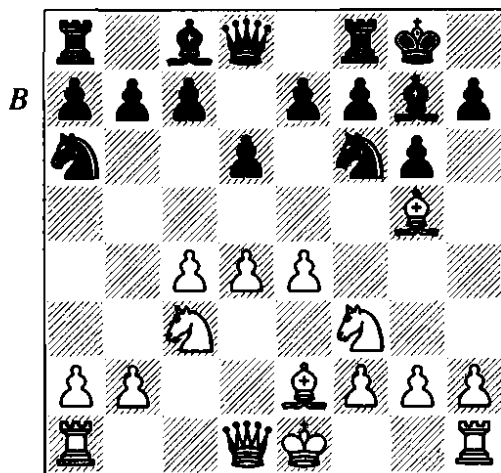
2) 7...e5 8 d5 h6 9 ♙e3 ♘c5 10 ♚c2 (10 f3 doesn't fit with an early h4 on account of 10...♘h5, but 10 ♙f3 was tried out in Bagonyai-Collinson, Balatonbereny 1992; after 10...a5 11 g4 c6 12 g5 hxg5 13 hxg5 ♘h7 14 ♚d2 cxd5 15 cxd5 a4 16 ♙d1 ♙d7 17 f3 ♖e8 18 ♘h3 b5 19 ♘f2 ♚a5 20 ♘e2 a draw was agreed in an unclear position) 10...c6 11 h5 (11 b4? ♘cxe4!) and now (D):



2a) In Bareev-Kasparov, Linares 1992 Black played 11...g5. This advance is usually a sign that things have gone wrong for Black, but this position seems to be an exception. Firstly, White is not ready to exploit the weakening of f5 and secondly, Black does not mind the kingside being blocked up as his chances on the queenside are in no way inferior to White's. It should be mentioned that the idea of playing ...g5 in this position is not new, but previously it was only played after an exchange on d5. I think Kasparov wanted to retain control over b5 for as long as possible, as back in 1980 he suggested, after the moves 11...cxd5 12 cxd5 g5 13 g4 a5 14 f3 ♙d7, that White should play 15 ♙b5. Let's return to Bareev-Kasparov which continued 12 f3 (12 b4 ♘cxe4 13 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 14 ♚xe4 f5 15 ♚c2 cxd5 16 cxd5 f4 gives Black a lot of play for the piece according to Bareev) 12...a5 13 g4 ♙d7 14 ♘h3 a4 15 ♚d2 cxd5 16 cxd5 ♚a5 17 ♘b1 ♘fxe4?! (17...♚xd2+ 18 ♘xd2 b5 is a lot safer) 18 fxe4 ♘xe4 19 ♚xa5 ♖xa5 20 ♘c3! ♘g3 21 ♖g1 ♘xe2 22 ♡xe2 e4 23 ♖ac1! f5 24 gxf5 ♖xf5? (24...♙e8 25 ♘xg5 hxg5 26 ♖xg5 ♡h8 27 ♘xe4 ♙xb2 is given as equal by Bareev, but Black doesn't look out of the woods yet to me) 25 ♘f2 ♙e8 26 ♖h1 ♙b5+ 27 ♘xb5 ♖xb5 28 ♖c8+ ♡h7 and now instead of the inaccurate continuation 29 ♖d1? ♖xb2+ 30 ♖d2 a3!, which allowed Black to escape with a draw, 29 ♖b1 ♖fxd5 30 ♘xe4 should be winning for White.

2b) 11...cxd5 12 cxd5 ♔d7! (this suggestion from Shereshevsky has become quite topical recently) 13 hxg6 fxg6 14 b4 (14 ♔xh6 ♔xh6 15 ♖xh6 ♔g7 16 ♖h1 ♖h8 17 ♖xh8 ♗xh8, with good play for the pawn, is the justification of Black's 12th move) 14...♗a6 15 a3 h5 16 f3 ♗c7 (16...♗h7?! 17 ♗b5! was favourable for White in Bareev-Gelfand, Biel IZ 1993) 17 ♗h3 ♗h7 18 ♗d2 (18 ♖c1?! ♖f7 19 ♗d2 ♔f6 ♞ Raetsky-Glek, Bad Ragaz 1994) 18...♔f6 19 0-0-0 was Zakharevich-Poluliakhov, Azov 1995 and now, because the immediate 19...a5 is met by 20 b5, Poluliakhov suggests preparing this advance with 19...♗e8.

We now return to the position after 7 ♗f3 (D).



7 ... h6!
8 ♔h4

Not the only bishop retreat:

1) 8 ♔f4?! e5! 9 dxe5 ♗h5 10 ♔e3 dxe5 and now:

1a) 11 0-0 c6 12 ♗xd8 ♖xd8 13 ♖fd1 ♖e8 14 g3 ♗f6 15 ♗d2 ♗g4 16 ♔xg4 ♔xg4 17 f3 ♔e6 18 b3 ♗b4 19 ♖ac1 f5 with advantage to Black, Milov-Smirin, Haifa 1995.

1b) 11 ♗c1 ♔h7 12 0-0 (12 c5 f5 13 exf5 gxf5 14 ♗c2 ♗b4 15 ♗b3 ♗d3+ 16 ♔xd3 ♗xd3 was good for Black in Korsunsky-V.Ivanov, Moscow 1992) 12...c6 13 ♖d1 ♗e7 14 ♗e1 ♗f6 15 f3 ♗c5 16 ♗c2 ♗e6 17 ♗d2 ♖d8 18 ♗e1 ♗d4! 19 ♗xd4 exd4 20 ♖xd4 (20 ♔xd4 ♖xd4 21 ♖xd4 ♗g4) 20...♖xd4 21 ♔xd4 ♗g4! 22 e5 (22 ♔xg7? ♗c5+ leads to mate and 22 ♗d2 ♗d6 is also good for Black) 22...♔xe5 23 fxg4 ♔xd4+ with an excellent game for Black, Uhlmann-M.Schäfer, German Ch 1991.

2) 8 ♔e3 e5 9 0-0 ♗g4 10 ♔c1 c6 11 d5!? f5 12 ♗e1 ♗f6 13 exf5 gxf5 14 f4 cxd5 15 cxd5 ♗g4 16 ♗d3 ♗b6+ 17 ♔h1, Farago-Howell, Bad Wildbad 1990, and now Farago gives 17...e4 18 ♔xg4 exd3 19 ♔f3 ♗d4 as unclear. Although White can win the d-pawn with 20 ♗b5, Black will have a strong initiative after 20...♗c5 21 ♗xd3 ♗b4 22 ♗e2 ♔d7 23 ♗c3 ♖fe8.

8 ... e5

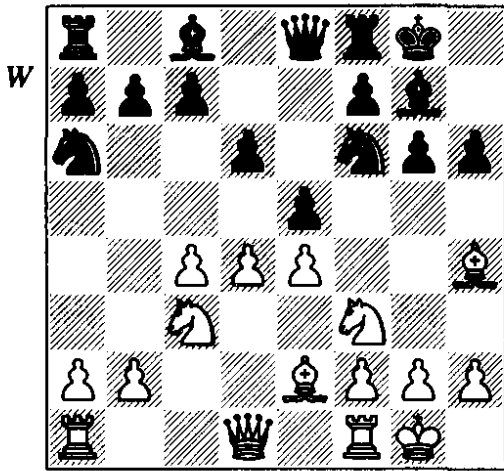
8...c5!? is tempting as 9 d5 g5 10 ♔g3 ♗h5 looks like a good Benoni for Black.

9 0-0

9 d5?! allows 9...g5 10 ♔g3 ♗xe4! 11 ♗xe4 f5 12 ♗fd2 fxe4 13 ♗xe4 ♔f5 when 14 ♔d3 g4 15 0-0 h5 16 f3 ♔xe4 17 ♔xe4 ♗c5 18 ♔c2 e4! was promising for Black in Rogers-Mortensen, Vejstrup 1989 and 14 f3 g4 15 0-0 ♗e8 16 ♔f2 ♗g6 17 ♗g3 ♔c2 18 ♗d2 gxf3 19 ♔xf3 ♖xf3!? 20 gxf3 ♖f8 gave Black good play for the exchange in Pliester-Reinderman, Wijk aan Zee 1994,

although in the latter example I think I would have preferred the alternative 15...h5.

9 ... ♖e8 (D)



10 ♗xf6!?

I was quite pleased with the outcome of the opening and had been expecting an easy game after something like 10 dxe5. The text move completely puzzled me, but I soon discovered what it was all about as after...

10 ... ♗xf6

My opponent didn't even hesitate before playing...

11 c5!?

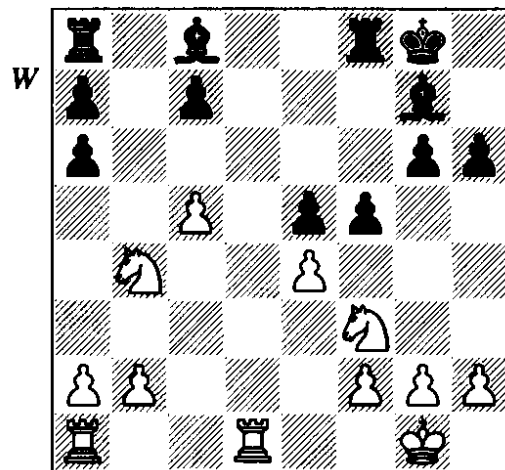
My first reaction was one of deep scepticism that White's idea could be any good but I was still pretty wary as I had obviously tumbled into a prepared variation. White intends to ruin Black's queenside pawn structure with ♗xa6 and then try to prove that the resulting position is better suited to his knights than Black's bishops.

11 ... exd4?!

I arrived at the text, after considerable thought, as I felt that the position should be opened up for the

bishops and because I underestimated White's 14th move. I did well to avoid 11...♖b8? though as after 12 ♖d5 ♗d8 13 cxd6 cxd6 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 ♖c1! White wins a pawn.

Maybe the best move is 11...♗g7, e.g. 12 ♗xa6 bxa6 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 ♖d5 ♖d8 15 ♖b4 ♖xd1 16 ♗fxd1 f5! (D) and now:



1) Ryskin-Iskusnykh, Azov 1995 continued 17 ♖d5? fxe4 18 ♖d2 ♗g4! and White must have realised only now that he can't move the rook on account of 19...♗ad8 winning material. Therefore he gave up the exchange with 19 ♖xe4 ♗xd1 20 ♗xd1 ♗fd8 21 c6 and punted a draw offer, which was accepted despite the fact that Black is close to winning. The white knights may look attractive but he is caught in a nasty pin on the d-file. Black should play 21...♗f7, to avoid any checks, followed by ...♗b8 and ...♗b5. If White ever supports his knight on d5 with ♖ec3 then Black will be able to liberate his bishop with ...e4.

2) 17 ♖d2 is perhaps the critical line. Although Black can win a pawn with 17...♗b8 18 a3 a5 19 ♖c6 ♗xb2

the position is a real mess after 20 c4 .

12 d5 d8
13 xa6 $\text{c6!?$

This was the move I had been banking on. 13... bxa6 leads to a bad position after 14 cxd6 (or 14 xd4 dxc5 15 xc5 as 15... xe4? loses to 16 c6!) 14... c6 15 c7 xc7 16 dxc7 xe4 17 xd4 xd4 18 xd4 when 18... d7 is met by 19 ac1 and 18... b7 by 19 fe1 .

More tempting was 13... dxc5 and although White's position is a little awkward after 14 d3 c6 15 f4 c7 16 d2 g4 I can't believe that Black has enough for a piece.

14 xd4!

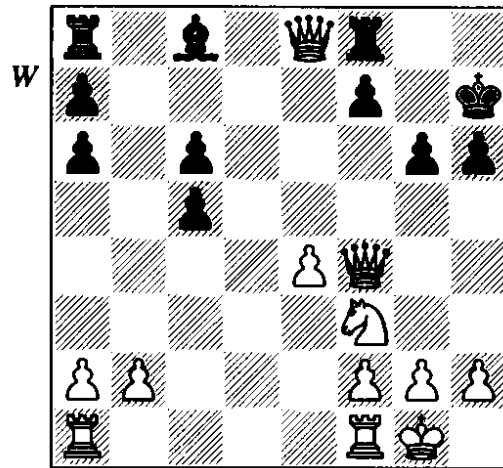
This is much stronger than 14 f4 xe4! 15 d2 (15 gx6 xg6 16 d3 f6 is good for Black) 15... g5! with advantage to Black.

14 ... dxc5

I had originally assumed that 14... cxd5 would give me a good game, but after 15 xd5! dxc5 16 xb7 e6 (or 16... xb7 17 xb7 f6 18 ae1 with advantage to White) 17 xc5 b8 both 18 d5 and 18 c6 b6 19 c3 are in White's favour. The only other real alternative is 14... bxa6 but this just transposes to the game after 15 f6+ xf6 16 xf6 dxc5 .

15 f6+! xf6
16 xf6 bxa6
17 f4 h7 (D)

The tactical phase of the game has ended and White has emerged with the advantage. Black's queen-side is a wreck but his game is not completely hopeless as he may be



able to generate counterplay along the b-file or by pushing an a-pawn; and no matter how sick they may be, for the moment he still possesses an extra pawn.

18 fc1 e7
19 $\text{e5!?$ e6

Pinning the knight by 19... d6 was also possible although after 20 d1 b8 (not 20... c7 21 gx6) 21 b3 (21 f6 xb2 allows another pin) 21... e6 22 ac1 White retains his edge.

20 e3!

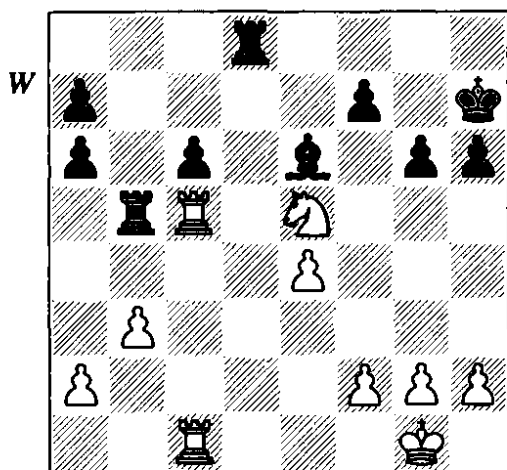
Of course White is not interested in 20 xc6 b7 when Black takes over the initiative.

20 ... d6
21 xc5 xc5
22 xc5 ab8
23 b3 b5
24 ac1?

A serious mistake which changes the whole complexion of the game. White should have played 24 d3 as 24... d8 can be met by 25 c3! .

24 ... d8! (D)

Suddenly the black rooks have sprung to life. I felt quite relieved round about here as if I was going to lose it would at least be without the



suffering I had envisaged a few moves ago. In fact Black is no longer worse as, due to the weakness of his back rank, White can't prevent a rook from penetrating into his position.

25 ♖xb5

This must have hurt White but there is no real choice as after **25 f4 ♖xc5 26 ♖xc5 ♖d1+** White's queenside will drop off.

25 ... cxb5
26 f4 ♖d2
27 ♖c7 ♖g7?!

27...♖g8 would have been more accurate, but time trouble was now upon us.

28 ♖f3! ♖xa2
29 ♖d4 ♖f8
30 ♖xa7 a5
31 h4

Although Black will be able to create a strong outside passed pawn White is not without his chances on the kingside.

31 ... a4
32 b4?!

I had expected **32 bxa4 ♖xa4 33 ♖xb5 ♖xe4 34 g3** with an inevitable draw. The text is an extremely risky winning attempt.

32 ... ♖c4
33 h5 a3
34 hxg6?

34 ♖h2 would have avoided the next note.

34 ... fxg6?

I didn't have the time to work out the consequences of **34...♖a1+ 35 ♖h2 a2** but later analysis showed that White is unable to defend, for example **36 ♖a8+ ♖g7 37 gxh7 ♖xf7!** (**37...♖xf7 38 ♖f5+ ♖h7 39 ♖a7 ♖d1 40 ♖xf7+ ♖h8 41 ♖a7** draws) **38 ♖c6** (**38 ♖f5 ♖d1!**) **38...♖b3!** (**38...♖d1 39 ♖e5+ ♖e7 40 ♖a7+** followed by **♖xc4** draws) **39 ♖d4 ♖a4!** and Black queens the a-pawn. Perpetual check can always be averted by marching the king to the queenside.

35 ♖h2! ♖f1

Now on **35...♖a1** White has **36 ♖c2**.

36 ♖g3 ♖xg2

36...♖xg2+ 37 ♖f3 a2 was much too risky. White can choose between **38 ♖xb5, 38 e5** and **38 f5**.

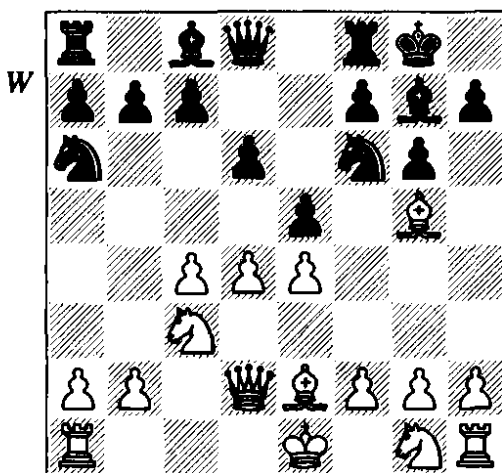
37 ♖xb5

White sensibly aims for the draw. The alternative **37 e5 ♖d5 38 e6 ♖g2+ 39 ♖h3 ♖d2 40 e7+ ♖f7 41 ♖xb5 ♖e6+ 42 ♖g3 a2** is favourable for Black.

37 ... ♖xe4
38 ♖c3 ♖g2+
39 ♖h3 ♖f3
40 ♖xa3 ♖b2
41 b5 g5
42 fxg5 hxg5
43 ♖g3 g4
44 ♖f4 ♖e7

Game 10
 Petursson – Grivas
 Katerini 1993

1	d4	♘f6
2	c4	g6
3	♘c3	♙g7
4	e4	d6
5	♙e2	0-0
6	♙g5	♘a6
7	♚d2	e5 (D)



8 d5

8 ♘f3 is well met by 8...♚e8!. Now 9 d5 transposes to line '1' in the note to White's 9th move and the only other sensible way of meeting the threat 9...exd4, viz. 9 dxe5, allows Black a very comfortable game. After 9...dxe5 there are a couple of examples:

1) 10 ♙d1 ♘c5 11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 12 ♘d5 ♙d8 13 ♚e3 ♘e6!? (13...♘d7 is also quite playable) 14 ♘xe5 c6 15 ♘c3 ♙b6 16 ♚h6 ♙c7! 17 ♘g4 f5 18 exf5 ♘f4 19 fxg6 hxg6 20 ♘e3 ♙f7 21 ♚g5 ♙f5! (White has two extra pawns but his two most important pieces are very unhappily placed) 22 g3 (this loses, but perhaps it is already too late; 22 0-0 ♚e5!

would also be fatal) 22...♘h3 23 ♚h4 ♘xf2! 24 ♚xf2 ♙b6 25 ♚e1 ♙xe3 with an overwhelming position for Black, Uhlmann-J.Polgar, Aruba 1992.

2) 10 0-0 ♘c5 11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 12 ♘d5 (12 b4 ♘e6 13 ♘d5 ♙g7 with ...c6 to follow is also quite good for Black) 12...♙d8 13 ♚e3 ♘d7 (Polgar would no doubt have played 13...♘e6 here as 14 ♘xe5 c6 15 ♘c3 ♙g5 looks very awkward for White) 14 c5 a5 15 ♘d2 c6 16 ♘c3 b5! 17 cxb6 ♙xb6 18 ♚h6 ♘f6 and Black's bishop pair eventually made themselves felt in Uhlmann-Podzielny, Bundesliga 1992.

8 ... ♚e8

It doesn't take a genius to work out the point behind this move – the knight on f6 is unpinned so that it can get out of the way of the f-pawn. The queen is, in fact, not so badly placed on e8; in some variations it can assist the advance ...b5 whilst in others it may spring out on the king-side. One thing that Black has to watch out for is an annoying ♘b5.

8...c6 is a major alternative and although it's not my main recommendation (it was a very close call but finally I felt that 8...♚e8 was more energetic) here is a summary of the current state of affairs:

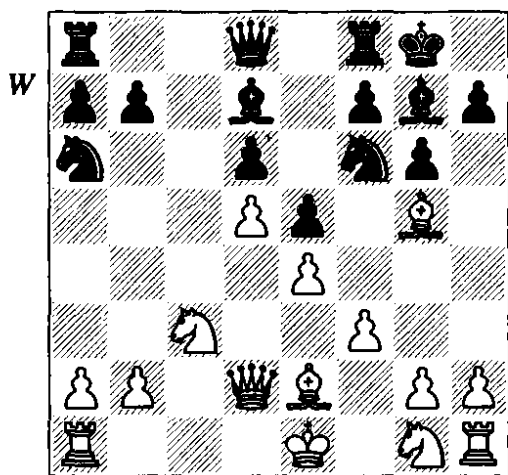
1) 9 ♙d3 (on 9 ♙d1, 9...♘c5 10 ♙c2 transposes but 9...cxd5 10 cxd5 b5!? gives active play) 9...♘c5 10 ♙c2 a5 11 ♘ge2 transposes to Game 8, line '2' in the note to White's 7th move.

2) 9 ♙f3 cxd5 10 ♘xd5 (a speciality of Farago although his results

have not been very encouraging; 10 cxd5 ♖d7 11 ♜ge2 b5 would hand Black the initiative) 10...♗c5 11 ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 12 ♖xf6 ♗xf6 13 ♜e2 b6 14 b3 ♖b7 15 ♜c3 ♜e6 16 0-0 ♜d4 17 ♖e2 ♗h4 1/2-1/2 Farago-Groszpete, Budapest Elekes mem 1993.

3) 9 ♜f3 ♜c5 10 ♖xf6 ♗xf6 11 b4 ♜a6 12 a3 c5! (a typical idea in many lines with the knight on a6) 13 ♖b1 ♗e7 14 0-0 f5 15 ♜e1, Bareev-G.Kuzmin, USSR Ch (Leningrad) 1990 and now Bareev gives 15...fxe4 16 ♜xe4 ♖f5 17 ♖f3 b6 18 ♜d3 ♖ac8 19 bxc5 ♖xe4 20 ♖xe4 ♜xc5 as equal.

4) 9 f3 cxd5 10 cxd5 ♖d7 (D) and now there are several possibilities for White:



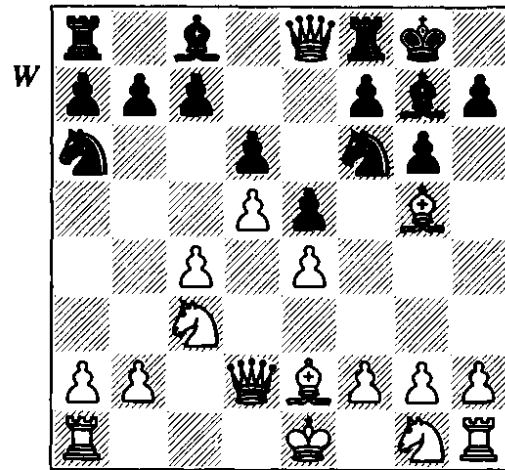
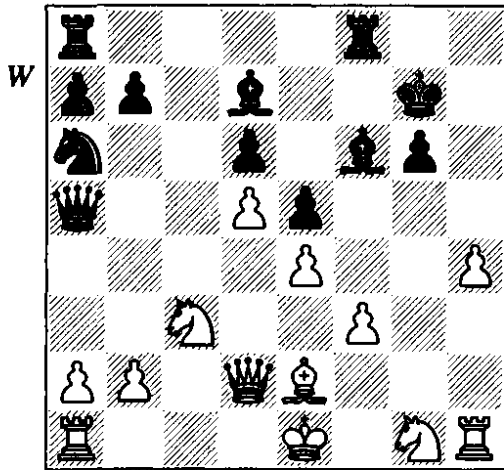
4a) 11 ♖xa6 bxa6 12 ♜ge2 ♗b6 (12...♖b8 13 ♖e3 ♖b7 14 0-0 ♜e8 is an alternative) 13 ♖e3 ♗b7 14 0-0 ♜e8 (14...♜h5!?) 15 ♖ac1 (15 b3 f5 16 exf5 gxf5 17 ♖h6 ♖xf6 18 ♗xh6 ♖f6 is equal according to Dolmatov) 15...f5 16 exf5 gxf5 17 f4 ♜f6 18 h3 ♜h5! was fine for Black in the game Yermolinsky-Dolmatov, Groningen 1993.

4b) 11 ♖b5 (a positionally justifiable exchange but it wastes time) 11...♖xb5 (11...♗a5!?) 12 ♜xb5 ♗b6 13 ♜c3 ♜c5 (threatening ...♗xb2) 14 b3?! (best is 14 ♖d1 when Dolmatov suggests 14...a5 15 ♜ge2 a4) 14...♜h5 15 ♖e3 ♜f4 16 g3, Petursson-Dolmatov, Lucerne Wcht 1993, and now 16...♖ac8! 17 ♖d1! (17 gxf4? exf4 18 ♖d4 ♜d3+ 19 ♗xd3 ♗xd4 is good for Black) 17...♜fd3+ 18 ♜f1 ♗a6 19 ♜g2 b5 is unclear according to Dolmatov.

4c) 11 g4 h6 (11...♗a5 12 h4 transposes into the next note, but 12 ♜h3! is quite good for White, for example 12...♖fc8 13 ♜f2 ♜c5 14 ♖b1 ♗b4 15 ♜b5!? ♗xd2+ 16 ♜xd2, Petursson-Kotronias, Reykjavik 1992, with a typical Averbakh ending slightly in White's favour) 12 ♖e3 (12 ♖xh6 ♜xe4 is a trick that should be familiar to all King's Indian players) 12...h5 13 h3 ♜c5 14 0-0-0 ♗b8 15 ♜b1, Alterman-Xie Jun, Cap d'Agde 1994, and now Alterman gives 15...b5! 16 b4 ♜a4 17 ♜xa4 bxa4 18 ♜a1 ♖c8 as =.

4d) 11 h4 ♗a5 12 g4 (12 ♜h3 can be met by 12...♜h5) 12...h5! 13 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 14 gxh5 ♜g7 15 hxg6 fxg6 (D) is another typical motif that should be familiar to all King's Indian fans as this sort of sacrifice can occur in several variations. For his pawn Black has obtained a relatively secure king position and chances for active play on both the dark squares and the queenside.

Ioseliani-Gallagher, Biel 1990 now continued 16 h5 ♖h8 17 h6+ ♜h7 18 ♜h3 ♖xh3 19 ♖xh3 ♖ac8



20 ♖f1 ♜c5 21 ♜b1 ♞d8 22 ♖g2 ♙g5 23 ♞e1 ♜d7! (perhaps the white king has a magnet attached to it) 24 ♞g3 ♙f4 25 ♞g4 ♜e8! 26 ♖h1 ♜f6 27 ♞g2 ♞g8 and Black, with several tasty outposts on the kingside, had more than enough compensation for the pawn.

Ioseliani was clearly impressed as a year later she was to be found on the black side; Gaprindashvili-Ioseliani, Tbilisi 1991 went instead 16 ♙xa6 bxa6 17 ♞g2 ♜h8 18 h5 ♜h6 19 ♜ge2 ♜b8 20 0-0-0 ♞b4 21 ♜d2 ♞g8 22 ♜c2 ♖f7 23 hxg6+ ♞gxg6 24 ♞f1 ♞b6 with roughly equal chances, although 1-0, 51.

5) 9 h4 cxd5 10 cxd5 ♙d7 (or 10...♞a5!? 11 f3 ♜h5 12 g4 ♜g3 13 ♜h3 ♜xe2 14 ♜gxe2 b5 15 a3 f6 16 ♙e3 h5 17 ♞g3 hxg4 18 fxg4 ♙d7 19 h5 g5 20 ♜c1 1/2-1/2 Serper-Ye Jiangchuan, Jakarta 1994) 11 f3 (11 ♙xa6 bxa6 12 h5 ♞a5 13 ♜ge2 ♜ab8 14 f3 ♞b6! was good for Black in Glek-Moskalenko, Odessa 1989) 11...♞a5 and we have transposed to variation '4d'.

Let us now return to the position after 8...♞e8 (D).

9 ♙d1

This funny-looking move has, to date, been White's most popular choice. The bishop vacates e2 for the king's knight and heads for c2 from where it will have far more influence on events (remember that Black nearly always plays ...f5). The main drawback to this plan is that it is very time-consuming but White hopes that with the centre blocked this will not prove too serious. There are a whole host of alternatives, some of them with similar ideas to the text whilst others are less subtle:

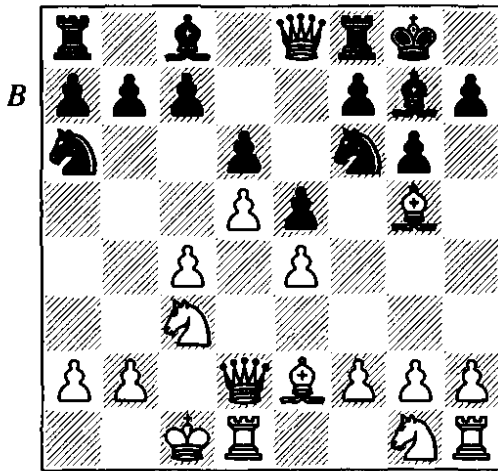
1) 9 ♜f3 ♜h5! 10 g3 f5 with a couple of examples:

1a) 11 exf5 gxf5 12 ♙h6 f4 13 ♙xg7, Gulko-Djurhuus, Manila OL 1992, and now instead of 13...♖xg7 14 ♞g1! which allowed White to develop some initiative, Black should play 13...♜xg7 with an equal game (Gulko).

1b) 11 ♜h4 f4 12 g4 ♜f6 13 f3 h5! 14 gxh5 ♜h7 15 ♜xg6 (15 ♞g1 ♜xg5 16 ♞xg5 ♞e7) 15...♜xg5 16 ♜xf8 ♖xf8 17 0-0-0 ♞xh5 and Black eventually converted his material advantage in Tisdall-W.Watson, Oslo 1991. These variations illustrate why White normally tries

to develop his king's knight to e2 rather than f3.

2) 9 0-0-0 (*D*) when Black has:



2a) 9...♞c5 10 f3 ♞h5 11 b4 (11 ♙h6 a5 12 ♙xg7 ♜xg7 13 ♙d3 f5 14 ♙c2 fxe4 15 ♞xe4 ♞xe4 16 ♙xe4 ♞f6 17 ♙c2 b5! was good for Black in Jasnikowski-Piket, Novi Sad OL 1990) 11...♞a6 12 a3 ♞f4 13 ♙f1 f6 14 ♙h4 ♙h6 15 ♜b2 f5 16 ♞c2 fxe4 17 ♞xe4 ♙f5 18 ♙f2 ♞b8 1/2-1/2 Raetsky-Golubev, Biel 1994. A bit more of this game would have been helpful but it looks OK for Black.

2b) 9...♞h5!?! (this seems playable even when White hasn't wasted a tempo on 9 ♙d1 or 9 ♙f3) 10 ♙xh5 gxh5 11 ♙h6 f6!?! (11...f5 looks more natural) 12 ♙xg7 ♜xg7 13 f4 ♜h8 14 ♞f3 ♞c5 15 f5 (15 ♜hf1!?! has been suggested) 15...♜g8 16 ♞h6 ♞f7 17 b4 ♞d7 18 ♞e2 a5 19 b5 ♞c5 20 ♞g3 ♜xg3!?! 21 hxg3 ♞xe4 22 ♞xh5 ♞xh5 23 ♜xh5 ♞xg3 24 ♜h3 ♞e2+! 25 ♜d2 ♞f4 26 ♜h6 ♜g7 27 ♜dh1 ♙xf5 28 g3 ♞d3 29 g4 ♙e4 30 ♜e3 ♞c5 and Black had good compensation for the exchange, S.Ivanov-Kovalev, Minsk 1995.

3) 9 h4 ♞c5 (9...♞h5 is suggested by Burgess but there seems to be no harm in waiting to collect the white pawn that is destined to arrive on h5) 10 ♞c2 (10 f3 ♞h5 is good for Black while 10 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 11 ♞f3 a5 12 0-0-0 ♙g7 13 h5 f5 14 hxg6 ♞xg6 was about level in Piket-J.Polgar, Aruba 1995) 10...a5 11 h5 (consistent; nobody has tried 11 0-0-0) 11...♞xh5 12 ♙xh5 gxh5 and now:

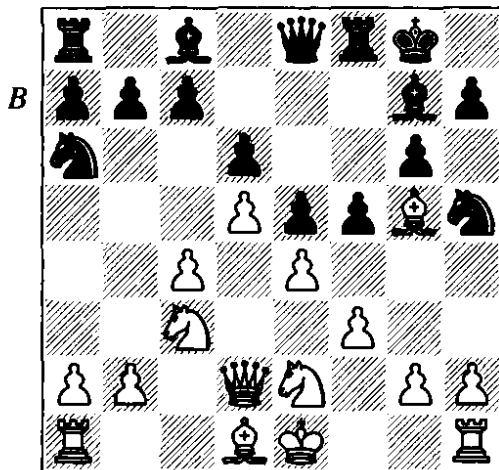
3a) 13 ♞b5?! f5! 14 ♞xc7 ♞g6 15 ♞h3 fxe4 16 ♙e3 ♞xg2 17 0-0-0 ♙xh3 18 ♞xa8 ♞d3+ 19 ♜b1 ♙g4 20 ♜dg1 ♞f3 21 ♞c7 ♞xf2 22 ♙xf2 e3 23 ♙xe3 ♙f5 24 ♙h6 ♙xc2+ 25 ♜xc2 ♞e4+ 0-1 was a real hammering for White in Kwatschewsky-Gross, Balatonbereny 1995.

3b) 13 ♙e3 ♞a6 (13...b6!?) 14 ♞ge2 f5 15 f3 ♞g6 16 ♜h2 occurred in Kakhiani-Kovalev, Helsinki 1992 and although White eventually won the game I can't believe that Black stands badly here.

3b1) Knaak gives the variation 16...♙h6 17 ♙xh6! ♞xh6 18 ♞d2 ♞g6 (18...♞xd2+ 19 ♜xd2 fxe4 20 ♞xe4 b5!?! is also suggested by Knaak who continues 21 cxb5 ♞b4 22 ♞2c3 ♙b7 23 ♜xh5 ♞xd5 24 ♜ah1 ±) 19 0-0-0 with attacking chances for White, but 19...♞c5 20 ♜dh1 ♜f7 (20...fxe4 21 ♜xh5 might be good for White) 21 ♜xh5 ♜g7 looks fine for Black to me.

3b2) 16...h4!?, trying to use the extra pawn is another idea, e.g. 17 0-0-0 f4 18 ♙f2 h3 19 ♜g1 (or 19 gxh3 ♞h5) 19...♞h5 with an extremely playable position for Black.

4) 9 f3 ♖h5 10 ♔d1 (10 g4 is reserved for greedy masochists; after 10...♗f4 11 ♔xf4 exf4 12 ♗xf4 f5 White was already struggling in the game Buckley-Fishbein, Philadelphia 1991) 10...f5 11 ♗ge2 (D) and now Black has several possible continuations:



4a) 11...♔d7 12 ♔c2 ♗b4! (seizing the chance to gain some space on the queenside) 13 ♔b1 a5 14 a3 ♗a6 15 b3 f4 (15...♗c5, maintaining the tension, also comes into consideration) 16 ♔c2 ♔f6 17 ♔xf6 ♗xf6 (17...♗xf6 is more natural and if White continues as in the game Black saves several tempi; perhaps he was concerned about 18 g3) 18 0-0-0 ♗c5 19 ♗b2 b5! (otherwise Black will be pushed back by b4) 20 cxb5 ♔xb5 21 ♗xb5 ♗xb5 22 ♗c3 ♗b7 23 ♗a2 ♗ff8, followed by transferring the knight on h5 round to the queenside, gave roughly equal play in S.Ivanov-Ryskin, St Petersburg 1994.

4b) 11...♗c5 12 b4 fxe4!? 13 bxc5 (13 fxe4, perhaps) 13...exf3 14 gxf3 ♗xf3 with unfathomable complications. The game Kriszany-Czebe,

Budapest 1993 continued 15 ♔c2 e4 16 0-0-0 e3 17 ♗e1 ♗e5 18 h4 ♗g3 19 ♗d4 ♗f2 20 ♗g1 ♔f5 21 ♔xe3 ♗e2+! 22 ♗cxe2 ♗xe3+ 23 ♗d2 ♗e8 24 ♗xf5 gxf5 25 ♔d3 f4 26 h5 ♗h8 27 h6 ♔f6 and White was completely tied down (0-1, 37).

4c) 11...fxe4 12 ♗xe4 (12 fxe4 ♗f7 13 ♔e3 ♗f4 14 ♗g3 h5) 12...♗f4 13 0-0 ♗f7 14 ♔c2 h6 15 ♔h4 g5 16 ♔f2 is given as unclear by Sokolin.

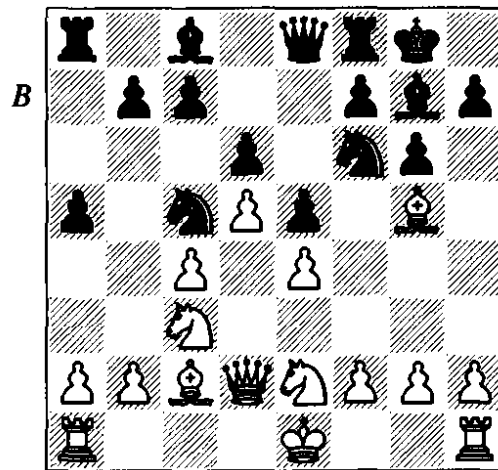
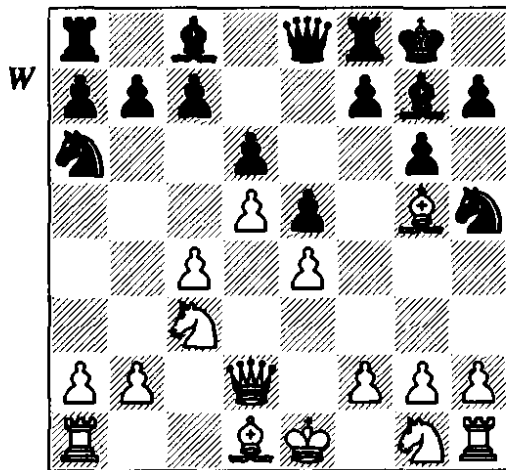
4d) 11...♗f7 12 ♔c2 f4 intending ...♔f6 was suggested by Knaak.

5) 9 ♔f3 h5!? (9...♗h5 10 ♔xh5 transposes to the main game) 10 h3 (standard continuations such as 10 ♗ge2 ♗h7 11 ♔h6 f5 were not very appealing to White, but it's hard to believe that this is an improvement) 10...♗h7 11 g4 ♗xg5 12 ♗xg5 f6 13 ♗d2 (13 ♗h4 hxg4 14 hxg4 ♗f7! is mentioned by Glek) 13...h4! 14 ♔g2 f5 15 ♗f3 (15 gxf5 gxf5 16 exf5 e4! and 16 ♗f3 fxe4 followed by 17...♗f4 are not better) 15...fxg4 16 ♗xh4 ♗f4! with very active play for Black, F.Portisch-Glek, St Ingbert 1991.

6) 9 ♔d3 has hardly been seen here, presumably because of 9...♗h5 (although 9...♗g4 and 9...♗d7 may also be worth investigating). The one example I've seen, Petursson-Nunn, London Lloyds Bank 1994, actually continued 9...♔d7 10 ♗ge2 ♗c5 11 ♔c2 a5 12 f3 transposing to line '2' below.

9 ... ♗h5!? (D)

I have a vivid memory of the first time I saw such a knight move. Playing through the games of the 1972



World Championship match I was astounded by Fischer's 11...h5! in Game 3. Even after all the fancy explanations I had great difficulty in coming to terms with the move. Twenty years on I have finally grasped what it's all about and I am even recommending such a course. Of course after 10 xh5 gxh5 Black's kingside pawns are shattered, but as compensation for this he will have gained the bishop pair and an open g-file for his major pieces to operate on. Even so, the text may not be to everyone's taste so let's take a look at the alternative, 9...c5. After 10 c2 a5 11 g2 (11 b5? fxe4 12 xe4 dxe4 13 e3 dxg5 14 xc7 d8 15 xa8 f5 was tremendous for Black in Amura-C.Foisor, Subotica wom IZ 1991) there is (D):

1) 11...h5 12 b5! d7 13 0-0-0 b6 14 f3 a4 and now 15 b1 followed by ec3 would give White an edge. Instead Seirawan-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1991 continued 15 g4?! f4 16 xf4 exf4 17 xf4 a6 18 b4? (18 a3 was better) 18...xb5 19 xb5 e7 20 d2 a3 21 b4 e5! with a decisive attack for

Black. Yet another example of how dangerous it is for White to open the long diagonal in the King's Indian.

2) 11...d7 12 f3 with a further branch:

2a) 12...h5, intending ...h7 and ...f5, is well met by the prophylactic 13 e3!. Petursson-Djurhuus, Gausdal 1995 now continued 13...h7 14 0-0-0 b6 (14...f5? 15 xc5 dxc5 16 d6 c6 17 a4) 15 h3 h4 16 g3! e7 17 dg1 a4 18 f4 with a clear plus for White.

2b) 12...h8 is an alternative way of preparing ...f5. After 13 0-0 g8 14 ael f6 15 e3 f5 16 exf5 gxf5 17 h1 b6 18 f4 e4 19 g4 h6 20 gxf5 dxf5 21 xc5 e3! 22 xe3 dxe3 23 g1 dxc2 24 xc2 f5 Black possessed a powerful bishop pair as compensation for the pawn, Tisdall-Manninen, Gausdal 1991.

2c) 12...b5 is also quite playable. After 13 cxb5 xb5 14 dxb5 xb5 White can claim, at most, a small edge.

10 xh5

10 f3 would be pretty bizarre in this particular position but would in fact transpose to line '4' in the note to White's 9th move.

10 ... gxf5
 11 ♖ge2 f6!

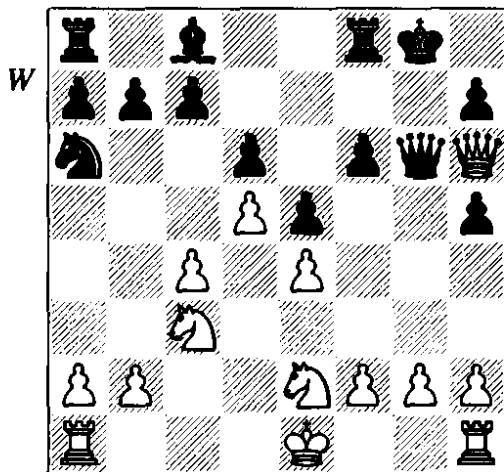
An important improvement over the game Petursson-Glek, Belgrade 1988, which went 11...f5 12 exf5 ♙xf5 13 ♖g3 e4 (13...♗g6 14 ♖xf5 ♜xf5 15 ♙e3 ♗xg2 16 0-0-0 is good for White) and now White should have played 14 ♙h6! ♖c5 15 0-0 a5 16 ♙xg7 ♗xg7 17 f3! with some advantage as Black's king is very exposed.

12 ♙h6

One of the main points behind 11...f6 is that after 12 ♙e3 Black doesn't play ...f5 at once, but first 12...h4! in order to prevent ♖g3. 12 ♙h4 is also not recommended on account of 12...♗g6.

12 ... ♙xh6
 13 ♗xh6 ♗g6 (D)

Black's opening problems are already history.



14 ♗d2 f5

15 f3 b6!

With the simple idea of capturing on e4 and playing ...♖c5.

16 exf5 ♙xf5
 17 ♖g3 ♙d7!?

17...♖c5 18 ♖xf5 ♗xf5 19 0-0 a5 was good enough for equality.

18 0-0?

The white king would have been better off on the queenside according to Grivas.

18 ... h4?

Black misses a golden opportunity. After 18...♜f4! Grivas gives 19 ♖ge4 ♜af8 20 ♗h1 ♖c5 21 ♜fe1 h4 22 h3 ♙f5 with advantage to Black.

19 ♖ge4 ♖c5
 20 ♗g5! ♗xg5
 21 ♖xg5 a5
 22 ♜ad1 ♜f4

The game is level. The remaining moves were 23 ♖ge4 ♜af8 24 h3 ♖xe4 25 fxe4 ♗g7 26 ♜xf4 ♜xf4 27 ♜f1 ♜xf1+ 28 ♗xf1 ♗f6 29 ♗f2 ♗g5 30 ♗e3 ♙e8 31 b3 ♙d7 32 ♖d1 ♙e8 33 ♖f2 ♙d7 34 ♖d3 ♙e8 35 b4 axb4 36 ♖xb4 ♗f6 37 ♖a6 c5 38 dxc6 ♙xc6 39 ♖b4 ♙b7 40 a4 ♗g5 41 ♗f3 ♗f6 42 ♖c2 ♙c8 43 ♗e3 ♙e6 44 ♖a3 ♗e7 45 ♗d3 ♗d7 46 ♖b1 ♗c6 47 ♖d2 ♗c5 48 ♗c3 ♙f7 49 ♖b3+ ♗c6 50 a5 bxa5 51 ♖xa5+ ♗b6 52 ♖b3 ♙g6 53 ♗d3 ♗c6 54 ♖d2 ♗c5 55 ♖f3 ♙f7 56 ♖xh4 ♙xc4+ 57 ♗e3 d5 58 exd5 1/2-1/2

4 White plays ♖g5

The first two games of this chapter are concerned with the Smyslov System in which White plays ♖g5 and follows up with the solid e3. One of his principal ideas is to limit the activity of the King's Indian bishop but if Black does manage to prise open the long diagonal then the absence of White's dark-squared bishop from the queenside may be keenly felt. Therefore my main suggestion is for Black to attack the centre with ...c5, and this is the subject of Game 12. Playing for ...e5 is, as ever, an important option but I feel that here it plays into White's hands by increasing the relevance of the bishop on g5. In fact, there doesn't seem to be any clear path to equality for Black after playing ...e5, which, along with a couple of promising sidelines, is the subject of Game 11. A word about chasing the bishop from g5: it almost always makes sense for Black to play ...h6 but he should be wary about following up with ...g5 which involves a much more serious weakening of the kingside. A good rule is that ...g5 should only be played when there is a concrete follow-up in mind, such as gaining the bishop pair with ...♗h5xg3, or removing the threat against e7 so that ...♚b6 can be played.

The final game of the chapter deals with ♖g5 followed by e4, which

is much less popular and much sharper than the Smyslov System.

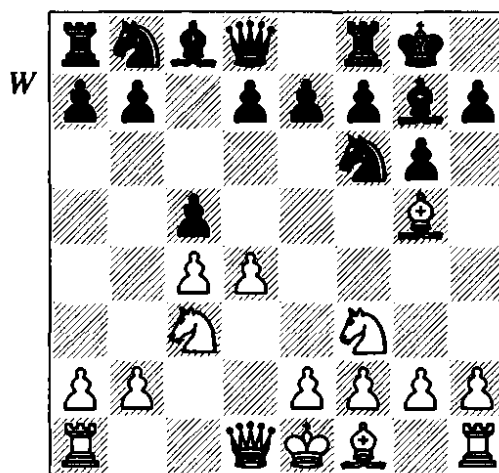
Game 11 Dely – Haik France 1970

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 g6
3 ♘c3 ♖g7
4 ♘f3

4 ♖g5 is almost certain to transpose to lines considered later.

4 ... d6

If Black had played 4...0-0 instead then there is another interesting plan against 5 ♖g5, based on playing ...c5 and then ...d5. This runs 4...0-0 5 ♖g5 c5 (D) and now White can support or block the centre (6 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 7 ♗e4 ♚b6 =):



1) 6 e3 cxd4 7 exd4 (7 ♗xd4 ♚a5!) 7...d5!?. Normally one would be hard-pressed to find similarities

between the King's Indian and the Caro-Kann but, amazingly enough, this position is actually classified in the *ECO* code under B14. The Panov Attack move-order goes 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♟f6 5 ♟c3 g6 6 ♖g5 ♖g7 7 ♟f3 0-0, arriving at the same position as after 7...d5. White now has:

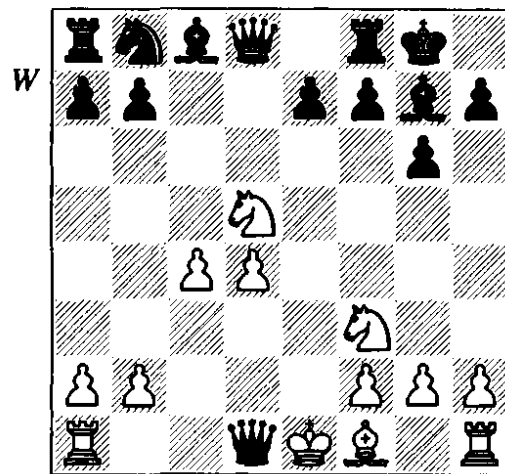
1a) 8 cxd5 (rare, but perhaps only because White feels he should be trying to refute the pawn sacrifice) 8...♟xd5 9 ♗b3 ♟xc3 (9...♟b6!?) 10 bxc3 ♟c6?! (I would prefer 10...♗c7 to this unwieldy move) 11 ♖e2 b6 12 0-0 ♗d6 13 ♖ad1 e6 14 ♟d2 ♟a5 15 ♗b4! ♗c7 (15...♗xb4 16 cxb4 ♟c6 17 ♖f3 ♖b7 18 ♟c4 is promising for White) 16 ♟e4 h6 17 ♗e7 ♗xe7 18 ♖xe7 ♖e8 19 ♟f6+ ♖xf6 20 ♖xf6 with advantage to White, Smyslov-Martinović, Groningen 1989/90.

1b) 8 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 with a further branch:

1b1) 9 cxd5 ♖g4 (9...e6 should probably be met by 10 ♖c4 according to S.Pedersen and Ca.Hansen) 10 ♖c4 (10 ♖e2 ♟d7 11 0-0 ♖xf3 12 ♖xf3 ♗b6 13 ♗a4 ♗xb2 14 ♗xd7 ♗xc3 15 ♗xb7 1/2-1/2 Pekarek-Zünger, Prague 1989) 10...♗b6 (*ECO* gives 10...♟d7 11 0-0 ♖xf3 12 ♗xf3 ♖xd4 13 ♗e4 ♖f6 14 ♖ad1 ± Smyslov-Taimanov, USSR 1971) 11 ♖b3 ♟d7 12 0-0 ♖xf3 13 ♗xf3 ♖xd4 14 ♖ad1 ♖ac8 15 ♖fe1 ♖xc3! 16 bxc3 ♗d6 17 ♗e3 ♖fe8 18 ♗xa7 ♖xc3 19 ♗xb7 ♖c7 20 ♗b5 ♖ec8 21 ♗e2 ♟c5 22 ♗e3 (22 ♖c2) 22...♟xb3 23 axb3 ♖b8 24 ♗g3 ♗xg3 1/2-1/2 Sadler-Nunn, Oviedo rpd 1992.

Black's positional compensation meant that he was never really in danger.

1b2) 9 ♟xd5 (to the uninitiated this may seem like a freebie but the weakness of d4 means that it will be impossible for White to retain his extra pawn without making serious positional concessions) 9...♖g7 (*D*) and now White has tried:



1b21) 10 ♟c3 ♖g4 11 ♖e2 (11 d5 ♗a5 12 ♗c2 ♖xf3 13 gxf3 ♟d7 14 ♖e2 ♖ac8 15 0-0 ♟b6 16 ♗b3 ♖xc3 17 bxc3 ♖c7 18 ♖fd1 ♖fc8 ♖ is similar, Moore-Burgess, Frome 1991) 11...♟c6 12 d5 ♖xf3 13 ♖xf3 ♟a5 (13...♟e5!?) 14 ♖e2, as in Pachman-Andersson, Geneva 1977, and now 14...♖xc3+! 15 bxc3 ♗c7 16 ♗a4 ♖fc8 enables Black to regain his pawn with some advantage.

1b22) 10 ♖e2 ♟c6 11 0-0 ♗d6 12 ♟c3 ♟xd4 13 ♟xd4 ♗xd4 14 ♗b3 with rough equality, Kristinsson-H.Olafsson, Reykjavik 1984.

1b23) 10 ♟e3 ♟c6 (*ECO* gives 10...♗a5+ 11 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 12 ♟xd2 ♖d8 13 ♖d3 ♟c6 14 ♟c2 ♖g4 15 d5 ♖xf3 16 gxf3 ♟e5 17 ♖e2 e6 18 ♟e3 = Lputian-Gufeld, USSR 1981;

18...♗h6 wins the pawn back) 11 d5? (better is 11 ♖c2, which Grünberg assesses as = after 11...♗g4) 11...♗a5+! 12 ♖d2 (White probably intended 12 ♗d2, spotting too late 12...♗xb2!) 12...♗xb2! 13 ♖b1 (13 dxc6 ♗xa1 14 ♗xa1 ♖d8 15 ♗b2 bxc6 16 ♗e2 ♖b8! 17 ♗c2 ♖b7 is a variation provided by Grünberg; White's days are clearly numbered) 13...♗c3 14 dxc6 ♖d8 15 ♖d5 ♗xd2+ 16 ♗xd2 ♗xd2+ 17 ♖xd2 bxc6 and Black eventually converted his extra pawn in Knaak-H.Grünberg, E.German Ch 1989.

2) 6 d5 (in general White seems reluctant to play d5 but Ehlvest is obviously an exception) 6...d6 7 ♖d2 h6 8 ♗h4 and now:

2a) 8...g5 9 ♗g3 ♖h5 10 e3 ♖xg3 11 hxg3 f5 (11...e6 is an alternative) 12 ♗d3 ♖d7 13 ♖f3 e6 14 dxe6 ♖b6 15 g4! ♗xe6 16 gxf5 ♗xf5 17 ♗xf5 ♖xf5 18 ♗c2 ♗f8 19 ♖e4!, Ehlvest-Pugachev, St Petersburg 1994. Here we have a conflict of opinions as Ehlvest believes that White has a clear advantage and Glatman assesses the position as = after 19...d5 20 ♖g3 ♖f7; somehow, I don't think he took 21 ♖xg5! into account.

2b) Kasparov preferred to take the Benko option and his game with Ehlvest continued 8...a6 9 e4 b5 10 ♗e2 (White declines the offer as h4 is not where the dark-squared bishop belongs in a Benko) 10...b4 11 ♖a4 ♖h7 12 0-0 ♖d7 13 ♗c2 g5 14 ♗g3 ♖e5 15 ♖ae1 a5 16 ♖f3 ♖g6 17 e5!? g4 18 ♖h4 ♖xe5 (18...♖xh4 19 ♗xh4 ♗xe5 20 ♗d3 with the double

threat of ♖xc5 and ♗xh7+) 19 ♖f5 ♗xf5 20 ♗xf5 ♗c8 21 ♗xc8 ♖axc8 22 ♗xe5 dxe5 23 ♗xg4 f5 24 ♗d1 ♖g5! (on d6 the knight will feel like an octopus) 25 f3 ♖f7 26 ♗c2 ♖d6 27 b3 e4!, keeping the knight out of the game, gave Black slightly the better of a draw in Ehlvest-Kasparov, Horgen 1995.

5 ♗g5 0-0

It is surprising that 5...c6!? is not tried more often as after the virtually automatic 6 e3 Black has 6...♗a5! (intending 7...♖e4), which seems to equalize at once. Schmidt-Hug, Debrecen Echt 1992 continued 7 ♗d2 (nobody has played 7 ♗d3, when 7...♗f5 looks sensible and 7...♗g4 8 ♗h4 {8 ♗f4? e5!} 8...♗h5 interesting) 7...♗g4 8 ♗e2 (8 b4!? ♗xb4 9 ♖b1 ♗a5 10 ♖xb7 ♖bd7! is unclear according to S.Pedersen) 8...♗xf3 9 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 10 ♗xf3 ♖d7 11 0-0-0 = 12 ♖fd1 ♖fd8 13 ♖ab1 ♗c7 14 b4 a5 15 b5 ♖b6 16 ♗d3 c5 17 ♖d5 ♖xd5 18 ♗xd5 ♗b6 19 dxc5 dxc5 20 ♗e4 ♖ab8 21 ♗f3 ♖g7 22 a4 1/2-1/2. Perhaps this is not the sort of game that the majority of King's Indian players are after but it's worth bearing in mind if you only need a draw.

If this line catches on then White players will probably start looking for an alternative 6th move; 6 h3 and 6 e4 spring to mind. Here are a couple of suggestions, off the top of my head, which you shouldn't take too seriously. Against 6 h3 Black could try 6...♗a5 7 ♗d2 b5!? whilst on 6 e4 chasing the bishop doesn't look a bad idea, e.g. 6...h6 7 ♗h4 g5 (Black

could also throw in 7...♖a5) 8 ♖g3 ♘h5 and White usually prefers his pawn back on e3 in this type of position.

6 e3

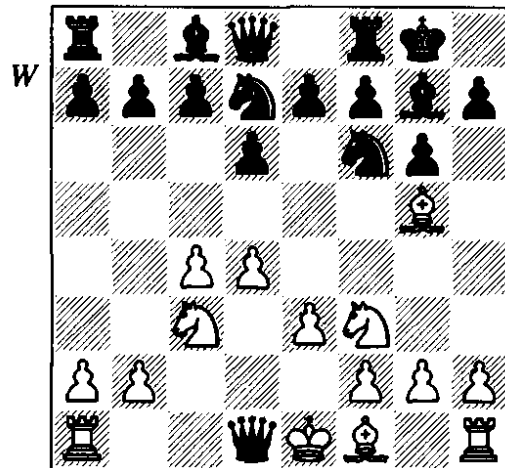
The position after 6 e4 (more commonly reached via the move order 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♘f3 0-0 6 ♖g5) was once favoured by East German grandmasters Uhlmann and Malich, but when they dropped it from their repertoires the line virtually ceased to exist. It is, I suppose, an Averbakh without the flexibility. The generally recommended course for Black is to follow the game Uhlmann-Fischer, Havana OL 1966: 6...h6 7 ♖h4 g5 (7...♘a6!? is worth thinking about as 8 ♖e2 e5 9 d5 g5 10 ♖g3 ♘xe4 transposes to a line considered in Game 9) 8 ♖g3 ♘h5 9 ♖e2 e6 (preparing ...f5) 10 d5 (10 0-0 ♘c6 11 d5 ♘e7 12 ♖c1 ♘f4 was unclear in Malich-A.Rodriguez, Halle 1976) 10...f5 11 ♘d4 ♘xg3 12 hxg3 fxe4 13 ♘xe6 ♖xe6 14 dxe6 ♖xc3+!? (14...♖f6 is more solid; *ECO* gives 15 ♘xe4 ♖xe6 16 ♖d5 ♖e8 17 f3 ♘c6 18 0-0-0 =) 15 bxc3 ♖f6 16 e7! ♖e8 (16...♖xf2+ 17 ♘d2 ♖e8 18 ♖xh6 leaves the black king too exposed) 17 ♖b1 ♘a6 18 ♖d4 ♘g7 19 ♖xb7 ♖xe7 20 ♖xf6+ ♘xf6 21 ♖xh6+ ♘g7 22 ♖h5 ♘g6 with equality according to *ECO*.

6 ... ♘bd7 (D)

My main recommendation, 6...c5, is the subject of the next game.

7 ♖c2!

Accurate and unpleasant to meet (at least in my experience). With Black's sixth move signalling his



intention to play ...e5 White's first priority is to put a rook on the d-file, after which the pressure in the centre will force Black to make a concession such as ...♖e8.

7 ♖e2 would allow Black a much easier ride. Ruban-J.Polgar, Groningen 1993 continued 7...e5 8 0-0 h6 9 ♖h4 g5 10 ♖g3 ♘h5 11 dxe5 ♘xg3 12 hxg3 dxe5 13 ♖c2 f5 14 ♖ad1 c6 15 ♘d2 h5!? 16 e4 (of course 16 ♖xh5 is met by 16...g4) 16...f4 17 gxf4 gxf4 18 ♖xh5 (a hot pawn but Black would have a strong attack anyway) 18...♖h4 19 ♖f3 ♘f6 20 ♖b3?! ♘h8 21 ♖fe1 ♘g4 22 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 23 f3 ♖ad8! 24 ♘f1 (24 ♖c2 would have put up more resistance) 24...♖xf3! 25 gxf3 ♖g8 26 ♘h2 ♖f8+ 27 ♘h1 ♖c5 28 ♖e2 ♖d7! 29 ♘a4 ♖f2 0-1 (the threat of ...♖xh2+ is decisive).

7 ... e5

7...c6 is also possible when play is quite likely to transpose back into the main line. However Black does have the option of playing a quick ...a6 and ...b5, e.g. 8 ♖d1 h6 (or 8...a6 9 ♖e2 b5 10 a3 ♖b7 11 0-0 ♖c7 12 ♘d2 ♖ac8 13 ♖h4 ± Inkiiov-Gallagher, Toulouse 1993) 9 ♖h4

♙a5 (9...♙e8, intending ...e5, is worth consideration) 10 ♖e2 a6 11 0-0 b5 12 a3 bxc4 13 ♖xc4 ♘b6 14 ♖e2 ♘bd5 15 ♘xd5 cxd5 16 b4 ♙b6 17 ♖c1 ♖d7, Inkirov-Soltis, Moscow 1989, is given as = by ECO, although I would have thought that Black may still have some work to do after 18 ♙c7.

8 ♖d1 h6

Black usually flicks in ...h6 at some point as it is very useful to have the option of ...g5.

9 ♖h4 ♖e8

As previously mentioned this can be considered at least a minor concession as Black would prefer to keep his rook on f8 to support the thematic advance ...f5. But the threat to the e-pawn has to be dealt with and 9...♙e7 10 ♘d5 and 9...♙e8 10 ♘b5 are both out of the question, whilst 9...exd4 10 ♘xd4 is at least an edge for White. That leaves 9...g5, but Black should be wary about playing such a move when he has castled and White hasn't. After 10 ♖g3 ♘h5 11 dxe5 ♘xg3 12 hxg3 dxe5 13 ♖d3 Black has problems on the light squares.

10 ♖e2 c6

11 0-0 ♙c7

11...♙a5 transposes to Smyslov-Westerinen, Hastings 1972 where White obtained the better game after 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 ♘d2 ♘f8 14 a3 ♖f5 15 ♙c1 g5 16 ♖g3 ♘g6 17 b4 ♙c7 18 f3 ♖ad8 19 c5 ♘d5 20 ♘de4 ♘xc3 21 ♙xc3! whilst 11...♙e7 12 b4 ♙f8 13 b5 ♘h7 14 bxc6 bxc6 15 d5 was good for White in Bosboom-Nijboer, Dutch Ch 1991.

12 h3!?

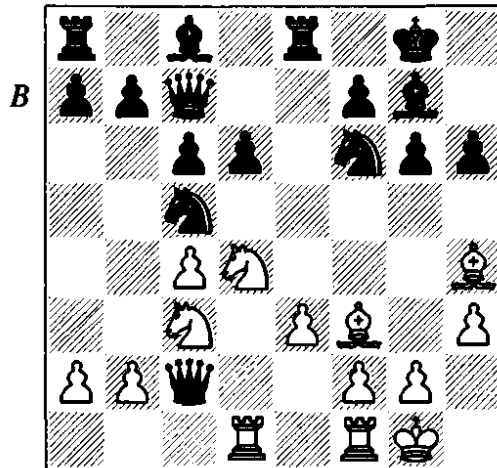
White takes precautions against ...g5 and ...♘h5.

12 ... exd4

12...♘f8 could be met by 13 ♖g3 with ideas of c5.

13 ♘xd4 ♘c5

14 ♖f3 (D)



This sort of position often gives Black dynamic possibilities in the King's Indian but here his d-pawn is especially vulnerable.

14 ... ♘e6

15 ♖g3 ♘d7

15...♘g5 fails to 16 c5!.

16 ♘xe6

16 ♘db5!?! is unnecessary.

16 ... ♖xe6

17 ♖g4

Forcing Black to weaken his king-side.

17 ... f5

18 ♖e2 ♘e5

19 e4!

And now White opens the position for his better developed pieces.

19 ... ♖e8

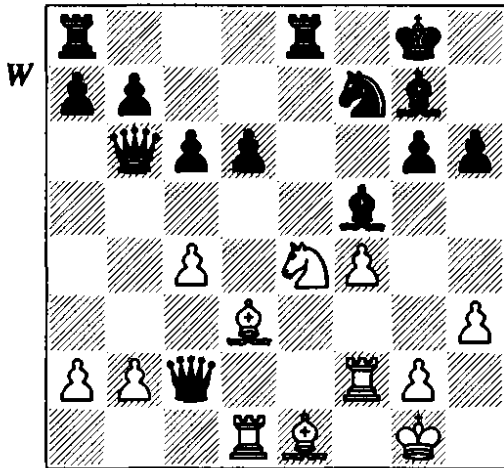
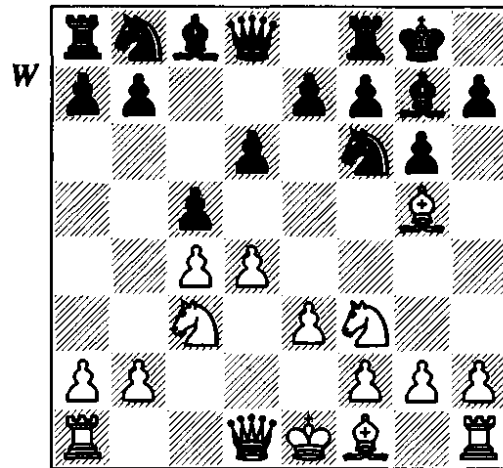
20 f4 ♘f7

21 ♖d3 ♙a5

22 ♖e1!? fxe4

23 ♖xe4 ♜b6+
 24 ♜f2! ♙f5 (D)

White was not concerned about 24...♙d4 as even 25 ♙c3 (25 ♚h1 is also very good) 25...♙xf2+ 26 ♜xf2 ♜xf2+ 27 ♚xf2 gives tremendous compensation for the exchange.



25 g4! ♙xe4
 26 ♙xe4

Now Black's kingside is going to fall apart.

26 ... ♙d4
 27 ♙xg6 ♙xf2+
 28 ♙xf2 ♜c7
 29 ♙h7+ ♚f8
 30 ♜g6 1-0

Game 12
 Pachman – Smyslov
 Amsterdam 1994

1 d4 ♖f6
 2 c4 g6
 3 ♖c3 ♙g7
 4 ♖f3 0-0
 5 ♙g5 d6
 6 e3 c5 (D)
 7 ♙e2

Other moves are rare. They include:

1) 7 dxc5. Not mentioned in any sources I've seen and obviously not a critical test but it may be of concern if you're facing a much weaker opponent. After 7...dxc5 8 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 9 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 10 ♖d5, 10...♖c6 is very comfortable for Black whilst 10...♙xb2!? 11 ♜b1 ♙f6 12 ♖c7 ♙c3+ 13 ♚e2 ♙f5 14 ♜d1 ♖c6 15 ♖xa8 ♜xa8 looks like good value for an exchange, and you may find something even better in this line.

2) 7 d5 is another plausible move never mentioned. Black could try 7...h6 8 ♙h4 ♜b6, hoping to reach similar positions to the main line, whilst the Benko option (7...b5!?, or perhaps 7...♜a5 followed by ...a6 and ...b5) is also worth considering.

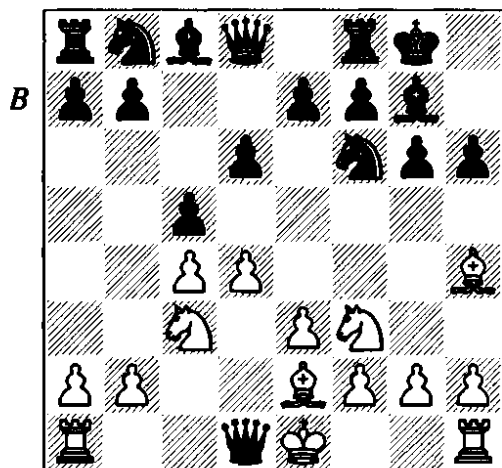
3) 7 h3 provides a haven for the bishop on h2, thereby preventing the ...h6, ...g5, and ...♖h5 idea. Black has:

3a) 7...♙f5!? 8 g4 ♙e4 9 ♙g2 cxd4 10 exd4 ♖c6 11 ♙e3 ♙xf3 12 ♙xf3 ♖d7 13 0-0 e5 14 dxe5 ♖dxe5 15 ♙d5 ♖e7 16 ♙g5 1/2-1/2 Hort-Kindermann, Munich 1991.

3b) 7...♖c6 8 d5 ♖a5 9 ♖d2 a6 10 a3 b5 11 cxb5 axb5 12 ♙xb5 ♙d7 13 ♙e2 h6 14 ♙f4 ♜b8 15 ♜b1 ♜c7

16 0-0 c4 with compensation for Black, Kuligowski-Hawelko, Polanica Zdroj 1984, is an example from *ECO*.

7 ... h6
8 ♔h4 (D)

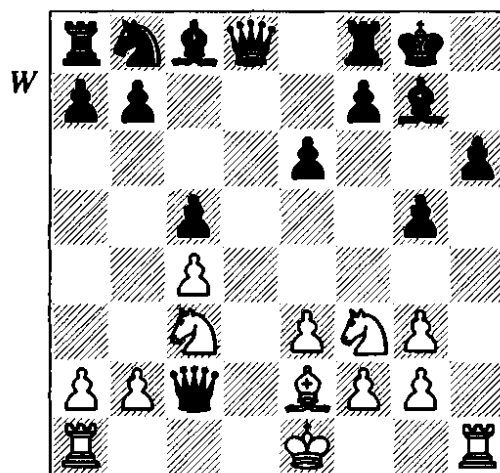


8 ... ♗f5!

Black has tried numerous moves in this position, but my attention was drawn to the modest-looking text when I spotted that it was the Smyslov's choice when somebody had the cheek to play his own system against him. There are at least a couple of good reasons for putting the bishop on f5. The first is to introduce the possibility of ...♘e4. Exchanging his knight on f6 for White's on c3 is almost always a good deal for Black as with all the excess baggage removed from the long diagonal the full force of the King's Indian bishop is likely to be felt. The second reason for putting the bishop on f5 is that it covers b1 and in a surprising number of variations this allows Black to mount a decisive assault against the b2-pawn, which in this variation is more likely to have a coating of sugar than the usual arsenic.

We shall just examine one of the alternatives, 8...g5, which leads to a sharp struggle in which Black weakens his kingside in order to obtain the bishop pair (or, perhaps more precisely, to force White to open the long diagonal). Even if you intend to play 8...♔f5 it could be worth taking a quick look at the variations below as the resulting type of position may arise in many openings.

After 8...g5 9 ♔g3 ♘h5 10 dxc5 (White was not successful with 10 ♖c2 g4 11 ♘h4 cxd4 12 exd4 ♘c6 13 d5 ♘d4 14 ♗d2 e5 15 dxe6 ♗xe6 ♠ Smyslov-Tal, USSR 1973, nor with 10 0-0 ♘c6 11 d5 ♘a5 12 ♖c1 a6 13 ♘d2 ♘xg3 14 fxg3?! e6 ♠ Wexler-Fischer, Mar del Plata 1959) 10...♘xg3 11 hxg3 dxc5 12 ♗c2 (swapping queens would diminish the importance of Black's weakened kingside while, on the other hand, the bishop pair would remain an extremely relevant factor) 12...e6 (White was threatening 13 ♘xg5) there is (D):



1) 13 ♖d1 ♗e7 14 ♘d2 and now Black can choose between one sharp and one solid move:

1a) 14...f5 15 g4 (the drawback of playing ...f5 too early is revealed as White is able to launch an attack on the light squares; nevertheless, Black's position remains viable) 15...f4 16 ♖e4 (Bagirov later gave 16 exf4 ♗xf4 17 g3 as ± but this is debatable; after 17...♗f7 both 18 ♖e4 ♗d7 19 ♖d3 ♗f6 and 18 ♗de4 ♗c6 19 ♗d6 ♗d4 20 ♗xd4 cxd4 21 ♗xf7 ♖xf7 22 ♗e4 ♖d7, intending ...♖c6, look fine for Black) 16...fxe3 17 fxe3 ♗d7 18 ♖d3 ♗f7 19 ♗f3 ♗f6 20 ♖g6 ♗xg4 21 ♗e4 ♗xf3! (avoiding 21...♗xe3? 22 ♗fxg5! ♗xg2+ 23 ♗d2 hxg5 24 ♗f6+! ♖xf6 25 ♗h8+! and mate) 22 gxf3 ♗e5 23 ♖h5 ♖d7 with fully adequate compensation for the exchange, Bagirov-Kelečević, Sarajevo 1980.

1b) 14...♗c6 15 0-0 ♗b8 16 a3 a6 17 g4 (17 ♗de4 f5 18 ♗d6 ♗d8 poses no problems) 17...♖d7 18 ♗de4 ♗e5 19 ♗g3 ♖c6 20 ♗ce4 (20 ♗h5 ♗g6 21 ♗xg7 ♗xg7 is also fine for Black; note that he is willing to part with either bishop if White has to waste several tempi in collecting it) 20...♗g6 21 ♗h5 f5 22 gxf5 exf5 23 ♗c3 ♖xc3! 24 ♖xc3 ♗fd8 25 ♗xd8+ ♗xd8 26 ♗d1 ♗xd1+ 27 ♖xd1 ♖e5 28 ♖xe5 ♗xe5 29 ♖e2 ♗f7 with a fractionally advantageous ending for Black, Alekseev-Schekachev, Moscow 1991.

2) 13 g4 ♗c6 14 a3 ♗b8 15 ♗d2 ♖e7 16 0-0-0?! (playing with fire; 16 0-0 would be similar to line '1b') 16...a6 17 ♗h5 b5! (the race is on) 18 cxb5 (18 ♗dh1 b4 19 ♗xh6 f5!) 18...axb5 19 ♗ce4 c4 20 ♗xg5 f5! 21 gxf5 (there's no time to retreat)

21...hxg5 22 fxe6 ♖xe6 23 g4 (23 ♖h7+ ♗f7 24 ♗e4 ♗h8! 25 ♗d6+ {25 ♗xg5+ ♖xg5!}) 25...♗f8 and Black wins) 23...c3 24 ♖h7+ ♗f7 25 ♗e4 cxb2+ 26 ♗b1 ♗h8 27 ♗d6+ ♗f8 28 ♖e4 ♗e5 29 f4 ♗xh5 30 gxh5 ♗f7 0-1 S.Pedersen-Gadjily, Duisburg jr Ech 1992.

9 0-0

9 h3 has been played but after 9...♗e4 White is simply a tempo down on the next note.

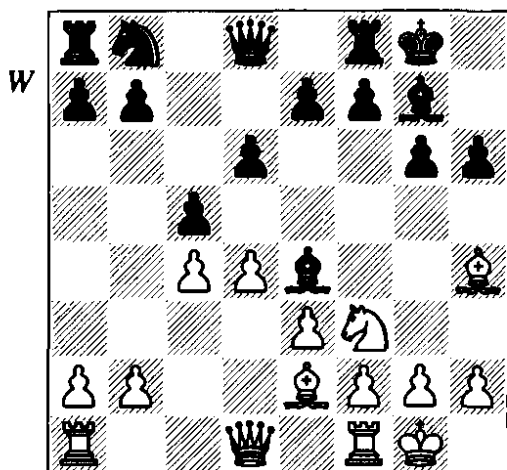
I haven't seen any games with 9 ♖d3 but perhaps White should already be thinking of how to maintain the balance with a move such as this.

9 ... ♗bd7!?

Preparing ...♖b6, which is not playable at once in view of 10 ♖xf6 followed by ♗d5. Black could of course play ...g5, but as the game progresses you will discover his reason for not doing so. 9...♗c6? is a mistake as after 10 d5 ♗b4 11 a3 ♗a6 12 ♗d2 ♖d7 13 e4 e5 14 ♗b1 b6 15 b4 Black found himself very passively placed in Haik-Sax, Bagnaux 1981.

9...♗e4 is an important alternative, though. After 10 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 (D) there are a couple of examples:

1) 11 ♖d2 g5 12 ♖g3 ♖b6 13 ♗fd1 ♗c6 (White is already lost) 14 ♗ac1 (after 14 d5 ♗d8 White can kiss goodbye to his b-pawn) 14...♗ad8?! (perhaps a touch too sadistic; Black could have cashed in at once with the same mini-combination that he played on his next move) 15 b3 (15 d5 would have saved the pawn although Black would still be much better) 15...♖xf3 16 ♖xf3 cxd4 17



♔xc6 dxe3! and Black soon won, Skåre-Westerinen, Gausdal 1992.

2) 11 ♖d2 ♔f5 12 ♔f3 ♘c6 13 ♔xc6 (13 ♘b3 cxd4 14 exd4 g5 15 ♔g3 ♚b6 is very good for Black) 13...bxc6 14 e4 ♔e6 (14...♔c8!? 15 dxc5 ♔xb2 16 ♚b1 ♔g7 is at least an edge for Black) 15 d5 ♔d7 16 ♚c2 ♚b8 17 ♚ab1 cxd5 18 cxd5 f5 ♞ Lebel-Sharif, French League 1992.

I think that we can conclude that White is badly in need of an improvement against 9...♘e4.

10 d5?!

Alternatively:

1) 10 ♚d2 ♘e4 gives comfortable equality, whilst 10...♚b6!? 11 ♘d5?! ♘xd5 12 cxd5 ♚fe8, with ideas of ...♔e4, also deserves consideration.

2) 10 ♘d2 (threatening 11 g4) 10...g5 11 ♔g3 ♔g6 12 ♘b3 ♚c8 13 ♚c1 ♘e4 14 ♘xe4 ♔xe4 15 ♔d3 ♘f6 16 f4 ♔xd3 17 ♚xd3 ♘h5 18 ♔e1 e6 19 ♚e2 ♘f6 20 fxg5 hxg5 21 dxc5 dxc5 (21...♘e4!?) 22 e4 ♘d7 23 h4 gxh4 24 ♚h5 ♘e5 (24...♚c7!, intending to centralise the black queen, is preferable) 25 ♚d1 ♚e8 26 ♔c3 with some advantage to White, Shrentzel-Enoshi, Tel-Aviv 1988.

However, Black's play can certainly be improved upon. 11...♔g6 and 12...♚c8, for example, were pretty listless moves just when Black should have been looking to create concrete threats or to increase the activity of his pieces. 11...cxd4 12 exd4 ♚b6 (12...e5!?) 13 ♘b3 a5!, emphasising the fact that the knight on b3 has simply journeyed from one insecure home to another, would have been a more dynamic reaction. If White now lashes out with 14 f4 then Black should probably play 14...gxf4, rather than 14...g4 15 ♔f2!.

3) 10 ♚c1 (probably best) and now:

3a) Zangiev-Nadyrkhanov, Krasnodar 1995 continued 10...g5 11 ♔g3 ♘h5?! (11...♘e4 should be fine for Black) 12 ♘xg5 ♘xg3 13 fxg3 hxg5 14 ♚xf5 e6 15 ♚f1 (15 ♚f3!?) 15...cxd4 16 exd4 ♚b6 17 ♔h1 ♚xd4 18 ♚c2! with an edge for White.

3b) 10...♚b6 would now be met by 11 b3.

3c) Nadyrkhanov's suggestion 10...♘e4 11 ♘xe4 ♔xe4 12 ♘d2 g5! (12...♔f5 13 e4) deserves closer examination.

10 ... ♚b6!

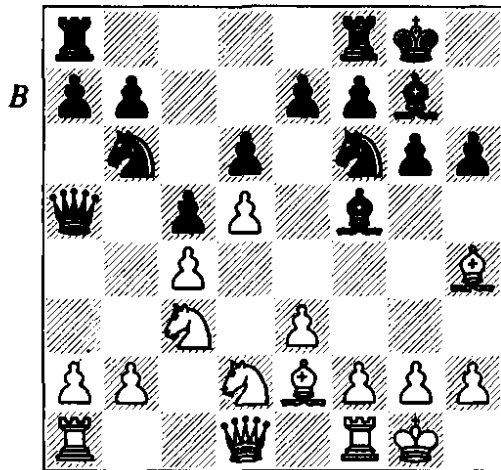
No time is wasted in attacking the most sensitive spot in the enemy camp, whilst the trap 10...♘e4? 11 ♘xe4 ♔xe4 12 ♘d2 ♔f5 13 e4, is avoided.

11 ♘a4

Ugly, but 11 ♚d2 g5 12 ♔g3 ♘e4 13 ♘xe4 ♔xe4 and 11 ♚b3 g5 12 ♔g3 ♘e4 13 ♘xe4 ♔xe4 14 ♘d2 ♔g6 both seem to lose a pawn.

- 11 ... ♔a5
 12 ♘d2 ♘b6
 13 ♘c3 (D)

13 ♘xb6 ♔xb6 again leaves the b-pawn in difficulties. Now White hopes that his problems can be solved by advancing e4, but Smyslov was ready for that one.



- 13 ... ♔b4!
 14 ♔b3

14 e4 ♔xb2! 15 ♖c1 ♗d7 looks like a relatively safe pawn. 16 f4 would probably be met by 16... ♘h7. Perhaps this line was still the lesser evil for White as Black's next move was quite devastating.

- 14 ... ♘bxd5!

And now we know why Smyslov didn't succumb to any urge he may have felt to push his g-pawn. The exposed position of the bishop on h4 is the key point in this simple, but pleasing combination.

- 15 cxd5

Or 15 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 16 ♔xb4 ♘xb4 17 ♗xe7 ♖fe8 18 ♗xd6 ♖ad8 --.

- 15 ... ♔xh4
 16 ♔xb7 ♔b4!

Black's last few moves illustrate well the power of the queen.

- 17 ♔xb4

There is no choice for White as 17 ♔xe7 ♔xb2 loses material.

- 17 ... cxb4
 18 ♘b5 ♘xd5!
 19 ♗f3 ♗d3!
 20 ♗xd5 ♗xb5
 21 ♗xa8 ♗xf1
 22 ♗e4 ♗a6

0-1

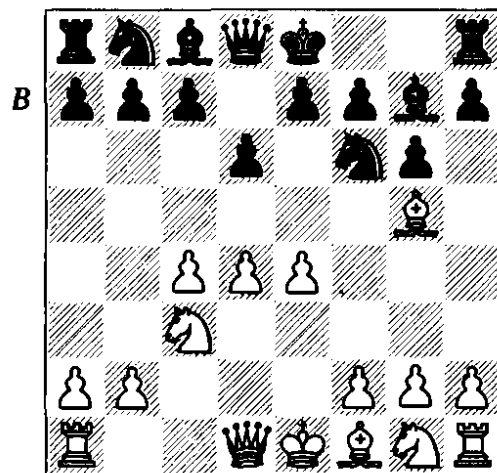
Not surprisingly, Pachman denied Smyslov the opportunity to exercise his legendary technique. A very elegant game full of neat tactical ideas. The moral of the story: don't play the Smyslov System against Smyslov, even a 73-year old Smyslov.

Game 13

Spassky – Fischer

Sveti Stefan/Belgrade (16) 1992

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 g6
 3 ♘c3 ♗g7
 4 e4 d6
 5 ♗g5 (D)



A slightly less respectable system than the one considered in the previous two games.

5 ... h6

It makes sense to put the question to the bishop before committing oneself in the centre.

6 ♔h4

Alternative retreats for the bishop are:

1) 6 ♔f4 ♖c6 7 d5 e5 8 ♔e3 and here Black has the choice between 8...♖e7 and 8...♖d4!?

2) 6 ♔e3 ♖g4 7 ♔c1 e5 (perhaps 7...c5!?) 8 d5 (8 dxe5 should of course be met by 8...♖xe5) 8...f5 9 ♔e2 ♖f6 10 exf5 gxf5 11 ♔h5+ (11 f4? 0-0 12 ♖f3 ♖e4! 13 fxe5 ♖xc3 14 bxc3 dxe5 15 0-0, Petrosian-Torre, Tilburg 1982, and now according to Petrosian 15...c5! would have given Black a clear advantage) 11...♖xh5 12 ♗xh5+ ♔f8 13 ♖ge2 ♗e8 14 ♖g3 ♖a6 15 0-0 ♔d7 16 b4 ♔g8 17 ♖b1 ♔h7 18 ♖b5 ♖f8 19 ♗xe8 ♖axe8 20 ♖xa7 ♔a4! 21 ♔d2 ♔c2 22 ♖bc1 ♔d3 23 ♖fe1 e4 1/2-1/2 I.Sokolov-Ivanchuk, Linares 1995. I wonder what Señor Rentero had to say.

6 ... c5

Delaying this advance would give White the chance to play f4.

7 d5

7 dxc5 ♗a5 8 ♔d3 ♗xc5 (better than 8...dxc5?! 9 f4) 9 ♖ge2?! (9 f3 would allow White to keep his important bishop; even so, after 9...♖c6 10 ♖ge2 ♖e5 11 ♔f2 ♗a5 Black would have a comfortable Maroczy Bind) 9...g5 10 ♔g3 ♖h5 11 ♖c1 ♖c6 12 a3 ♖xg3 (a strong case could be made out for continuing 12...a5) 13 ♖xg3 ♔e5!?! 14 b4 ♗b6 and now:

1) Bakić-Mozetić, Yugoslavia 1992 continued 15 ♖f5?! ♔xc3+! 16 ♖xc3 ♔xf5 17 exf5 ♗d4 18 ♗d2 a5 with advantage to Black who has the far superior minor piece.

2) 15 ♖d5 is better and Bakić assesses the position after 15...♗d8 16 0-0 e6 17 ♖e3 a5 18 b5 ♖e7 19 ♖g4 ♔d4 20 ♖h5 ♖g6 as unclear. After a move like 21 ♔b1 Black can simply support his bishop with 21...♗b6, not fearing 22 ♖h(g)f6+ ♔e7.

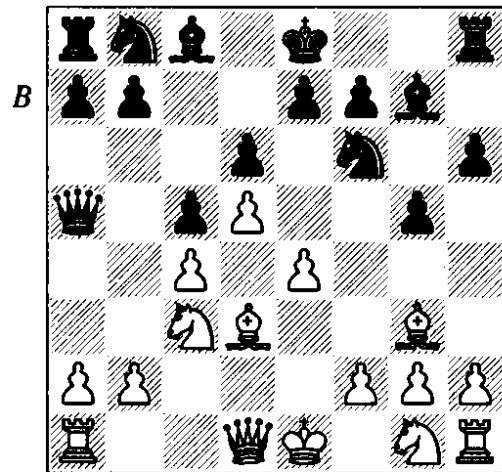
7 ... g5!?

7...e6 is another idea, whereas 7...♗a5 8 ♔d3 g5 9 ♔g3 transposes to the main line and this was in fact the move order employed in the Stein-Geller game given below.

8 ♔g3 ♗a5

9 ♔d3 (D)

9 ♗d2 ♖h5 would not disturb Black too much.



9 ... ♖xe4!

This combination is the justification of Black's play.

10 ♔xe4 ♔xc3+

11 bxc3 ♗xc3+

12 ♔f1 f5!

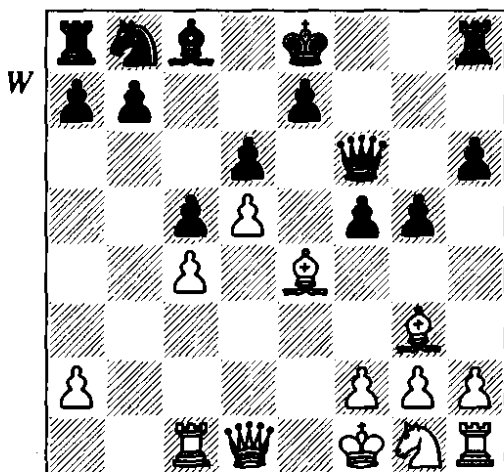
Black now wins back one of the white bishops and should remain a

pawn up. In such a sharp position, though, material is only of secondary importance.

13 ♖c1

This was suggested as an improvement over 13 ♘e2, which led to a crushing victory for Black in Stein-Geller, Moscow 1966. Play continued 13... ♗f6 14 ♖c2 f4 15 h4 ♗f8! 16 hxg5 hxg5 17 ♘xf4? (based on an oversight; 17 ♖h2 f3! is also very bad while Geller offers 17 ♗e1 as the only chance, when he gives Black the choice between 17... fxe3 and 17... ♘d7!? 18 ♖h2 ♘e5 19 f3 ♗h8) 17... gxf4 18 ♖h2 (Stein had intended 18 ♖h4 but at the last moment noticed 18... ♗h8!) 18... ♘d7 19 g3 ♘e5 20 ♗h5+ ♔d8 21 gxf4 ♘g4 22 ♗e1 ♗h8 23 ♖h7 ♗g7 and White resigned as after 24 ♖g3 ♘f6 Black wins a piece.

13 ... ♗f6 (D)



14 h4

The point behind 13 ♖c1 was to give White the option of ♗h5+ without then having to worry about a hanging rook on a1. Ftačnik suggests 14 ♗h5+ here, considering the position after 14... ♔d8 15 h4 g4! 16 ♖d3

f4 17 ♖xf4 ♗xf4 to be unclear. I prefer Black, not so much because he is a pawn up but because I think his king has better long-term prospects on the queenside than White's on the kingside. A possible continuation is 18 ♘e2 ♗f6 19 ♘g3 ♗f8 20 ♘e4 ♗f4 with advantage to Black.

14 ... g4!

Geller only considered 14... fxe4, when 15 ♗h5+ favours White. Many people criticised Fischer for his antiquated openings in this match, but if you had a whole stack of novelties gathering dust on the shelf after a twenty year lay-off, I'm sure you would also be trying to get them in when you made your comeback.

15 ♖d3

Ftačnik suggests 15 ♘e2 fxe4 16 ♔g1 ♖f5 17 ♔h2 ♘d7 18 ♗e1. This may be an improvement over the text but White certainly hasn't enough compensation for two pawns. Another idea, suggested by Polugaevsky, is 15 ♖c2. After 15... f4 16 ♖a4+ ♔d8 17 ♘e2 fxe3 18 ♘xe3 he was of the opinion that White had good play for the pawn, but I'm also sceptical about this. Black should start with 18... ♗f8 and follow up, à la Fischer, with a quick ... ♘d7-e5.

15 ... f4

16 ♘e2

16 ♖h2 g3 17 ♗h5+ ♔d8 is good for Black.

16 ... fxe3

17 ♘xe3 ♗f8

18 ♖c2 ♘d7!

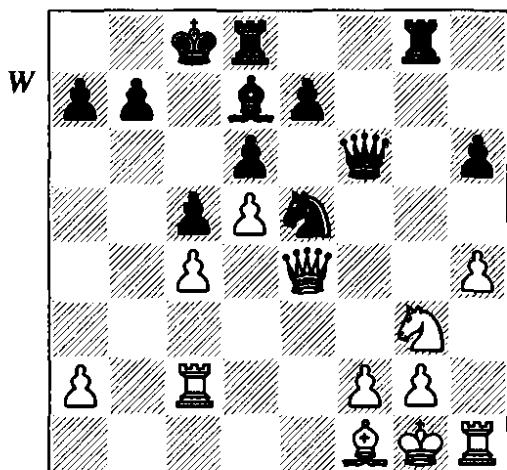
Black is more than happy to give back his extra pawn if it involves the rapid development of his queenside

and increased attacking chances on the kingside via the open g-file.

- 19 ♙xg4 ♘e5
20 ♙e4

An important point is that 20 ♙h5+ ♚d8 doesn't help White as he then has no good way to deal with the threat to his bishop. For example, 21 ♙e2 ♖g4! 22 ♙e4 ♘xd3 when 23 ♙xd3 loses to 23...♙a1+ and 23 ♙xg4 to 23...♘xf2.

- 20 ... ♖d7
21 ♚g1 0-0-0
22 ♖f1 ♜g8 (D)



From the mess that was on the board nine or ten moves ago Black has clearly emerged victorious. He has completed his development and his forces co-ordinate beautifully, whereas for White ... well, let's just

mention his rook on h1 and leave it at that.

- 23 f4 ♘xc4!
24 ♘h5 ♙f7

Spassky obviously saw this but probably felt that without his c-pawn (which blocked in his bishop) he might be able to generate some swindling chances.

- 25 ♙xc4 ♙xh5
26 ♜b2 ♜g3!

Black prepares the fatal doubling of his rooks on the g-file, having calculated 27 ♙a6 ♙xd5! 28 ♙xa7 ♖c6.

- 27 ♖e2 ♙f7

Matanović has pointed out that 27...♙g6! was possible as after 28 ♙a6 ♜xg2+ 29 ♚f1 ♜g8 White has no mate.

- 28 ♖f3 ♜dg8
29 ♙b3 b6
30 ♙e3 ♙f6
31 ♜e2 ♖b5!

Not falling for 31...e5? 32 dxe6 ♖c6 33 ♖xc6! ♜xe3 34 ♜xe3 when White would be very much back in the game.

- 32 ♜d2 e5!
33 dxe6 ♖c6
34 ♚f1 ♖xf3

0-1

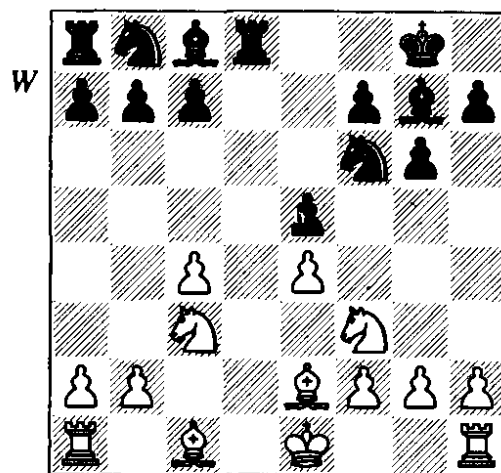
5 The Exchange Variation

Practitioners of the Exchange Variation can be divided into three categories. Firstly, there are the endgame lovers who play this system with the intention of grinding you down in a long boring endgame. These people deserve some respect, although our main feeling towards them should be one of sympathy for having such a feeble system against the King's Indian. The second category are the psychologists. These are the tricky characters who select this variation because they feel that it is the most unpleasant for you to play against, especially if you are noted as a tactical player. The third, and in my experience by far the most numerous category, are the wimps. They select this variation with the idea of killing the game and achieving an easy draw. On no account should they be given one until every last possibility has been exhausted. Perhaps they will achieve their objective in the end, if they play extremely well, but they should at least be made to suffer for it.

Game 14
Acebal – Gallagher
Candas 1992

1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 g6
 3 ♘c3 ♙g7

4 e4 d6
 5 ♘f3 0-0
 6 ♙e2 e5
 7 dxe5 dxe5
 8 ♗xd8 ♖xd8 (D)



9 ♙g5

By far the most common choice. White now threatens to win material with 10 ♘d5. 9 ♘xe5? would be just a mistake. Sanchez-Geller, Stockholm IZ 1952 continued 9... ♘xe4 10 ♘xe4 ♙xe5 11 0-0 (11 ♙g5 ♖d4! is good for Black) 11... ♘c6 12 ♗e1 ♔g7 13 a3 ♙f5 14 ♘g3 ♙e6 15 ♙f1 a5 16 ♖b1 a4 and Black had the more active pieces as well as a positional advantage on the queenside.

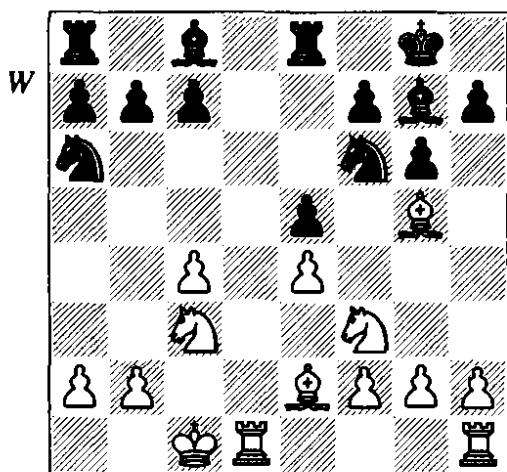
9 ♘d5 occurs from time to time. 9... ♖d7 is an interesting reply, but the simplest is to play 9... ♘xd5 10 cxd5 c6 11 ♙c4 cxd5 12 ♙xd5 ♘d7 when White has nothing better than 13 ♙g5 which transposes to the main line after 13... ♗e8.

9 ... Ke8

Black has a large choice in this position: $9... \text{Qbd7}$, $9... \text{Kf8}$, $9... \text{Qa6}$ and the modern pawn sacrifice $9... \text{c6}$ are all quite playable alternatives but I am of the opinion that the reliable old line, based on $13... \text{Qd7}$, poses White the most difficulties. As far as I can see, White has absolutely no chance of obtaining the better game and must even play well to avoid ending up in an inferior position.

10 Qd5

The main alternative is 100-0-0 which usually leads to a lengthy manoeuvring game with few piece exchanges. White has slightly more space but also a hole on d4 (Black will cover his d5-square with $... \text{c6}$) which has to be protected at all times. Black has numerous possibilities but we are going to concentrate on the one I believe to be the most logical, $10... \text{Qa6}$ (D).



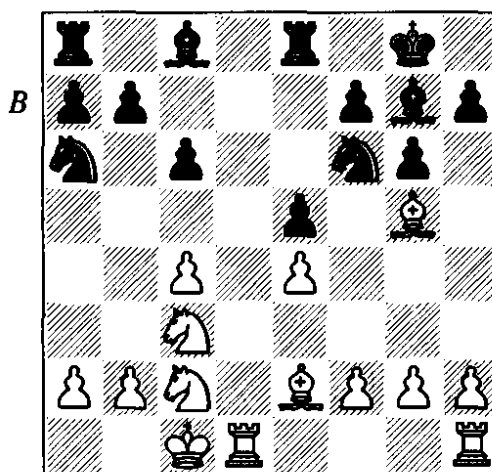
1) White can now take a pawn with 11Qxe5 as $11... \text{Kxe5}$ 12Kd8+ Qe8 13f4 Ke6 14Kg4 is supposed to be good for him, although I'm not completely sure of this after $14... \text{Kb8!}$. Anyway $11... \text{Qc5}$ is a

much safer way to play as White won't be able to hang on to the pawn. A couple of examples:

1a) 12Qf3 Qfxe4 13Qxe4 Qxe4 14Ke3 Qxf2! 15Kxf2 Kh6+! followed by taking on e2 left Black a pawn up in Malich-Peterson, Riga 1961.

1b) 12Kxf6 Kxf6 13f4 c6 14b4 Kxe5 15fxe5 Qd7 16e6 Kxe6 17Kg4 Ke7 18b5 Qg7 with a roughly level game, Haik-Spassky, French Ch 1991.

2) 11Qe1 is the standard choice. The knight heads for c2 from where it will still have d4 under control and help prepare an eventual queenside advance. At the same time White will now be able to secure his e-pawn with f2-f3 . $11... \text{c6}$ ($11... \text{Qc5}$ 12f3 Qe6 13Ke3 c5 followed by $... \text{Qd4}$ also looks adequate) 12Qc2 (D) and now Black has to decide whether he wants a knight or a bishop on e6:



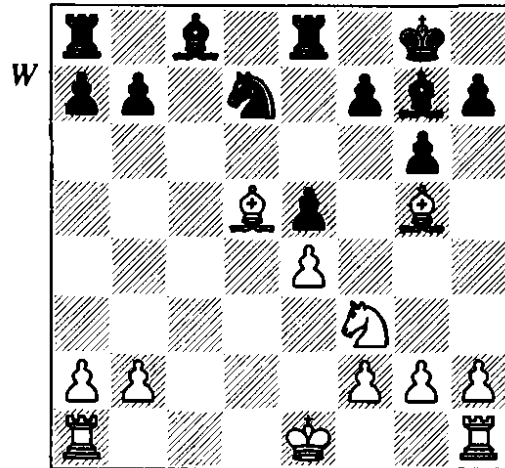
2a) $12... \text{Ke6}$ 13b3 Qc5 14f3 a5 15Kd2 Qfd7 16Khd1 f5 17Qe1 $\text{fxe4!?$ 18Qxe4?! (according to the theory of the superfluous piece White should recapture with the

pawn) 18...♖xe4 19 fxe4 ♘c5 20 ♙f3 a4 with a good game for Black. Serrer-Uhlmann, Bundesliga 1991 continued 21 ♘d3 ♙f8 22 ♙e3 ♘d7 23 ♖b2 b5! 24 c5 axb3 25 axb3 b4! when the threat of ...♞a3 is difficult to meet. If 26 ♘xb4, then both 26...♘xc5 and 26...♞eb8 look quite promising, while the move played in the game, 26 ♞a1, simply lost a pawn after 26...♞xa1 27 ♖xa1 ♙xb3 as 28 ♘xb4 is met by 28...♙xc5 29 bxc5 ♘xc5 30 ♘xc6 ♙a4! 31 ♞d6 (31 ♞d5 ♘b3+) 31...♘b7 32 ♖f6 ♖g7.

2b) 12...♘c5 13 f3 ♘e6 14 ♙e3 ♘f4 (the immediate ...♙f8 is also possible but Black wishes to soften up the white kingside) 15 ♙f1 h5 16 h4 ♙f8 (the bishop has more future on this diagonal) 17 b4. This is primarily played to prevent ...♘e6 followed by ...♙c5, but one of the reasons I prefer Black in this sort of position (I'm not claiming an advantage, but I would take the black pieces if offered the choice) is his greater king security. Although the queens have been exchanged all the other pieces remain and with the queenside quite likely to open at some point the white king may yet find itself uncomfortably placed. A good example is the game Lesiège-Smirin, Biel IZ 1993 which continued 17...♘e6 18 a3 b6 19 ♖b2 ♙b7 20 g3 ♖g7 21 ♙h3 ♞ab8 22 ♖b3 ♙c8 23 ♙c1 a5 24 ♙b2 ♙a6 25 ♘e2 ♖g8 26 ♘e1 (26 ♙xe5 ♘c5+ 27 bxc5 ♞xe5 28 cxb6 ♞xb6+ 29 ♖c3 ♙g7! gives Black a very strong attack) 26...a4+ 27 ♖c3 ♘d4! 28 ♘xd4

exd4+ 29 ♞xd4 c5! 30 ♞d1 cxb4+ 31 axb4 ♙g7 32 ♖c2 ♙xc4 with a clear plus for Black.

- | | | |
|----|------|----------|
| 10 | ... | ♘xd5 |
| 11 | cxd5 | c6 |
| 12 | ♙c4 | cxd5 |
| 13 | ♙xd5 | ♘d7! (D) |



Much stronger than the more frequently played 13...♘a6 or 13...♘c6 which do allow White some chances of a nagging edge. Black now threatens to gain the bishop pair with ...♘f6 (perhaps preceded by ...h6) so White's choice is quite limited.

14 ♘d2!

The only move. By defending his e-pawn White renders the ...♘f6 idea harmless and at the same time moves his knight nearer to the more active squares on the queenside. Surprisingly often, though, White has ignored Black's threat. For example:

1) 14 ♞c1 h6 15 ♙e3 (15 ♙h4 g5 16 ♙g3 ♘f6 is good for Black) 15...♘f6 16 ♙b3 (White can't allow 16...♘xd5 so he must seek complications) 16...♘xe4 17 ♞c7 ♙e6 18 ♙xe6 ♞xe6 19 ♞xb7 ♞a6 20 a3 ♘d6! 21 ♞c7?! (it was better to retain control of the b-file, even though

21 ♖b4 ♜c6 22 0-0 f5 was still very pleasant for Black in the game Teschner-Fischer, Stockholm IZ 1962) 21...♖b8 22 ♜c2 e4 23 ♘d4 ♜a4! 24 ♘c6 ♜xb2 25 ♜xb2 ♖xb2 26 ♘xa7 ♘f5 with a clear advantage for Black, Capusciotti-Gallagher, Forli 1992.

2) 14 0-0-0 h6 15 ♖e3 (15 ♖h4 ♘f6 16 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 is slightly better for Black but perhaps the lesser evil) 15...♘f6 16 ♘e1?! ♘xd5 17 exd5 ♖f5 18 ♘c2 ♜ac8 19 ♜d2 ♜c4! and Black was already close to winning in Tillmann-Gallagher, Bern 1995.

14 ... ♘c5

14...♘b6 and even 14...♖f8 are not so bad for Black but the text is the most active.

15 ♘c4

Perhaps not the best as it allows Black some tricks based on ♘xe4, while the knight may also get booted by ...b5 at some point. The alternatives are:

1) 15 0-0 ♖e6 and now:

1a) 16 ♖e3? ♖xd5 17 ♖xc5 ♖c6 18 ♘c4 ♜ed8 (18...♖xe4 is an interesting exchange sacrifice but there is no need for it) 19 f3 b6 20 ♖e3 f5 with a clear advantage for Black, Mülbach-Gallagher, Bern 1993.

1b) 16 ♖xe6 ♘xe6 17 ♖e3 ♘d4 18 ♘b3! ♘c2 19 ♜ac1 ♘xe3 20 fxe3 ♜ac8 and despite White's ugly central pawns he should have no trouble holding the draw.

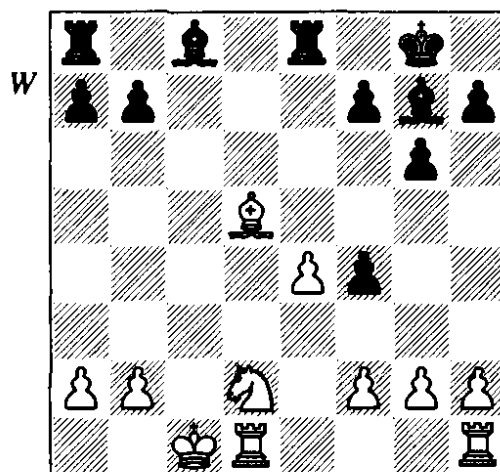
2) 15 ♖e2 ♘e6 16 ♖e3 ♘f4+ (this ...♘e6-f4 manoeuvre can be considered the key to the position in a number of lines) 17 ♖xf4 exf4 and the opening of the long diagonal

assures Black of an active game. A couple of examples:

2a) 18 ♜ac1 ♖xb2 19 ♜c7 ♖e6 20 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 21 ♜xb7 ♖c3 22 ♘b1 ♜xe4+ 23 ♖f3 ♖b4! with advantage to Black, Vanheste-Gallagher, Metz 1991.

2b) 18 ♘c4 ♖e6 19 ♖f3 ♖xd5 (it looks risky to give White a passed d-pawn but he doesn't seem to be able to keep it) 20 exd5 ♜ed8 21 ♜ad1 ♜ac8 22 b3 ♜c5 23 d6 b5 24 ♘a5, H.Olafsson-Ehlvest, Erevan 1988, and now I think 24...♖f8! would be good for Black. 25 ♘b7 is nothing to worry about on account of 25...♜c3+ followed by 26...♜d7, whilst 25 d7 ♜c7 26 ♜d5 ♜dxd7 27 ♜xb5 ♜c3+! looks extremely good for Black.

3) 15 0-0-0 ♘e6! (not 15...♘d3+ 16 ♖b1 ♘xf2 17 ♜df1! and White wins) 16 ♖e3 ♘f4 17 ♖xf4 exf4 (D) and now White has:



3a) 18 ♖b1 ♖e6! 19 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 20 f3 (20 ♜he1 ♜d8) 20...f5! with a couple of possibilities:

3a1) 21 exf5 gxf5, with an edge for Black in Andersson-Zsu.Polgar, Bilbao 1987, but 21...♜e2!? looks

even more promising, e.g. 22 fxg6 hxg6 23 g3 b5! and White is completely tied down; 24 ♖he1 is met by 24...♙xh2 and 24 gxf4 ♗d8 25 ♔c2 ♕h6! wins a piece as 26 ♔c3 can be met by 26...b4+ and 26 ♖he1 by ♗dxd2+.

3a2) 21 ♖c1! (this seems the best defence) 21...♗d8 22 ♖c2 ♗ed6 (I went for the promising bishop v knight ending but 22...♕d4 was a serious alternative) 23 ♘c4 ♗d1+ 24 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 25 ♖c1 ♖xc1+ 26 ♔xc1 fxe4 27 fxe4 (27 ♘d6 e3 28 b3! may also enable White to draw by setting up a fortress position) 27...b5 28 ♘a3! a6 29 ♘c2 (the knight is heading for its ideal square: d3) 29...♔f7 30 ♘b4 a5 31 ♘d3 g5 and in Ekström-Gallagher, Villars 1995, I made what I thought was a generous draw offer in order to secure first place in the tournament. My opponent accepted it seventy-five minutes later! A possible continuation is 32 ♔d2 ♔e6 33 ♔e2 ♕e5! 34 ♔f3 h5 35 h3 a4 with an edge for Black, although our post-mortem concluded that White should be able to hold.

3b) After the above Andersson-Polgar game 18 f3 was suggested as an improvement for White, but here too Black has an easy life: 18...♕e6! 19 ♘b3 ♕xd5 20 ♖xd5 (20 exd5 ♗e2 wins a pawn) 20...f5! (the by now familiar way of activating the black rooks) 21 exf5 ♗ac8+ 22 ♔b1 ♗e2 23 f6!? (White reserves the e4-square for later use) 23...♕xf6 24 ♗d2 and now P.Cramling-Gallagher, Biel 1991 was agreed drawn after

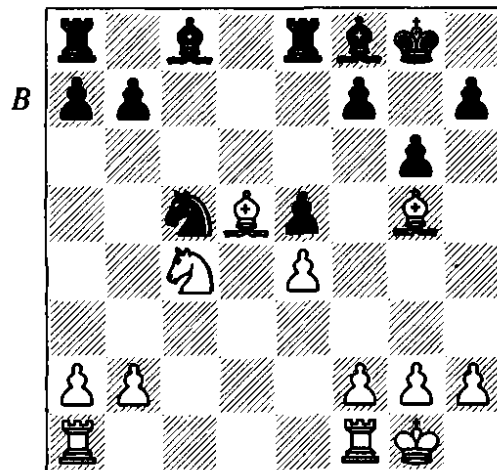
24...♗ce8 and P.Cramling-Grivas, Debrecen Echt 1992 was agreed drawn after 24...♗e7.

15 ... ♕f8

This keeps the knight out of d6, but the bold could investigate giving up an exchange with 15...♕e6 16 ♘d6 ♕xd5.

16 0-0 (D)

The more aggressive 16 0-0-0 led to a quick defeat for White in the game Salgado-Gallagher, L'Hospitalet 1992 after 16...♕e6 17 ♔b1 ♗ac8 (17...♘xe4 18 ♕xe4 ♕xc4 19 ♕xb7 ♖ab8 is fine for Black but I was playing for tricks) 18 ♕e3? (better is 18 ♖he1 when 18...♕xd5 19 exd5 should be slightly better for Black as White's d-pawn is more likely to turn out weak than strong) 18...♘xe4! 19 ♕xe4 ♖xc4 20 ♕xb7 ♖b8 21 ♕d5 ♕f5+ 22 ♔a1 ♖c2 and unfortunately for White 23 ♕b3 loses to 23...♖xb3! 24 axb3 ♖c6!. Therefore he tried 23 ♕xa7 but after 23...♖bxb2 24 ♕e3 ♕b4 25 g4 ♕c3 he was probably wondering why he had even bothered to get out of bed.



16 ... ♕e6
17 ♕xe6 ♖xe6!

At first glance one could dismiss this position as dead drawn, but a closer inspection will reveal a sizeable initiative for Black. His rooks are more active, White's bishop is offside on g5 and the knight on c4 will soon be hit by ...b5.

- | | | |
|----|------|------|
| 18 | f3 | b5 |
| 19 | ♘e3 | h6 |
| 20 | ♙h4 | ♘d3 |
| 21 | ♘d5 | ♞c8 |
| 22 | b3 | ♞c2 |
| 23 | ♞fd1 | ♘b4! |

Stronger than 23...♙c5+ 24 ♔f1 ♙d4 which allows White to solve his problems after 25 ♞ab1 ♘c5 26 ♞bc1!

- 24 ♘xb4

Perhaps White should have tried 24 ♞ac1 as 24...♞xa2 25 ♞c8 is awkward to meet. Instead Black should play 24...♞xc1! 25 ♞xc1 ♘xd5 26 exd5 ♞d6 reaching a favourable endgame.

- | | | |
|----|-----|------|
| 24 | ... | ♙xb4 |
| 25 | ♙f2 | a6! |

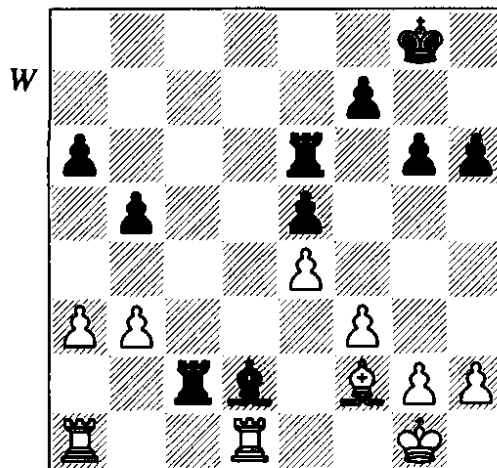
I was tempted by 25...♞a6, but this would have been a false trail. After 26 a4 ♙c3 27 ♞ac1 ♞xc1 28 ♞xc1 bxa4 29 ♞xc3 axb3 30 ♞xb3! ♞a1+ 31 ♙e1 ♞xe1+ 32 ♔f2 ♞a1 33 ♞b5! f6 34 ♞b7 White will have no trouble holding the draw.

- 26 a3

Now 26 a4 could simply be met by 26...bxa4 as after 27 ♞xa4 a5 White remains bottled up. On 26 ♙e3, with the idea of preventing ...♙d2, Black could play 26...♙a3 so that 27 ♙xh6 can be met by 27...♙b2

followed by 28...♙d4+ and 29...♞xa2 with a very powerful queenside majority.

- 26 ... ♙d2! (D)



People often talk about the power of doubled rooks on the seventh rank, but a rook and bishop? In fact, White is totally paralysed and can only watch while Black calmly improves his position by bringing the king to the centre and playing ...f5.

- | | | |
|----|------|-----|
| 27 | ♙c5 | a5 |
| 28 | ♔f1 | ♞c6 |
| 29 | b4 | a4 |
| 30 | ♞ab1 | ♔g7 |
| 31 | ♞a1 | f5 |
| 32 | ♔g1 | ♔f6 |
| 33 | ♞f1 | ♔e6 |
| 34 | ♞f2? | |

This loses material but passive defence would also have lost. One plan for Black would be to play ...f4 followed by ...♙e3+.

- | | | |
|----|-------|--------|
| 34 | ... | ♞6xc5! |
| 35 | exf5+ | gxf5 |
| 36 | ♞xd2 | ♞xd2 |
| 37 | bxc5 | ♞c2 |

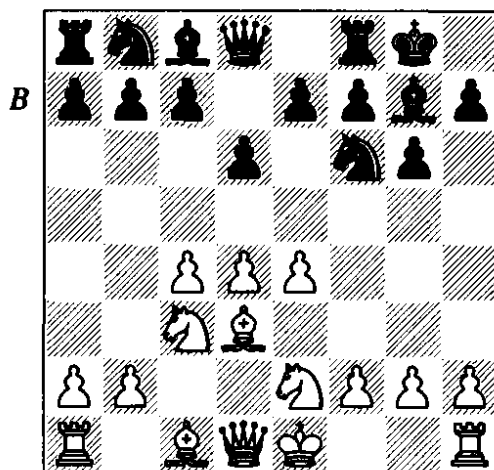
6 5 ♖d3

Whilst one wouldn't call this a popular way of meeting the King's Indian it is, nevertheless, a system which has developed considerably over the last few years. White has a simple plan: complete his kingside development (♖d3, ♗ge2, 0-0) as quickly as possible and be ready to meet any subsequent ...f5 by Black with exf5 and f4. This is a solid line in which Black's chances of a successful kingside attack are slim and it can number amongst its regular users grandmasters such as Seirawan, Christiansen and Marin. The main drawback with an early ♖d3 is that it slackens White's already rather shaky grip on d4. Therefore, it is no great surprise that Black's most popular defence is based on a quick assault against this point.

Game 15
Christiansen – Gallagher
Bern 1996

1	d4	♗f6
2	c4	g6
3	♗c3	♖g7
4	e4	d6
5	♖d3	0-0
6	♗ge2 (D)	
6	...	♗c6

Black can also react in Benoni fashion with 6...c5, although I think the resulting variation, 7 d5 e6 8 0-0



exd5 (this can be delayed) 9 cxd5 is quite a tricky one for him.

The traditional King's Indian response, 6...e5, has been slightly neglected here, even though after 7 d5 ♗h5 Black seems to have a perfectly playable position, e.g.:

1) 8 h3?! (8 f3 ♖h4+ 9 g3 ♖h3 was also quite good for Black in Hodgson-Pein, British Ch 1987) 8...f5 9 exf5 gxf5 10 g4 ♗f4! (10...fxg4? 11 hxg4 ♖xg4 12 ♖c2 followed by 13 ♖e3 and 14 0-0-0 allows White a strong kingside attack) 11 ♗xf4 (11 ♖xf4 exf4 12 ♖c2 ♗a6 13 a3 ♗c5 14 0-0-0 f3 15 ♗g3 ♖g5+ is given as unclear by Nadyrkhanov but I suspect he has underestimated Black's chances) 11...exf4 12 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 13 exf5 ♖xf5 14 ♖g4 ♖f6, with advantage to Black, Tunik-Nadyrkhanov, Voskresensk 1993.

2) 8 0-0 f5 9 exf5 gxf5 10 f4 (this move represents White's big idea) and now:

2a) 10...e4 11 ♖c2 c5 12 ♖e3!?

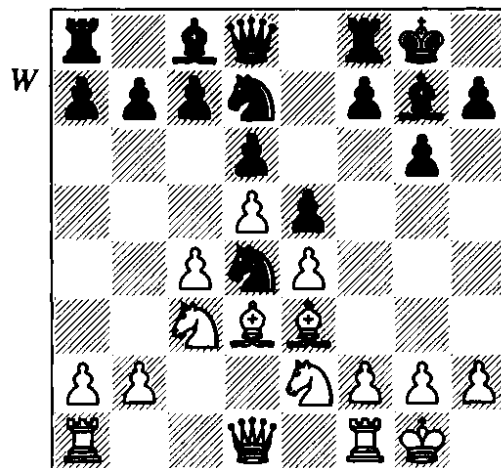
(12 dxc6 ♗xc6 13 ♖e3 ♖e6 14 ♖b3 {if 14 b3 then 14...♗f6 followed by ...d5} 14...♗f6 15 h3 ♜e7 16 ♗b5 ♗e8 17 ♗bd4 ♗xd4 18 ♗xd4 ♖d7 was about level in Basagić-Djeno, Zagreb 1993) 12...♗d7 13 ♜d2 ♜f6?! (13...♗df6 is ± according to Marin) 14 g4! ♜g6 15 g5 ♗b6 (15...h6 16 ♗xe4!) 16 b3 h6 17 ♜f2! hxg5 18 fxg5 f4 19 ♗xf4 ♜xg5+ 20 ♗g2 ♜e5 21 ♜af1 ♖h3 22 ♗xe4 ♜e8 23 ♗g5! ♖xg2 24 ♜xg2 ♜f6 25 ♜xf6 ♜xe3+ 26 ♜xe3 ♜xe3 27 ♜xd6 1-0 Marin-Llanos, Berga 1993.

2b) ECO suggests 10...♗d7, giving 11 ♜b1 exf4 12 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 13 ♖xf4 ♗e5 as =.

7 0-0 ♗h5!?

It would usually be pretty provocative for Black to move his king's knight before playing ...e5, but here White's hands are tied by the threat to his d-pawn. The text has been gaining in popularity recently, mainly because Black is in bad shape in the main line. This runs 7...e5 8 d5 ♗d4 9 ♗xd4 exd4 10 ♗b5 ♜e8 11 ♜e1 ♗g4 (11...a6 12 ♗xd4 ♗xd5 13 ♖f1 is an edge for White) 12 h3 a6 13 hxg4 axb5 14 cxb5 ♜h4 and now 15 g3 ♜h3 16 ♖f1 ♜xg4 17 ♜xg4 ♖xg4 18 ♖g2 gives White a favourable ending on account of his potential passed a-pawn and pressure on the c-file, while Milov's new move, 15 ♖f4, may be even stronger.

7...♗d7 is another idea. After 8 ♖e3 e5 9 d5 ♗d4 (9...♗e7 is less effective here) Black's position is not as good as it may seem at first sight. A couple of examples (D):



1) 10 ♖c2!?! ♗xc2 11 ♜xc2 f5 12 exf5 gxf5 13 f4 ♗f6 14 h3 ♗h5 (14...♖d7 is more solid) 15 c5!?! exf4 16 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 17 ♖xf4 ♖d4+ 18 ♖h2 ♖xc5 19 ♜f3 gave White good play for a pawn in Seirawan-Van Wely, Wijk aan Zee 1995.

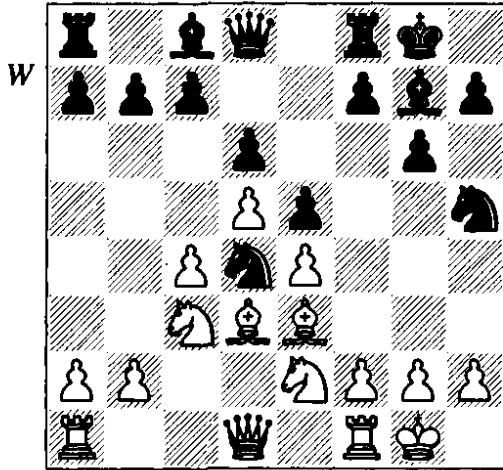
2) 10 ♜c1 c5 11 dxc6 bxc6 12 b4 f5 13 exf5 gxf5 14 ♖xd4 exd4 15 ♗a4 ♜g5 16 f4 ♜g6 17 c5 with advantage to White, Agdestein-Dolmatov, Tilburg 1993.

8 ♖e3

As 8 d5 ♗e5, with ...c6 to follow, cannot be good for White, the only other move is 8 ♖c2. Aleksandrov-Golubev, Nikolaev 1993 continued 8...e5 9 dxe5 (9 d5 ♗e7 is surely not an improvement on the main line) 9...♗xe5 10 b3 ♜h4 11 ♖d2 ♗g4 (odd; 11...f5 is more natural) 12 h3 ♗e5 13 f4 ♖xh3 (13...♗c6 would leave Black worse but is sounder than the text) 14 ♜e1! ♜g4 15 ♜f2 f5 16 ♖h2 ♖xg2 17 ♜xg2 ♜h4+ 18 ♜h3 ♗g4+ 19 ♖g2 when Black's investment had clearly not paid off. 9...dxe5 is playable, but slightly passive: 10 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 (10...♗xd8 ±) 11 ♗d5 ♖e6 (11...♜d7 12 ♖a4! ±) 12 ♜d1 ±.

8 ... e5
9 d5 ♘e7

9...♘d4 (D) is obviously an important alternative, and then:



1) 10 ♖xd4?! exd4 11 ♘b5 c5 12 dxc6 bxc6 13 ♘bxd4 c5 and Black regains the sacrificed pawn with advantage.

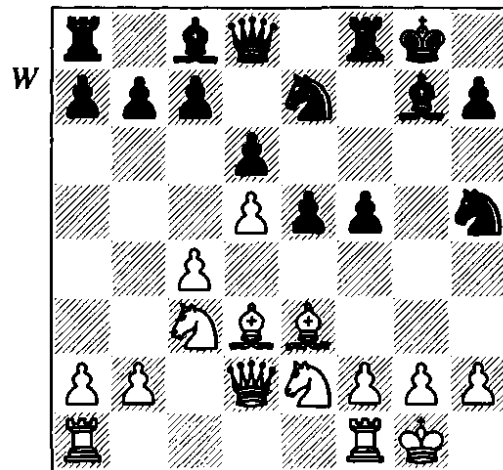
2) 10 ♘b5 ♘xe2+ (10...♘xb5 11 cxb5 f5 is an alternative) 11 ♖xe2 ♘f4 12 ♖f3 f5 13 ♘c3 ♖d7 14 exf5 gxf5 15 ♖xf4 exf4 16 ♔d2 ♔h4 17 ♚fe1 ♖e5, Kiselev-Zaitsev, Moscow 1992. Here we have a conflict of opinions as Belov considers White to be better whilst Knaak prefers Black. This suggests that the chances are about equal.

3) 10 ♚c1 a6 11 b4 ♔e8 12 ♖b1 ♘xe2+ 13 ♘xe2 f5 14 exf5 gxf5 15 f3, Tunik-Fedorov, Minsk 1995 is assessed as ± by Belov but Black's 10th move looks like the play of an indecisive man. 10...f5 or 10...c5 look more to the point.

4) 10 ♔d2!?! deserves an outing as this introduces the possibility of a later ♖g5.

10 ♔d2 f5
11 exf5 gxf5 (D)

Black can also play 11...♘xf5 when 12 ♖g5 ♖f6 13 ♖xf6 ♔xf6 was about equal in Piket-J.Polgar, Amsterdam 1995. White might do better, though, to avoid exchanging dark-squared bishops: 12 ♘e4 ♘f6 13 ♘2c3 has been suggested as ±. Further tests required.



12 ♖g5!?

12 f4 is more natural, after which Black should play 12...♘g6!. White then has to decide what to do about the pressure on f4:

1) 13 fxe5 (I would certainly be extremely reluctant to play such a move) 13...dxe5 14 ♖g5 ♔d6 15 ♘b5 ♔d7 16 ♘g3? (White inflicts serious kingside weaknesses upon himself; better would have been 16 ♚ae1 a6 17 ♘bc3 ♔d6 with an unclear game according to Belov) 16...♘xg3 17 hxg3 a6 18 ♘c3 ♔d6 with advantage to Black, Tunik-Shulman, Minsk 1995.

2) 13 g3 is Tunik's latest try. After 13...♖d7 (13...exf4!?) 14 ♚ae1 a6 15 b3 exf4 16 ♘xf4 ♘gxf4 17 gxf4 ♔h4 18 ♖e2 ♚f6 19 ♖xh5 ♔xh5 20 ♘e2 ♚g6+ 21 ♘g3 ♔h3 22 ♔g2 ♔xg2+ 23 ♔xg2 ♚e8 a

roughly level ending had arisen, Tunik-Mochalov, Orel 1995.

12 ... ♜f4!

I wasted an awful lot of time on this, mainly because I didn't want to be laughed at for playing such an anti-positional move. Black cedes control of e4 but in return gains f5 for his pieces and a potential attack along the g-file. It seems to me that control of e4 is not nearly as important here as, for example, in a position without f-pawns.

13 ♜f3

Otherwise Black may advance ...f3

13 ... ♔d7!?

I'm sure many people would have played 13...♔f6 but I don't like giving up my King's Indian bishop even when it appears to be a miserable lump of wood (or was it plastic?). I was already dreaming of its triumphant emergence on the a7-g1 diagonal and was also slightly concerned about 14 ♔xf6 ♘xf6 15 g3!?, but this was probably just an excuse to keep the bishop. I feel vindicated by the fact that it captured a rook just seven moves later.

14 ♔xe7

An understandable decision because 14 ♔h4 ♘f5 15 ♔f2 ♔h6 would be a nerve-racking experience for White.

14 ... ♔xe7

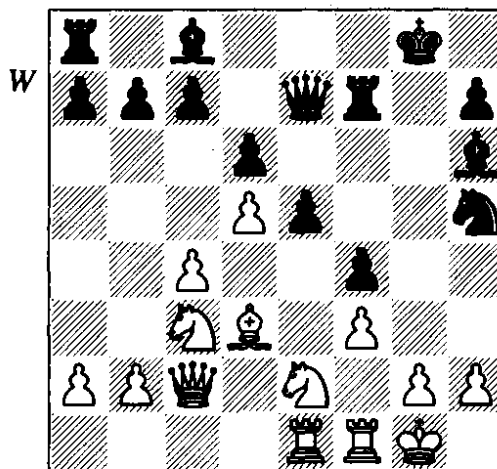
15 ♔c2 ♔h6

After 15...♔f6, the bishop would be impeding its own queen.

16 ♔ae1 ♔f7 (D)

After puzzling over my opponent's last move for a few moments

I calmly prepared the transfer of my rook to the g-file.



17 ♘d4!

This came as a complete shock. I had actually considered 17 ♘xf4 but felt that there wasn't much chance of that one working as f4 is defended by three pieces in addition to the pinned e-pawn. In fact, not seeing ♘d4 probably worked in my favour as there was no really good way to prevent it (16...♔g7, but I wanted the queen to go to h4) and I didn't have to waste a lot of time worrying about it.

17 ... ♔h8

A useful move as there were some variations where the h-pawn could be taken with check and others where White could profit from my king being on the a2-g8 diagonal.

18 c5 ♔g5

I didn't even consider 18...dxc5 as this would weaken the crucial e-pawn, preferring instead to activate my bishop.

19 ♘e4!?

Just three moves ago I was slowly building up my kingside attack, confident that my opponent was devoid

of counterplay. Suddenly, the board was ablaze with his pieces.

19 ... ♠h4!

I did well to avoid 19...exd4 20 ♠xd6 cxd6 21 ♠xe7 ♠xe7 (21...♠xe7 22 cxd6 ♠g7 23 ♠e1 is also extremely dangerous) 22 ♠g6! when Black is in serious trouble.

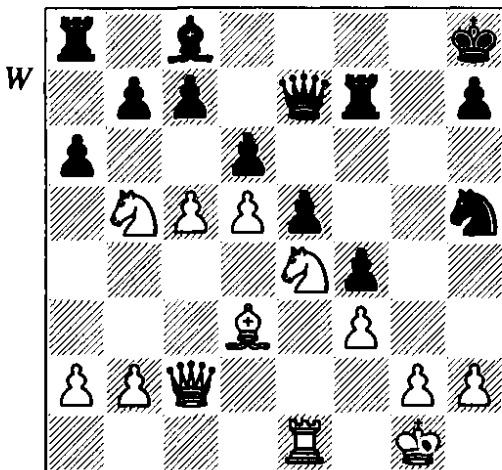
20 ♠b5

The main point behind my last move was that after 20 ♠e2 exd4! 21 ♠xd6 cxd6 22 ♠xe7 ♠xe7 23 cxd6 ♠g7 the e1-square is covered so White's rook won't be able to get in the game. Christiansen prefers to give up the exchange and collect the d6-pawn, but he overlooked a nasty tactical point. White could have first captured on d6 before playing ♠b5 when play would almost certainly transpose to the note to the 21st move.

20 ... ♠xe1

21 ♠xe1 a6!? (D)

Objectively speaking it may have been better to play 21...♠g7 when 22 cxd6 cxd6 23 ♠bxd6 ♠h3 gives Black good attacking chances. However, I felt sure that my opponent hadn't seen what was coming and, anyway, who can resist a whole rook?



22 cxd6

Obviously retreating the knight is hopeless, but White had an alternative sacrifice in 22 ♠xc7!?. After 22...♠xc7 23 ♠xd6 ♠e7 24 ♠xc8 (or 24 ♠c3 ♠f6! 25 ♠xc8 ♠xd5) 24...♠xc8 (24...♠xc8? 25 d6 ♠a5 26 b4! ♠xb4 27 ♠e4 ♠xc5+ 28 ♠xc5 ♠xc5 29 dxe7 ♠f6 30 g3! leaves Black fighting for a draw) 25 d6 ♠g7 26 ♠xe5 ♠f6 the situation is very unclear. White has three pawns and a positional advantage for his rook. In the post mortem Christiansen felt that this would give him a decisive advantage whilst I was of the opinion that Black's problems were not insurmountable.

22 ... ♠h4!

23 ♠c3 axb5

24 ♠xe5+

On 24 dxc7 Black has the reply 24...♠xc7! (25 ♠xe5+ ♠g7).

24 ... ♠g7!

Not 24...♠g8? on account of 25 ♠g5! cxd6 26 ♠e8+ ♠f8 27 ♠xh7+ ♠g7 28 ♠e7+ and White wins.

25 ♠c1?

This just leaves White a rook down for not much. He should have played 25 ♠e8+ ♠g8 26 ♠e5+ when Black must try 26...♠g7 if he's going for the win. After 27 ♠g5! ♠e8 28 ♠xe8+ ♠xe8 29 ♠xe8+ ♠g7 30 ♠e7+ ♠f8 31 ♠xh7+ ♠g8 32 ♠e8+ ♠g7 33 ♠e7+ ♠xe7 (33...♠h6? loses to 34 ♠f8! and 33...♠g8 is a draw) 34 dxe7 ♠f7 (34...♠d7 35 ♠f8!) 35 ♠xb5 ♠xe7 an unclear ending has arisen in which White has a slight material advantage but Black's pieces are more active (even

if the rook and bishop are still at home).

- | | | |
|----|------|-------|
| 25 | ... | cx d6 |
| 26 | ♘xd6 | ♙d7 |
| 27 | ♘f7+ | ♚g8 |
| 28 | ♘h6+ | ♚f8! |
| 29 | ♙e1 | |

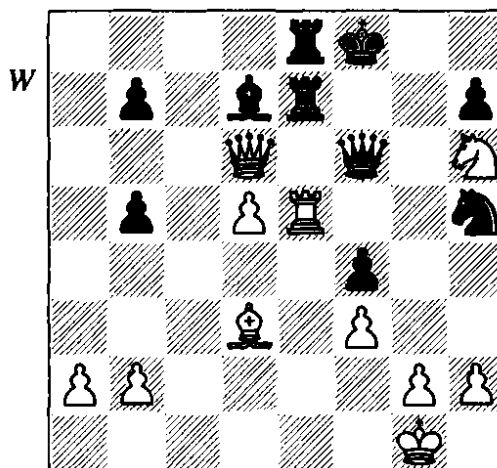
After 29 ♘f5 ♙xf5 30 ♚xf5+ both 30...♘f6 and 30...♚f6 win for Black.

- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 29 | ... | ♙e8 |
|----|-----|-----|

Avoiding the trap 29...♚f6? 30 ♚xh5 ♚d4+ 31 ♚h1 ♚xd3 32 ♚e5!.

- | | | |
|----|------|----------|
| 30 | ♚d6+ | ♙ge7 |
| 31 | ♙e5 | ♚f6! (D) |

White could have resigned here but played a few more moves because of my slight time pressure.



- | | | |
|----|-------|------|
| 32 | ♚xf6+ | ♘xf6 |
| 33 | ♙g5 | ♙g7 |
| 34 | h4 | ♙xg5 |
| 35 | hxg5 | ♘xd5 |
| 36 | ♙xh7 | |

0-1

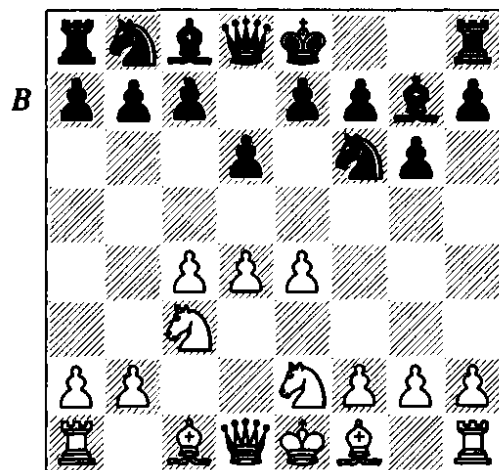
7 5 ge2

I'm not sure who first thought of this system but it was quite prominent amongst Hungarian players in the 1960s before disappearing and returning to enjoy a slight renaissance period in the 1980s. To spend a couple of tempi manoeuvring a knight to g3 (it obviously can't remain on e2 where it clogs up the whole kingside, the one exception being when White fianchettoes his king's bishop) may seem like strange behaviour, but from there the influence it exerts on the e4- and f5-squares makes it more difficult for Black to achieve his traditional kingside counterplay. Consequently, my favoured approach for Black's is to initiate queenside proceedings at once, even delaying castling as the tempo saved may be put to good use on the queenside and an early h4 by White will be less menacing. The basic position is arrived at after the moves 1 d4 Δ f6 2 c4 g6 3 Δ c3 $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ g7 4 e4 d6 5 Δ ge2 a6 6 Δ g3 c6 when White has an important decision to make; whether to stop ...b5 with a4 (which has certain positional disadvantages after the reply ...a5), or to ignore Black's queenside demonstration in favour of quick development or attacking in the centre. The h-pawn plays a very prominent role in this variation and a lot of games will see either a quick h4 by White or an early ...h5 by Black.

In the notes below you will also find a discussion of the main line against Δ ge2 (5...0-0 6 Δ g3 e5) as this is also quite reasonable for Black.

Game 16 Flear – Gallagher San Bernardino 1991

- | | | |
|---|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | d4 | Δ f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | Δ c3 | $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | Δ ge2 (D) | |



5 ... a6

Black can equally play 5...c6, the choice being dependent on what you play against the Sämisch (a variation beyond the scope of this book, which we have transposed into after 6 f3). If your variation contains neither an early ...c6 nor an early ...a6, then you can study the material just below on

5...0-0, or play the percentage game – this means assuming that people who play the ♖ge2 system are not going to transpose into the Sämisch. However, take care if you find yourself Black against Novikov.

As mentioned above, 5...0-0 6 ♖g3 e5 7 d5 is considered to be the main line. Here is a summary of the current state of affairs:

1) 7...♖g4 (speculative) 8 ♖e2 ♗h4 9 ♖b5 (9 f3? ♖xh2!) 9...♖a6 10 ♖d2 ♖h6 (10...c6 11 ♗c1! ♗d8 12 ♖c3 ± Forintos-Sinkovics, Hungary 1986) 11 ♖xh6 ♖xh6 12 0-0 f5 13 exf5 gxf5 14 f4 exf4 15 ♖h5 f3 16 ♖xf3 ♗xc4 17 a4, Serper-Dan- nevig, Gausdal 1991, and now according to Knaak Black should have tried 17...♗h4.

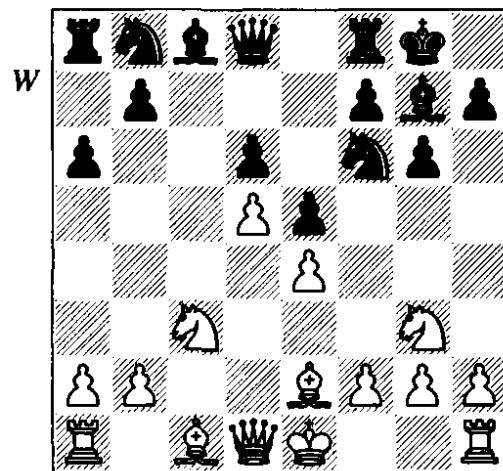
2) 7...a5 8 ♖e2 ♖a6 9 h4 (9 0-0 is not very promising, e.g. G.Georgadze-Akopian, Tbilisi 1989 continued 9...♖c5 10 b3 ♖d7 11 ♖b1 h5 12 ♖g5 ♗e8 13 ♗d2 ♖h7 14 ♖h6 h4 15 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 16 ♖h1 ♗e7 17 ♖be1 ♗g5 with a favourable game for Black) 9...c6 (9...h5 is also playable, e.g. Gurevich-Nijboer continued 10 ♖g5 ♗e8 11 ♗d2 ♖h7 12 ♖e3 ♖d7 13 a4 ♗e7 14 ♖b5 f5! with unclear play) 10 h5 and now:

2a) 10...cxd5 (virtually everyone adopts this move order but it seems inferior to '2b') 11 cxd5 ♖c5 12 a4! ♖d7 13 ♖a3 ♖c8 14 ♖e3 ♗b6 15 hxg6 fxg6 16 f3 with an edge for White, Novikov-Hernandez, Pamplona 1991/2.

2b) 10...♖c5! 11 ♖e3 (playing 11 a4 makes little sense before Black has exchanged on d5) 11...cxd5 12

cxd5 ♗b6! 13 ♖b1 (13 b3 ♖d7 14 0-0 ♗b4!? 15 ♗d2! ♖fc8 16 a3 ♗b6 17 ♖ab1 ♗d8 is roughly level, Korchnoi-Nunn, Wijk aan Zee 1992) 13...♖d7 14 ♖f1 a4 15 ♖d2 ♗a5 16 hxg6 hxg6 17 f3?! (17 ♖f1 was better) 17...b5 18 a3 ♖h5 with good play for Black, Lutz-Gelfand, Horgen 1994.

3) 7...c6 8 ♖e2 cxd5 (8...a6!?) 9 cxd5 a6 (9...♖bd7 has little independent significance; if Black follows up with ...a5 we are likely to transpose to '2', whilst if he follows up with ...a6 we are likely to transpose to one of the lines considered below) and White has tried several moves (D):



3a) 10 0-0 ♖bd7 11 ♖e3 b5 (11...h5 is also possible) 12 b4 ♖b6 13 a4 ♖xa4 14 ♖xa4 bxa4 15 ♖xa4 h5! is unclear according to *ECO*.

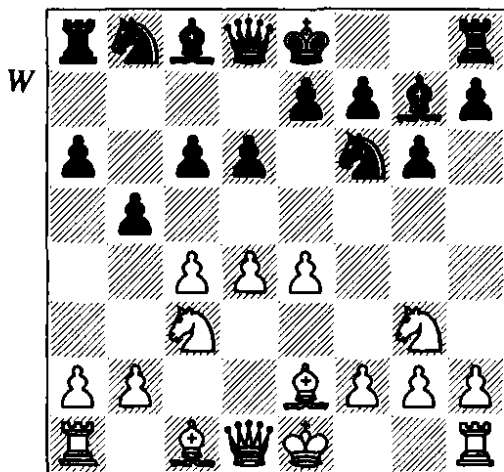
3b) 10 ♖e3 h5! (often a good response to ♖e3 as the bishop now belongs on g5 and White is usually willing to invest a tempo to put it there) 11 ♖g5 (11 h3 ♖bd7 12 ♖f1 b5 13 ♖d2 ♖h7 14 ♖b3 f5 15 exf5 gxf5 16 ♖xh5 b4 17 ♖a4 f4 18 ♖d2 e4 19 ♖xb4 ♖e5 was excellent for

Black in the game Szabo-Basagić, Sarajevo 1972) 11...♖bd7 12 ♗d2 ♗b6 13 0-0-0?! (13 0-0 is safer) 13...♗h7 14 ♙e3 ♗a5 15 ♖b1?! (15 ♙xh5!?) 15...h4 16 ♗f1 ♗c5 with a good game for Black, Serper-Apicella, Asiago 1994.

3b) 10 h4 h5 11 ♙g5 ♗bd7 12 ♗f1 ♗e8 13 ♗d2 b5 14 a3 ♗h7 15 ♙e3 f5 16 f3 ♗df6 17 ♙d3 ♙d7 18 ♗e2 ♖h8 19 0-0-0 ♗b8 20 b4 gave rise to a complex strategic struggle in Novikov-Xie Jun, Helsinki 1992, eventually drawn after 51 moves.

6 ♗g3 c6
7 a4

This has been White's most popular choice, the main alternative being 7 ♙e2. After 7...b5 (7...h5! or 7...e5 can also be played but it seems a little inconsistent not to play ...b5) there is (D):



1) 8 e5! (a little premature perhaps) 8...dxe5 (8...♗fd7? 9 exd6 exd6 10 ♙f4 ♗f6 11 ♗ge4) 9 dxe5 ♗xd1+ 10 ♗xd1 (10 ♙xd1 ♗g4 11 f4 bxc4 12 ♙e2 ♙e6) 10...♗fd7 11 f4 with a couple of examples:

1a) In Tyrntania-Gallagher, Bad Wörishofen 1993 Black attacked the

centre at once with 11...f6. After 12 exf6 exf6 13 ♗e4 f5 (on 13...♖e7 I was afraid of 14 ♙d2!) 14 ♗d6+ ♖e7 15 ♗xc8+ ♗xc8 16 ♙d2 (16 ♙e3! ♗f6) 16...♗c5! 17 ♙b4 ♗bd7 18 ♗c3 (18 ♗c1 is well met by 18...a5! as although 19 ♙xc5 ♗xc5 20 cxb5 cxb5 21 ♙xb5 may appear to win a pawn it loses the game after 21...♗d3+!) 18...♖f7 19 ♗d1 ♙f8 the game was about level.

1b) Perhaps 11...♗b6 offers more chances of a complex middlegame. The game Goormachtigh-W.Watson, Brussels 1986 continued 12 ♗e3 ♙e6 13 ♙d2 ♗d7 14 ♗c1 ♙h6 15 ♗f1 (15 0-0 looks more natural, although White may have been worried about some combination of ...bxc4 and ...♗xe5, exploiting the undefended state of the bishop on d2) 15...0-0 16 b3 ♗ad8 17 ♗e4 bxc4 18 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 19 ♙xc4 ♙f5! 20 ♗g3 ♗xe5 21 ♗xf5 gxf5 22 ♙xa6 ♗d4! (White is allowed no peace) 23 ♗c2 ♗g4 24 h3 ♗f6 25 ♙c3 ♗e4+ 26 ♗e2 ♗a8 27 ♙xf6 ♗xa6 28 ♙xe7 ♗xa2! 29 ♗xe4 fxe4 leading to a favourable endgame for Black.

2) 8 cxb5 axb5 9 b4. This is often an effective way to counter an early ...b5 by Black in the King's Indian – first blockade and later seize the initiative with a4 – but here White has a slightly inferior version as he has already committed his knight to g3. In the similar positions arising from the Sämisch, for example, the e2-knight usually settles on the more active b3-square. 9...♗bd7 10 ♙b2 0-0 11 0-0 ♙b7?! (this is what John

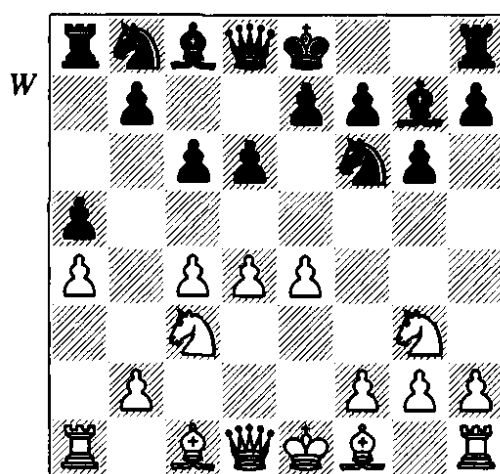
Nunn would call a lazy move; Black doesn't want to have to calculate the consequences of d5 at each turn so he prevents it but in doing so he condemns his bishop to passivity; better was 11...♖b6, keeping open the option of ...♗e6) 12 ♖b3 ♖b6 13 ♗fd1 h5 14 ♖f1 e6 15 ♗c1 ♖fd7 16 ♗e3 ♖a4 17 ♖d2 e5 18 ♖f3 ♖e7 19 ♗ac1 with an edge for White, Remlinger-Djurhuus, Gausdal 1991.

3) 8 0-0 0-0 (8...bxc4!? 9 ♗xc4 d5 10 ♗b3! dxe4 11 ♖gxe4 ♖d5 {11...♖xe4 12 ♖xe4 ♖xd4 would be too risky} 12 ♖f3 0-0 13 ♗g5 ♗a7 14 ♗ad1 h6 15 ♗c1 e6 16 ♗fe1 is a little better for White, Novikov-Kruppa, USSR 1991) 9 f4!? e5 10 fxe5 dxe5 11 d5 cxd5 12 ♖xd5 (Black does not fear 12 cxd5 as he will be easily able to blockade the passed pawn and perhaps undermine it later with ...f5) 12...♖xd5 13 ♖xd5 ♖b6+ 14 c5 ♖c6 15 a4 ♗e6! 16 axb5 axb5 17 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 18 ♗xa8 ♗xa8 19 ♗xb5 ♖d4 20 ♗d3 ♗b8! 21 ♖e2 ♗f8 and Black regained the sacrificed pawn without relinquishing his positional advantage, Remlinger-Hebden, Gausdal 1992.

Before moving on, 7 h4 deserves a quick mention. Liardet-Gallagher, Geneva 1993 continued 7...h5 8 ♗e2 b5 9 cxb5 axb5 10 b4 0-0 (often when Black has played ...h5 in response to h4 he has to worry about piece sacrifices on h5, but delaying castling until White has played a move such as b4 renders it extremely unlikely that White can conduct a kingside attack without allowing

serious counterplay on the queenside) 11 ♗g5 ♖bd7 12 ♖d2 ♖b6 13 0-0 (13 ♗c1) 13...♖h7! 14 ♗e3 e6 (it turns out that it's White who has problems on the kingside) 15 d5 cxd5 16 ♗xb5 (16 exd5 bxc3 17 ♖xc3 ♖xd5 is good for Black) 16...dxe4 17 ♖gxe4? (17 a4 d5 is less clear) 17...d5 18 ♖g5? d4 19 ♗fd1 e5 and Black won material.

7 ... a5! (D)



To the uninitiated, playing ...a6 and then ...a5 may seem like a criminal waste of time, but the point is that Black has now secured outposts for himself on the queenside – b4 at once and the more important c5-square after an eventual ...e5.

8 ♗e2 0-0

A case can be made out for playing 8...e5 although the most likely result is transposition to lines considered below. A couple of independent examples:

1) 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8 should be fine for Black. A possible continuation: 11 f4 ♖bd7 12 0-0 ♗e7 13 ♗e3 exf4 14 ♗xf4 ♖e8 when 15 ♗g5+ should not be met by 15...♗f6? 16 ♗xf6! ♖exf6 17 e5

when White wins but by 15...f6. It is quite noticeable how badly placed the knight on g3 is.

2) 9 d5 ♖a6 10 h4 h5 ♠1 ♚a3! (now it would be dangerous for Black to castle in view of ♖g5 and a sacrifice on h5, so he has to come up with something else) 11...♗d7! 12 ♖g5 (12 dxc6 bxc6 13 ♗xd6 ♖f8!) 12...♖f6 13 dxc6 bxc6 14 ♗xd6 ♗b4 (14...♖xg5 15 hxg5 ♗b4 looks more accurate; perhaps Black was worried about 15 ♗xc6 but 15...♚b8 leaves him with the devastating threat of ...♗b4) 15 ♗d2 (15 ♖xf6 was better even though Black would still have adequate compensation) 15...♖xg5 16 hxg5 ♗c5! 17 ♖a2 ♗xd2+ 18 ♗xd2 ♗e7 19 ♗c3 ♚b8 20 ♗c1 ♚d8 with tremendous positional compensation for the pawn, Rasmussen-Berg Hansen, Danish Ch 1992.

9 f4?!

The most aggressive choice but it doesn't fit in well with White's queenside pawn structure. The alternatives are:

1) 9 0-0 e5 and now:

1a) 10 d5 ♖a6 11 ♖e3 ♗c5 12 ♚e1 (perhaps White could have dispensed with this move; if he was intending to free f1 for the knight then he later changed his mind and retreated it to h1) 12...h5 (other ideas, such as 12...cxd5 13 cxd5 ♗e8 deserve consideration) 13 f3 h4 14 ♗h1 ♗h5 15 ♗f2 ♖f6! (15...♗f4 16 ♖f1 cxd5 17 cxd5 b6 18 ♗h1 was good for White in Verdikhanov-Kruppa, Nikolaev Z 1993) 16 ♗d3 ♗xd3 17 ♗xd3 ♖g5 18 ♖f1 ♖xe3+

19 ♗xe3 with an unclear position according to Verdikhanov.

1b) 10 ♖e3 ♖a6 11 ♗d2 ♗g4 12 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 13 f3 exd4!? 14 ♖xd4 ♖e6 15 ♚ad1 ♗c5 16 ♖xg7 ♗xg7 17 ♗h1 f6 18 ♗f4 ♖xc4 19 ♚xd6 ♗e7 20 ♚fd1 ♚ad8 21 ♚xd8 ♚xd8 22 ♚xd8 ♗xd8 23 e5 ♖f7 24 exf6+ ♗xf6 25 ♗c7 ♗d4 26 h3 ♗xa4 27 ♗xa4 ♗xa4 28 ♗e5+ ♗g8 29 ♗e4 ♗b5 30 ♗f6+ ♗h8 31 ♗e7 ♖g8! 32 ♗e8 ♗c4 33 ♗xg8 ♗c1+ 34 ♗h2 ♗f4+ 35 ♗h1 ♗c1+ 36 ♗h2 ♗f4+ 37 ♗h1 1/2-1/2 Gulko-Benjamin, Los Angeles 1991. A simple but elegant game.

2) 9 h4 e5 10 d5 (after playing h4 White must block the centre) 10...h5 (although 10...♖a6 11 h5 ♗b6 12 ♚a3 ♗c5 also looks OK for Black it is worth taking a time-out to fix the kingside; the only drawback is that Black will have to concern himself with ♖xh5 sacrifices, but usually these will not work) 11 ♖g5 ♗b6 12 ♚a3 (12 ♗c2 ♖a6) 12...♗bd7! (12...♖a6?! 13 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 14 ♖xh5! gxf5 15 ♗xh5 is one example of a dangerous ♖xh5 – note that the rook on a3 is in position to swing) 13 ♗c2 ♗c5 14 ♖e3 (14 ♖xf6 and 15 ♖xh5 is less effective now as White's queen is worse on c2 and Black's knight is already on c5) 14...♖d7 (14...♗g4! 15 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 is better according to Bologan; White must deal with the threats of 16...♗xb2 and 16...♗b4) 15 ♗f1 ♚ac8 16 ♗d2 ♗b4 (now Black is threatening to play ...cxd5, an exchange which he has carefully avoided making until now in order to deny White use of the c4- and

b5-squares) 17 ♘a2 ♖b6 18 ♘c3 ♖d8 19 ♖b1 ♕h7 (19...♘a6) 20 b4 axb4 21 ♖xb4 ♙h6 22 ♙xh6 ♕xh6 with an edge for Black, Ionov-Bologan, USSR Ch 1991.

9 ... e5!

10 dxe5

10 fxe5 dxe5 11 d5 ♖b6! looks a little awkward for White

10 ... dxe5

11 ♖xd8 ♜xd8

12 f5

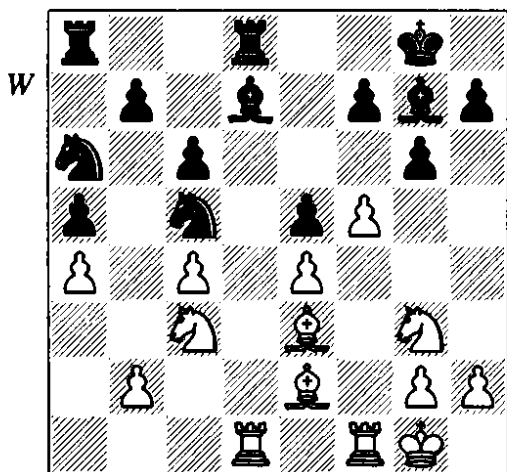
White tries to make it difficult for Black to develop his queenside and doesn't allow him use of the e5-square but he is, nevertheless, still balancing on the edge of a positional precipice.

12 ... ♘a6

13 0-0 ♘d7

14 ♙e3 ♘dc5

15 ♜ad1 ♙d7 (D)



I was feeling quite content at this stage of the game; the game plan was one more semi-developing move (...♙e8) followed by gradually converting my positional advantage. Suddenly my opponent threw a giant spanner in the works. Perhaps 16 ♘b5 is insufficient for equality but it

is certainly the sort of move that has a strong unsettling effect.

16 ♘b5! ♙f8

17 ♙g5

17 ♘d6 ♙e8 looks excellent for Black so White continues with his unbalancing campaign.

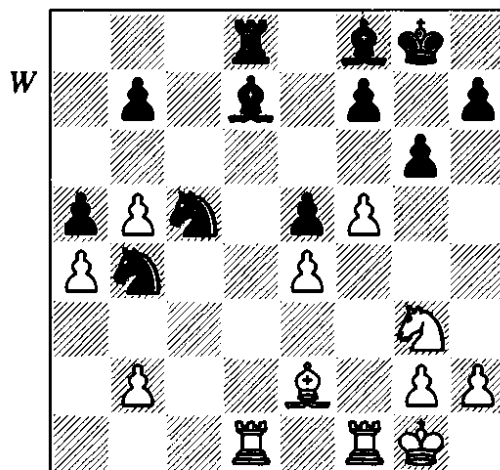
17 ... cxb5

18 cxb5!

Freeing c4 for his bishop was one of White's main ideas.

18 ... ♘b4

19 ♙xd8 ♜xd8 (D)



20 fxc6 fxc6?!

I was bluffed into this anti-positional continuation. After 20...hxc6 21 ♙c4 ♘e6 22 ♙xe6 fxe6 23 ♜f6 ♕g7! 24 ♜xe6 ♕f7 25 ♜xe5 ♕f6 the white rook is trapped.

21 ♙c4+ ♕h8

22 ♜f7 ♜c8

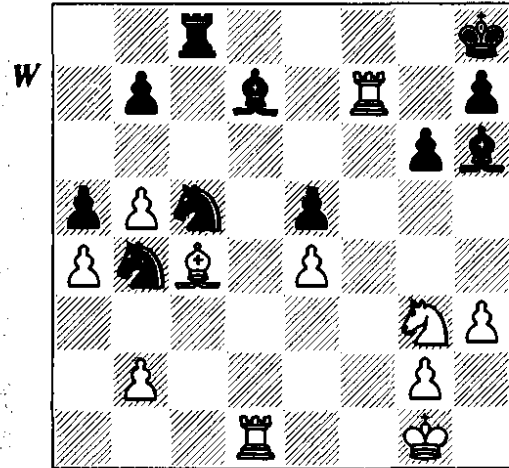
I had been relying on this move but it seems insufficient. Probably White has enough activity to compensate for his slight material deficit.

23 h3

A sensible decision as it's unclear if White can equalise after 23 ♜fxd7 ♘xd7 24 ♙e6, e.g. 24...♘d3!? 25

♙xd3 ♖c1+ 26 ♔f2 ♘c5 27 ♜d8
 ♘xe6 28 ♜e8 ♖c2+ with advantage
 to Black.

23 ... ♙h6 (D)



24 ♜fxd7! ♙e3+
 25 ♔h2 ♘xd7
 26 ♙e6 ♜c1?!

The last chance was to prevent
 White's rook from becoming active
 with 26...♙d4.

27 ♜xd7!

White correctly judges that there
 is far less to fear from the discovered

checks than from the ending after 27
 ♜xc1? ♙xc1 28 ♙xd7 ♙f4 29 h4
 ♘d3! when he is caught in an ex-
 tremely nasty pin.

27 ... ♙g1+
 28 ♔h1 ♙d4+
 29 ♔h2 ♙g1+
 30 ♔h1 ♜e1

Unfortunately for Black his knight
 is completely cut off from the king-
 side so he can't increase the pres-
 sure. The text is a rather half-hearted
 attempt to continue the game.

31 ♙c4!

Threatening to defend the king-
 side. Black cannot afford to waste
 any more time.

31 ... ♙c5+
 32 ♔h2

32 ♙f1 ♙e3! (or 32...♙f2) or 32
 ♘f1 ♜xe4 would be rather silly.

32 ... ♙g1+
 33 ♔h1 ♙c5+
 34 ♔h2

1/2-1/2

8 Unusual Lines

In this Chapter we examine a few very rare lines. The material is split up as follows:

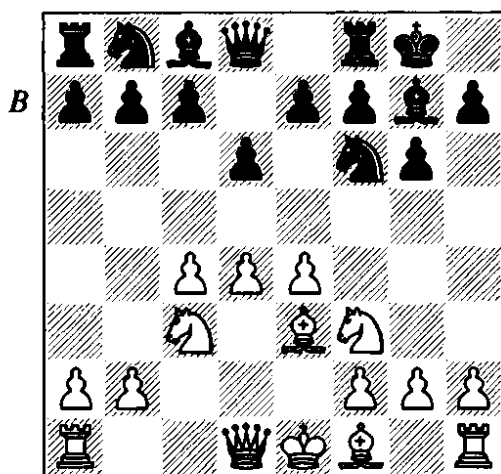
A: 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♘f3 0-0 6 ♙e3

B: 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♙e2 0-0 6 ♙e3 (6 g4, 6 h4)

C: 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 ♘f3 d6 5 e3

A)

- | | | |
|---|---------|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♘c3 | ♙g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | ♘f3 | 0-0 |
| 6 | ♙e3 (D) | |



A favourite variation of Larsen and Rivas. White's main idea is to achieve a favourable version of the Exchange Variation, but as we shall see Black has nothing to fear in the resulting ending.

6 ... e5

There are many other moves that Black can play but they are likely to transpose to the Classical, not covered in this book. 6... ♘g4 leads to independent play but I don't really trust it.

7 dxe5

7 ♙e2 transposes to the Gligorić Variation.

7	...	dxe5
8	♙xd8	♙xd8
9	♘d5	♙d7

9... ♘a6 is an important alternative leading to the following possibilities:

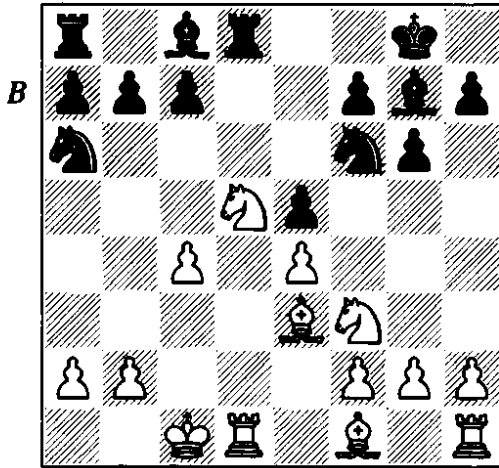
1) 10 ♙d1 and now:

1a) 10... ♙g4?! runs into 11 ♙g5! when 11... ♙d6 loses to 12 ♘xf6+ and 11... ♙xd5 12 cxd5 ♘xe4 13 ♙e7 ♘d6 14 ♙xa6 bxa6 15 ♙c1 was very good for White in Toth-Mortensen, Thessaloniki OL 1984.

1b) 10... ♙f8!?! 11 ♘xf6+ ♙xf6 12 a3 b6 13 ♙d3 ♙d7 14 ♙e2 ♙fd8 15 h3 ♙ab8 16 b4 c5 was fine for Black in Cifuentes-Nijboer, Wijk aan Zee 1991.

1c) 10... ♙e6 11 ♙g5 ♙xd5 12 cxd5 ♘c5 13 ♘d2 h6 14 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 15 ♙c1 ♙e7 16 b4 ♘d7 17 ♙xc7 ♙xb4 18 ♙b5 (18 ♙xb7 a5 19 f3 ♙ac8 is dangerous for White) 18... ♘f6 19 ♙d3 ♙ac8 20 ♙xc8 ♙xc8 21 ♙e2 ♘e8 is = according to Hübner in ECO.

2) 10 0-0-0 and now (D):



2a) 10...g4 leading to a further branch:

2a1) 11 h3 gxf3 12 gxf3 d7!? (12...c6 is also perfectly playable) 13 h4 c6 14 c3 f8 15 h5 dc5 with good play for Black, Bjarnason-Van Wely, Lyngby 1990.

2a2) 11 c5 dxd5 12 exd5 db4 13 e4 b5! 14 e5 xa2+ 15 c1 ab8 16 cxa2 e5b5 gave Black a good game in Rivas-Blees, Amsterdam 1986.

2a3) 11 g5 (this looks the most testing) 11...d6 12 h3 gxf3 13 gxf3 e6 (13...f8!?, intending ...g8 and ...c6, has been suggested by C.Hansen and 13...h6!? 14 gxf6+ gxf6 15 e6 h6 e7xd1+ 16 cxd1 d5 17 h4 e8+ 18 c2 e6 19 e3 d4+ 20 e4xd4 e7xd4 was quite comfortable for Black, despite his pawn minus, in Cifuentes-Geenen, Belgium 1993, though I have to say I would be extremely reluctant to give up a pawn like this) 14 h4 c6 15 c3 (15 gxf6+ gxf6 16 e3 h3 e4xg5+ 17 hxg5 e7 and 16 e7 d7 c5 17 e7 e4xg5+ 18 hxg5 a5 are both comfortable for Black) 15...e8 (15...e8 deserves consideration, intending to meet 16 d6 with 16...h5) 16 e3

d6 17 e7xd6 dxd6 18 b3 e8 19 d1 e6 20 a4! with an edge for White, Cifuentes-I.Sokolov, Wijk aan Zee 1993.

2b) 10...e6 11 gxf6+ gxf6 12 c5 (12 e7xd8+ e7xd8 13 a3 c5 14 e2 1/2-1/2 J.Horvath-Groszpeter, Hungarian Ch 1991) 12...e7xd1+ 13 cxd1 e7xd8+ 14 c1 b4 15 e4 d3+ 16 e4xd3 (16 c2 d4 17 h3 e7d7 was quite good for Black in Ubilava-Kupreichik, Kuibyshev 1986) 16...e7xd3 17 c2 e8 18 h3 e7d7 19 d2 e5 20 b3 e7 with an equal position, L.Hansen-Kupreichik, Copenhagen 1988.

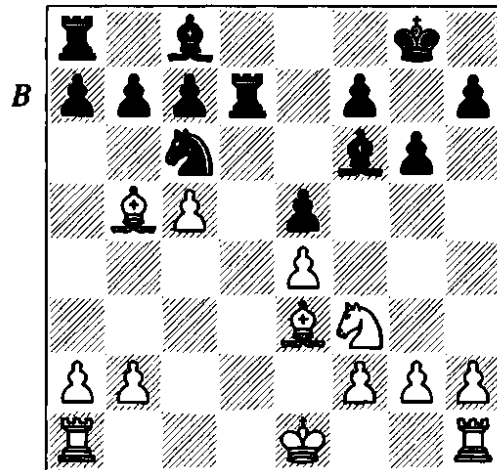
10 gxf6+

10 gxe5? dxd5 11 dxd7 gxe3 wins for Black.

10 ... gxf6

11 c5 d6

12 e3 b5 (D)



12 ... f8!?

12...d8 is more common. After 13 e6xc6 bxc6 there is:

1) 14 0-0 e8 (it is usually a good idea for Black to force b3 so that he doesn't have to worry about a white rook swinging to a3 later) 15 b3 e6 16 e7f1 e7g7 17 e7ac1 h6 18

♘d2 ♖b4 19 g4 ♙d3 with equality, Renet-Zsu.Polgar, Brest 1987.

2) 14 ♖d1 ♙a6! 15 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 16 ♘d2 ♙e7 17 g4 ♖b8 18 b3 f6 with an edge for Black, Barbero-Khalifman, Plovdiv 1986.

3) 14 ♘d2 ♙a6 (14...♖b8 15 0-0-0 ♙e6 16 b3 ♙e7 17 ♘b1 f5 18 f3 ♖xd1+ 19 ♙xd1 fxe4 1/2-1/2 Rivas-Lukin, Leningrad 1984) 15 0-0-0 ♙e2 16 ♖de1 ♙d3 17 f3 a5 18 ♘b1 ♙h4 19 g3 ♙e7 was about level in Rivas-J.Polgar, Madrid 1993.

13 ♙e2 ♙e7

14 a3

White doesn't really know what to do; he is reluctant to play ♙xc6 as Black will have saved the tempo which he normally spends on unpinning and, especially after his 13th move, ...♙a6 will prove annoying.

14 ... ♙g7

15 ♙c4 h6

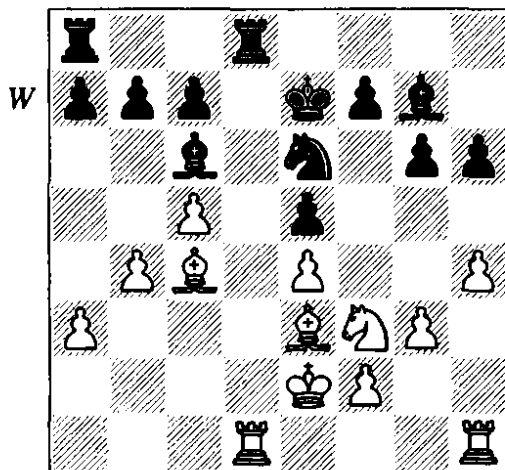
16 h3 ♘d8

17 b4 ♘e6

18 g3 ♖d8

19 ♖ad1 ♙d7

20 h4 ♙c6 (D)



Black has a slightly better ending as 21 ♙d5 can be met by 21...♙b5+

and 22...c6. Kosten-King, Hastings 1990/1 continued 21 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 22 ♘d2 ♘d4+ 23 ♙xd4 ♖xd4 24 ♙d3 a5 25 ♖b1 axb4 26 axb4 ♙d7 27 f3 ♙e6 28 b5 ♖a4 29 ♖b2 ♙f8 30 ♖c2 ♙f6 31 c6 b6 32 ♙c4 ♖b4 33 ♙d3 ♙c5 34 ♖c1 ♙d4 35 ♖c2 ♙e7 36 ♖c1 ♖b2 37 ♖c2 ♖xc2 38 ♙xc2 ♙d6 39 ♙d3 ♙c5 40 ♙d1 ♙f2 41 ♘f1 ♙c4 42 ♙xc4 ♙xc4 43 ♙e2 ♙c5 44 g4 ♙xb5 and Black soon won.

B)

1 d4 ♘f6

2 c4 g6

3 ♘c3 ♙g7

4 e4 d6

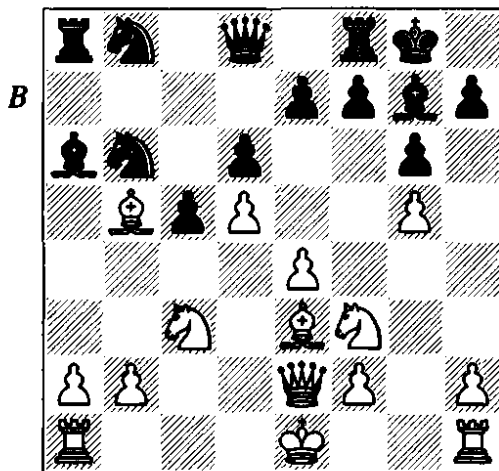
5 ♙e2 0-0

6 ♙e3

A move which, for no particular reason, has been completely neglected by chess theory. One could argue that it is not inferior to 6 ♘f3 which has just had a 640-page work written on it, while 6 ♙e3 merits 25% of a footnote in *ECO*. There are obvious similarities to the 6...h6 7 ♙e3 line in the Averbakh and although there are some transpositions it should be in Black's favour to have his pawn on h7. White has a couple of other unusual and aggressive alternatives:

1) 6 g4 a6!? (Black signals his preference for the Benko option, very logical after a move like g4 as White must be at least thinking about castling long) 7 g5 (the reason for Black delaying ...c5 is to enable him to switch plans after 7 a4, which can be met by 7...e5! 8 d5 a5!) 7...♘fd7

(7...♘h5 led to very wild play after 8 ♙e3 b5 9 ♙xh5 gxh5 10 ♚xh5 ♘c6 11 ♘ge2 ♘b4 12 ♘d2 c5 in Bareev-Djurić, Bled 1991) 8 ♙e3 (8 a4?! ♘c6 9 ♙e3 e5 10 d5 ♘d4 is good for Black) 8...c5 9 d5 b5! 10 ♘f3! (10 cxb5 axb5 11 ♘xb5? ♙xb2 12 ♚b1 ♚a5+! and 11 ♙xb5 ♙a6 12 ♙xa6 ♘xa6 13 ♘f3 ♚b6 14 ♚e2 ♚fb8 with a very good Benko are variations given by Lanka) 10...♘b6! 11 cxb5 axb5 12 ♙xb5 ♙a6 13 ♚e2? (13 ♚d3?? loses at once to 13...c4!, 13 a4 ♙xb5 14 axb5 ♚xa1 15 ♚xa1 e6 is very good for Black and 13 ♚b3 is well met by 13...♚c8!, although this is probably the best that White can do) (D)



13...♘a4!! (a brilliant and unexpected tactical shot) 14 ♙d2 (14 ♘xa4 ♚a5+ 15 ♙d2 ♚xb5 16 ♚xb5 ♙xb5 17 ♘c3 ♙d3! is disastrous for White) 14...♘xc3 15 bxc3 (15 ♙xc3? loses to 15...♙xc3+ 16 bxc3 ♚a5) 15...♙xb5! 16 ♚xb5 e6 (the white position is riddled with weaknesses and his king has no home) 17 0-0 (17 dxe6 fxe6 18 ♚e2 d5 19 0-0 ♚a4! demonstrates the energy in Black's position) 17...exd5 18 exd5

♚c8! 19 ♘h4 ♚h3! 20 ♘g2 ♘d7 21 f4 ♚ab8 22 ♚e2 ♚b2 23 ♚fb1 ♙xc3! 24 ♚xb2 ♙xb2 25 ♚b1 ♙d4+ 26 ♙e3?! (26 ♘h1 h6!) 26...♚e8 27 ♚b3 ♚f5! 28 ♚c4 ♚xe3! 29 ♘xe3 (29 ♚xe3 ♘b6!) 29...♚xf4 30 ♚e2 c4! 31 ♚a3 c3! 32 ♘g2 ♙xe3 33 ♚xc3 ♚xg5+ 34 ♘h3 (34 ♘f3 ♘e5+ 35 ♘e4 f5#) 34...♙c5! 35 ♚e8+ ♘g7 36 ♚xd7 ♚h5+ 37 ♘g2 ♚e2+ 38 ♘h3 ♚f1+ 39 ♘h4 ♚f6+ 0-1 Hort-Lanka, Manila OL 1992.

2) 6 h4 ♘c6 (I don't suppose there is much wrong with 6...c5 or 6...e5 either) 7 ♙e3 (7 d5 ♘e5, unclear, is better) 7...e5 8 d5 ♘d4! 9 ♘h3 (9 ♙xd4 exd4 10 ♚xd4 ♚e8 11 ♚d3 ♚e7 12 f3 ♘h5 is good for Black) 9...c5 10 dxc6 bxc6 11 ♘g5 d5! 12 cxd5 cxd5 13 exd5 ♘xd5 14 ♘xd5 ♚xd5 with advantage to Black, Alvarez-Palacios, Seville 1992.

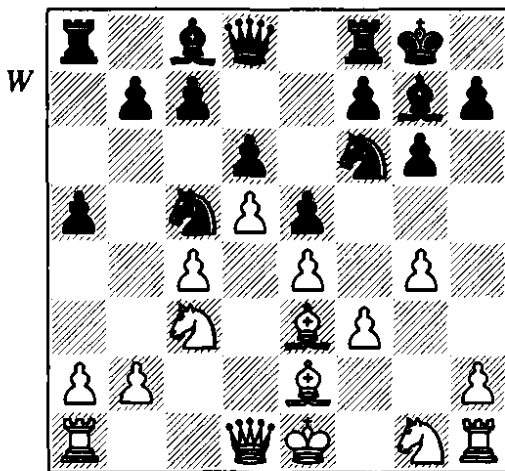
6 ... e5

6...c5 is not a bad move, but as the 6...h6 7 ♙e3 c5 line in the Averbakh is not part of our repertoire I can't really recommend it.

7 d5 ♘a6

7...c6 8 g4 cxd5 9 cxd5 ♚a5 10 ♘f1 (10 ♙d2 ♘a6 11 h4 ♘c5 12 f3 ♚b6 13 ♚b1 a5 14 ♙e3 h5 15 ♘h3 a4 16 ♘f2 ♚a5 was unclear in Sadler-McDonald, British Ch (Eastbourne) 1990) 10...♘a6 11 a3 ♙d7 12 g5 ♘e8 (Black ends up in a passive position after this but it would take a brave man to play 12...♘h5) 13 b4 ♚d8 14 h4 f6 15 ♘f3 ♙g4 16 ♚c1 ♘ac7 17 ♘d2 ♙xe2 18 ♚xe2 with an edge for White as Black's minor pieces have very little scope, Sadler-Krasenkov, Pamplona 1990.

8 g4 ♖c5
9 f3 a5 (D)



10 h4

10 ♖d2 h5!? (10... ♖e8 11 h4 f5 12 g5 ♗d7 13 ♘h3 c6 14 exf5! ♗xf5 15 ♘f2 was a little better for White in Conquest-Gallagher, Douai 1993 and 10... ♗d7 11 h4 h5 12 g5 ♘h7 13 ♘h3 is an inferior version of the main line) 11 h3 ♘h7 12 0-0-0 h4 13 ♖e1 ♗f6, with ... ♗g5 to follow, was about equal in Marjanović-Martinović, Belgrade 1977.

10 ... h5
11 g5 ♘h7

This is better than 11... ♘fd7 and 11... ♖e8 (both of which have been played against Sadler, the main champion of this system) as Black must seek immediate counterplay with ...f6 to avoid being squashed. We have, incidentally, now transposed into an old line of the Averbakh.

12 ♘h3 f6

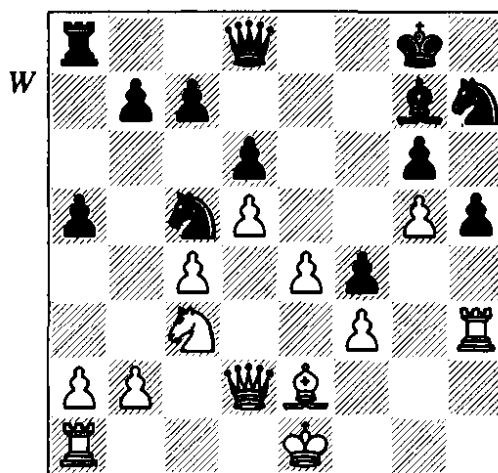
12...c6 13 ♖d2 cxd5 14 ♘xd5 ♖a6 15 ♘f2 ♖e6 16 0-0-0 ♖c6 17 ♗b1 was favourable for White in F.Olafsson-Keene, Reykjavik 1976 but the player of the black pieces obviously wasn't idle in Reykjavik as the main

line is taken from a game played a few rounds later in the same tournament.

13 ♖d2 ♗xh3
14 ♖xh3 fxg5
15 hxg5 ♖f4!

An excellent, if typical, exchange sacrifice which has to be accepted as otherwise Black will simply pick up the g5-pawn.

16 ♗xf4 exf4 (D)



17 0-0-0?

White had to try 17 ♖xf4, even if after 17... ♗e5 18 ♖e3 ♘xg5 19 ♖h1 ♖f6 Black still has a complete bind on the dark squares.

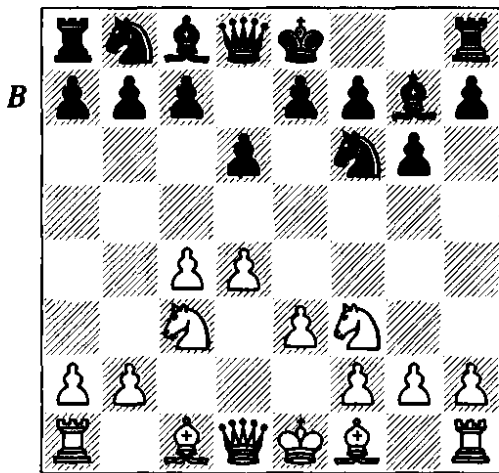
After 17 0-0-0, the game Gunnarsson-Keene, Reykjavik 1976 continued 17... ♘xg5 18 ♖h2 ♖f6 19 ♖g1 ♘f7 20 ♖hg2 ♖e5 with a positionally won game for Black. In return for a minimal material investment he has excellent outposts for both knights, a powerful battery on the long diagonal, two potential passed pawns on the kingside and an a-pawn which could cause White some grief. Considering that Keene's hero is Nimzowitsch I should not omit to mention his blockade of the centre.

C)

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4

2 ♘f3 g6 3 b4 is a weird move-order often employed by the Swiss IM Känel. One example is Känel-Gallagher, Villars 1995 which continued 3...♙g7 4 ♙b2 d6 5 e3 e5 6 c4 (6 dxe5 ♘fd7) 6...0-0 7 ♙e2 exd4 (on several occasions I have reached the position after 7...♘bd7 against Känel) 8 ♘xd4 c5! 9 ♘b5 ♘c6 10 bxc5 dxc5 11 0-0 ♙e6 12 ♘d2 ♖e7 13 ♖c1 ♗fd8 with an edge for Black. Note the similarities with the Dreev-Shirov game given below.

2 ... g6
3 ♘c3 ♙g7
4 ♘f3 d6
5 e3 (D)



At first glance this looks like a very passive system against the King's Indian but White wants a solid centre and kingside as he has aggressive intentions on the queenside.

5 ... 0-0
6 ♙e2 ♘bd7
7 0-0

In Dreev-Shirov, Lvov 1990 White delayed castling in favour of 7 b4.

There followed 7...e5 8 ♙b2 exd4 9 ♘xd4 c5!? 10 bxc5 dxc5 11 ♘db5 ♘b6 12 ♖b3 ♘g4 13 h3 ♘e5 14 0-0 ♙e6 15 ♗ad1 ♖h4 16 ♘c7 ♘xc4 17 ♘xe6 ♘xb2 18 ♘xf8 and the players agreed to a draw in view of 18...♘xd1 19 ♘xg6 hxg6 20 ♗xd1 with a roughly level endgame.

7 ... e5
8 b4

8 b3 is more solid. ECO gives 8...♗e8 9 ♙a3 e4 (9...exd4 10 ♘xd4 ♘c5 11 ♖c2 ♘fe4 12 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 13 ♙b2 a5 14 ♘b5 ♙xb2 15 ♖xb2 b6 = Barcza-Bolbochan, Helsinki OL 1952) 10 ♘d2 ♘f8 11 ♖c2 ♙f5 12 ♙d1 c5 13 d5 ♘6d7 14 ♙b2 ♖g5 15 ♙c2 ♘f6 with an unclear game, Barcza-Planinc, Ljubljana 1969.

8 ... ♗e8
9 a4 exd4

9...e4 is doubtful since White's queenside attack is already well under way.

10 exd4

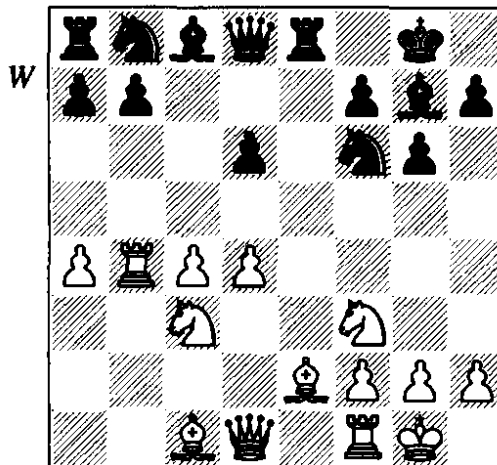
10 ♘xd4 is met by 10...c5.

10 ... c5

Black can react in several different ways to White's queenside pawn armada. 10...d5 11 ♖b3 is perhaps a little better for White while 10...a5 11 b5 ♘b6 was my choice in the game Wirthensohn-Gallagher, Wohlen 1993, the idea being to dissuade White from playing c5 as then Black will be able to occupy the d5-square. Play continued 12 ♙f4 ♙f5 13 ♗c1 h6 14 h3 g5 15 ♙h2 ♘e4 16 ♘xe4 ♙xe4 17 c5 dxc5!? 18 ♗xc5 c6 19 bxc6 bxc6 20 ♘e5 ♘d7! with complications that were not unfavourable for Black.

11 ♖b1 cxb4
 12 ♖xb4 ♘b8!? (D)

A grandmasterly move. Black repositions his knight in order to create some play against the hanging pawns. Spiridonov-Hort, Brno 1975 continued 13 h3?! ♘c6 14 ♖b5 ♘a5 15 ♙e3 b6 16 ♖b4 ♙a6 17 d5 ♘g4 18 ♙g5 ♚c7 19 ♘b5 ♙xb5 20 axb5 ♘f6 21 ♙e3 ♖xe3! 22 fxe3 ♚c5 23 ♖b1 ♚xe3+ 24 ♙h2 ♘h5 with a clearly better game for Black.

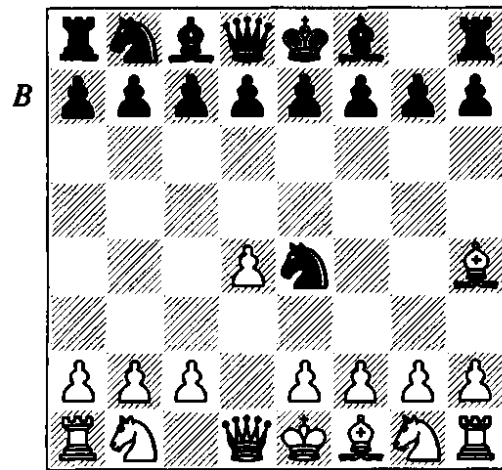
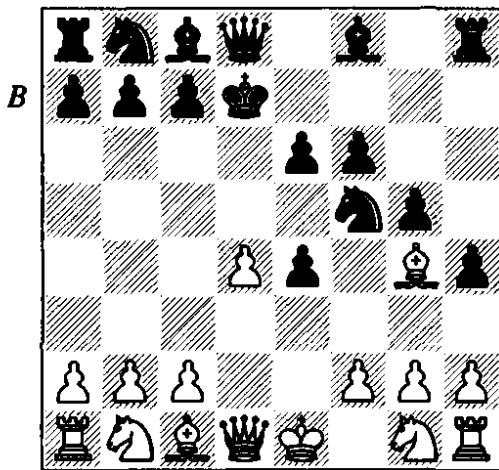


9 The Trompowsky

The last ten years or so have seen the Trompowsky develop into a fairly respectable system. Much of the credit for this belongs to English Grandmaster Julian Hodgson who for years never played anything else. Even in top tournaments where his opponents had days to prepare for him he still managed to prove that the Trompowsky can be a dangerous weapon. I can recall very well his initiation into the Trompowsky. In 1985 Julian, Mark Hebden and I took part in a small round-robin tournament in Alicante, Spain. Amongst the opposition were the then unknown Spaniards Illescas and de la Villa, who turned out to be Trompowsky fanatics. As five of our six games against this pair were with Black many of our nights were spent digging deep in search of the Trompowsky's secrets, although it has to be admitted that our duty-free stock also took a terrible battering during these sessions. Some incredible ideas were found, even if they didn't all look quite so promising by the following afternoon. At any rate, before the end of the tournament Julian was convinced that the Trompowsky was the opening for him and the rest is public knowledge. Even I took it up for a year afterwards with excellent results before finally getting a bit bored playing the same positions

all the time. In fact the popularity of the Trompowsky is largely due to the fact that it eliminates the need to learn masses of theory on the King's Indian, Nimzo-Indian, Queen's Indian and many other lines. For some time Hodgson couldn't even be bothered to learn how to play the Queen's Gambit and started to play 2 ♖g5 in response to 1...d5 ... which happens to remind me of one of my weirdest ever games. I could say that what follows is a good example of the strategically complex and tactically uncompromising struggles that arise from Trompowsky-style positions, but that would be a load of old Chapter 14. In reality I have always slightly regretted that this game has never been published so I'm going to seize my chance despite its irrelevance: Gallagher-Crouch, Nottingham 1987 1 d4 d5 2 ♖g5 f6 3 ♖h4 ♗h6 4 e3 ♗f5 5 ♖g3 h5 6 ♖e2 h4 7 ♖h5+ ♔d7 8 ♖g4 e6 9 ♖f4 g5 10 e4 dxe4 11 ♖c1! (D).

This is the position I really wanted to show you. I bet your club-mates won't be able to guess how this came about! White has good compensation for a pawn and the remaining moves provided even more fun (for me): 11...♗e7 12 c3 ♜d5 13 ♗h3 ♗d6 14 0-0 ♖d7 15 b3 ♗c6 16 ♖e3 b5 17 a4 ♜b8 18 axb5 ♜xb5 19 ♗d2 ♗f5 20 ♗xe4 ♜xb3



21 ♚f3 ♚f7 22 ♙h5+ ♚g7 23 ♜hxg5 fxg5 24 ♚g4 ♙e7 25 ♙xg5 ♚f8 26 ♙xe7+ ♜cxe7 27 ♚g5! ♜h6 28 g4! hxg3 29 fxg3 ♜xh5 30 ♚xh5 ♙c6 31 ♜g5 ♚g7 32 ♚h7+ ♚f6 33 h4 ♙e8? 34 ♜e4 mate. OK, let's quickly get back to the repertoire before the editor notices [*Eh? What was that? – editor's note*].

After 1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♙g5 Black has a large number of moves but I think we can rule out 2...e6 and 2...d5 as being inappropriate for King's Indian players. 2...c5 is interesting but my preference is for the most critical line, 2...♜e4, mainly because I don't think you should let Trompowskyites play ♙xf6. White normally replies 3 ♙f4 and this, along with 3 ♙h4 and the eccentric 3 h4 are examined in the games below.

Game 17
Bellon – W. Watson
Hastings 1985/6

- 1 d4 ♜f6
- 2 ♙g5 ♜e4
- 3 ♙h4 (D)

This retreat was once quite popular but is now rarely seen. This is no

doubt due to a number of heavy defeats which White suffered in the latter half of the 1980s. The drawback of ♙h4, as opposed to ♙f4, is that Black is able to force the exchange of knight for bishop and consequently obtains counterplay on the dark squares. This may sound contradictory to those of you who have just read the introduction to this chapter where I stated that 3 ♙xf6 should be avoided, but the difference there is that the pawn structure makes it hard for Black to achieve active play.

3 ... ♙g5

3...c5 4 f3 ♙g5 5 fxe4 gxh4, transposing back into the game, is an equally valid move-order.

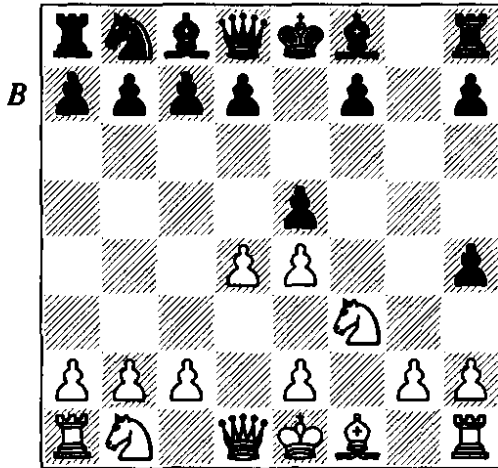
4 f3

4 ♙g3 would be an admission of defeat whilst 4 ♚d3 led to an active game for Black in Jokšić-Gallagher, Chiasso 1991 after the moves 4...d5 5 f3 gxh4 6 fxe4 dxe4 7 ♚xe4 c5! (the initiative is what counts in such positions) 8 dxc5 ♜c6 9 c3 ♙h6 10 ♜f3 (not 10 ♚xh4? ♙c1! winning material; this is an extremely important trick which occurs time and time again in this variation) 9...h3 10 g4

♙c1! 11 ♖c2 ♙e3 12 b4 (12 ♙xh3 h5!) 12... ♗d5!? (12... ♙xg4 13 ♗e4) 13 ♗d3 ♗xd3 14 exd3 ♙xg4 15 ♖bd2 0-0-0 16 b5 ♖a5 17 ♙e2 ♙xf3 18 ♖xf3 ♗hg8 ♚.

4 ... gxf4
5 fxe4 c5

5...e5 is the move that we spent most of our time on in Alicante, but it is less trustworthy than 5...c5. After 6 ♖f3 (6 e3 ♗g5 is quite good for Black) Black has (D):



1) 6...exd4 7 ♗xd4 ♗g8 8 ♗e5+ ♗e7 (as 8... ♙e7 9 ♗h5 looks good for White it is preferable to sacrifice the c-pawn) 9 ♗xc7 and now:

1a) de la Villa-Gallagher, Alicante 1985 continued 9... ♖c6 10 ♖c3 ♙g7 11 ♖d5 ♗xe4 12 0-0-0 ♖b4 13 ♖xb4 ♗xb4 14 c3 ♗a4 15 e3 ♗xa2 16 ♙b5 ♙f6! 17 ♙xd7+ ♙xd7 18 ♗xd7+ ♖f8 19 ♗d6+ ♙e7 20 ♗d2 ♗c8 21 ♖d4 ♗g6 with quite a good game for Black, but I didn't feel confident enough to repeat this in a later round against Illescas. Perhaps 15 ♗d3 would have posed more serious problems.

1b) In a later game, Keitlinghaus-Knaak, Bundesliga 1991 Black

opted for 9... ♖a6 and after 10 ♗c4 b5!? 11 ♗d5 ♖c7 12 ♗d3 ♙b7 13 ♖c3 ♙h6 14 ♖d4 ♗g5! (Black prepares to meet 15 ♖f5 with 15... ♗xf5 leaving his fate in the hands of his powerful bishops) 15 e3 b4 16 ♖cb5 ♖xb5 17 ♖xb5 d5! 18 0-0-0 a6 19 ♖d4 dxe4 20 ♗b3 the game was unclear. Black's pieces are more active, but his pawns are ragged.

2) 6... ♙h6!? (Black parts company with a central pawn in order to activate his bishops as quickly as possible) 7 ♖xe5 d6 8 ♖f3 0-0 9 ♖c3 f5 10 exf5 ♙xf5 11 e4 ♙g4 12 ♙e2 h3 13 g3 ♖c6 (I think we had this position on the board the night before the game and had concluded that Black stood very well, but we had underestimated White's next move) 14 ♖d5! ♙xf3 15 ♙xf3 ♖xd4 16 ♗xd4 ♗xf3 17 ♖e2 ♗f8 18 ♗af1 with an edge for White, Illescas-Gallagher, Alicante 1985.

3) I seem to recall 6... ♖c6!? being tried by Spelman, and this may be a more effective sacrifice since White's d-pawn is forced to advance if he wants to collect his booty.

6 e3 ♙h6

The assault on the dark squares commences.

7 ♖f2

The only way to protect the pawn as 7 ♗f3 ♗b6 is out of the question. White has also tried 7 ♙c4, with the obvious point 7... ♙xe3?? 8 ♗f3, but 7...e6 looks quite promising, e.g. 8 ♗h5 ♗g5 (8... ♙xe3 9 ♗xc5) 9 ♗xg5 ♙xg5 10 ♖c3 (10 ♖f2 cxd4 11 exd4 ♙c1!) 10... ♙xe3 11 ♖b5 ♖d8 12 ♖f3 a6 13 ♖d6 ♖e7 14 e5

(14 ♖xc8+ ♜xc8 15 d5 is better according to Schmidt, but 15...b5 still looks good for Black) 14...cxd4 15 c3, Bellon-Schmidt, Biel 1990, and now 15...dxc3 16 bxc3 ♖c6 would have been the simplest, with an excellent game for Black.

7 ... cxd4
8 exd4 ♜b6

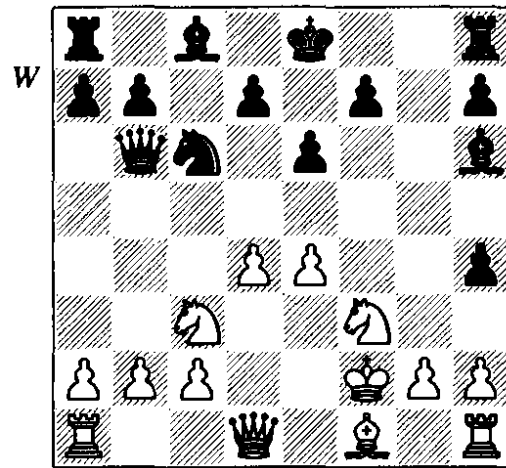
8...e5!? is an interesting new idea. Voloshin-Golubev, Alusta 1993 continued 9 ♖f3 ♖c6 10 c3 (10 d5 ♜b6+) 10...d6 11 ♖bd2 (11 ♙b5 0-0 12 ♜e2 f5! 13 ♜d1? fxe4 14 ♜xe4 d5 and White resigned in Espin Martinez-Sorin, Benidorm 1992 as he loses a piece) 11...♙g4 (11...0-0 followed by ...f5 looks tempting here as well) 12 h3 ♙h5 13 ♙e2 ♜f6 14 d5 ♖e7 15 ♜f1 ♖g6 and Black had a firm grip on the dark squares as well as attacking chances against the white king.

9 ♖c3 e6!

Taking the b-pawn is a risky business as the following example demonstrates: 9...♜xb2?! 10 ♖d5 ♙d8 11 ♜b1 ♜a3 12 ♜h5 ♜d6 13 ♖f3 ♜g6? 14 ♜e5 1-0 Ker-Pomeroy, New Zealand Ch 1994. Anyway the main purpose behind ...♜b6 was to create pressure along the important g1-a7 diagonal which happens to number the white king amongst its occupants. The text, of course, maintains the position of the queen by preventing ♖d5.

10 ♖f3 ♖c6 (D)
11 ♖b5?!

The start of an incredibly optimistic plan. White should probably play ♙b5xc6 in order to relieve the



pressure on his centre. On 11 e5, 11...f6! 12 exf6 0-0 is recommended by Vujačić in *Informator* but his assessment of 'unclear' perhaps underestimates Black's chances. If Black can play 13...♜xf6 he will have a strong attacking position and the only move to prevent this, 13 ♖e4, is met simply by 13...d5.

11 ... 0-0
12 c4 d6!

This makes it difficult for White to drive back the black queen.

13 b4

13 ♖xd6 is strongly answered by 13...e5!, for example 14 ♜b3 exd4 15 ♜xb6 ♙e3+ 16 ♙e1 axb6 17 ♖xh4 ♖b4 18 ♙d1 ♙g4+! 19 ♙e2 ♙d7 20 ♖b5 d3 21 ♙f1 ♙xb5 22 cxb5 ♜fc8 with a winning position for Black, Aleksandrov-Loginov, Kstovo 1994.

13 ... ♜d8

13...♖xb4 14 ♜b1 a6 has been recommended, but I prefer Watson's choice as he is now ready to play ...e5 without having to worry about the reply c5.

14 ♜b1

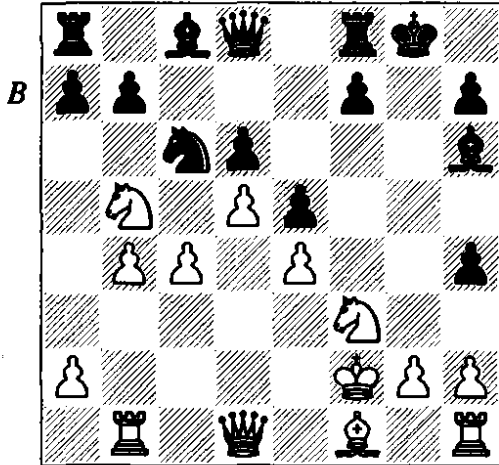
14 a3 would have avoided the game continuation but Black would

still be able to open the position by playing ...e5 followed by ...f5.

14 ... e5!

15 d5 (D)

15 dxe5 ♖b6+ is also very good for Black.



15 ... ♘xb4!

Black utilises a little tactical trick to open the queenside which will make it much easier for him to get at the white king.

16 ♖xb4 ♗b6+

17 ♔e1 a6

18 ♗b3

18 ♖a4 ♔d7! 19 ♘c3 ♗e3+ 20 ♘e2 ♔xa4 21 ♗xa4 ♗xe4 is not an improvement.

18 ... axb5

19 ♖xb5 ♗a7

I think Black has at least two pawns' worth of compensation here but he isn't even any material down.

20 ♔e2

20 c5 doesn't work: 20... ♔d7! 21 ♖xb7 and now both 21... ♗a5+ and the piece sacrifice 21... ♗xc5 are very good for Black.

20 ... f5!

Now a dangerous passed e-pawn can be added to Black's list of trumps.

21 exf5 ♔xf5

22 ♖f1 ♗xa2

23 ♗xa2 ♖xa2

The queen exchange offers White no relief whatsoever.

24 c5

White has no time to take for 24 ♖xb7 as 24... ♖a1+ 25 ♔f2 ♖xf1+ 26 ♔xf1 e4 is the end.

24 ... ♔e3

This tightens the noose around the white king, but 24... ♖a1+ would have been good enough as well.

25 ♘xh4

25 cxd6 fails to 25... ♖a1+ 26 ♔d1 ♔d3.

25 ... ♖a1+

26 ♔d1 ♔g4!

27 ♘f3 e4

28 ♖b4 ♖f4!

29 cxd6 exf3

30 ♖xf4 f2+

0-1

Game 18

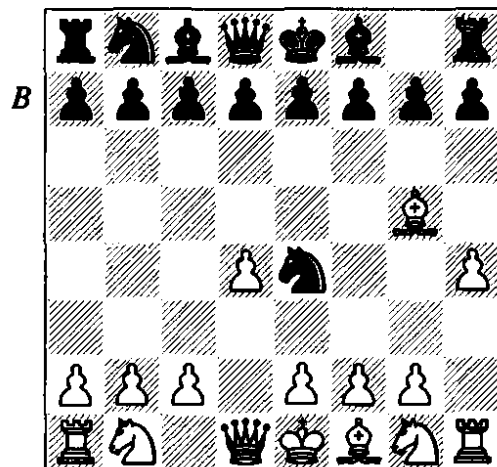
Hodgson – Nunn

English Ch 1991

1 d4 ♘f6

2 ♔g5 ♘e4

3 h4 (D)



The 'h4 Tromp', introduced as a stopgap between the fading 3 ♖h4 and the rising 3 ♖f4, has been the subject of much ridicule and laughter over the years. From a purely chess point of view it is hard to believe in this line but in practice White has actually scored quite well. Perhaps this is due to the psychological impact that a move such as 3 h4 can have on the opponent. On seeing 3 h4 Black probably begins to feel very confident (how can he play such rubbish?) but he may also experience some difficulty in taking the game seriously; not a good combination. I can recall one of the first games in this line, Hodgson-Gufeld, Hastings 1986/7. Black played the opening quite well and by move 15 was a pawn up for nothing. But soon afterwards things started to go wrong; he castled queenside rather riskily and White was able to sacrifice a piece for unclear complications after which 'Big Eddie' proved to be no match for a Hodgson in his element, eventually overstepping the time limit in a lost position. What made this game so memorable though is the reaction of Gufeld to his defeat. For the next hour he remained alone on the stage, a tragic figure with his head clasped in his hands and for the rest of the tournament he could be heard explaining to anyone who would listen that this game was not chess and how disgraceful it was that someone could conduct a game in the way Hodgson had just done.

My main recommendation against the 'h4 Tromp', apart from staying

calm, is 3...c5 but I have also given a summary of the theory of 3...d5, which may be less dynamic than 3...c5 but is probably the simplest way to equalise.

3 ... c5

3...d5 4 ♘d2 with several possibilities:

1) 4...♗xg5 5 hxg5 ♖f5 (5...c5 is interesting, leading to an unclear game after 6 dxc5 e5 7 e4!) 6 e3 and now:

1a) The aforementioned Hodgson-Gufeld, Hastings 1986/7 continued 6...e6 7 g4 ♖g6 8 f4 c5 (8...♗d7 9 ♗f3 ♖xc2 10 ♖c1 ♖a4 11 ♖d3 g6 12 f5 gxf5 13 gxf5 ♗xg5 14 ♗h3 ♗h4+ 15 ♗f2 ♗g5 16 ♗h3 ♗h4+ 17 ♗f2 ♗g5 18 ♗h3 1/2-1/2 Hodgson-Zagrebely, Manila OL 1992) 9 ♗gf3 (9 ♗f3!?) 9...♗c6 10 c3 ♗b6 11 ♗h4?! (11 ♗b3 is more to the point) 11...♗xb2 12 ♗xg6 fxg6 13 ♖b1 ♗xc3 14 ♖b3 ♗a5 15 ♖xb7 c4 16 ♖f2 0-0-0 (16...♗xa2! is best) 17 ♖b1 ♖b4 18 ♗xc4! dxc4 19 ♖xc4+ ♖c7 20 ♖xe6 ♖he8 21 ♗b3 ♖d6 22 d5+ ♖exe6! 23 dxe6 ♖d2+ 24 ♖g3 ♗b5 25 ♖hc1 a5? 26 ♗c4! ♗xc4 27 ♖xc4 ♖e7 28 ♖h1 ♖d6 29 ♖xh7 ♖d5 30 ♖c1 ♖a3 31 ♖b1 ♖b2 32 ♖h2! ♖xh2 33 ♖xh2 ♖a3 34 f5 gxf5 35 gxf5 ♖e7 1-0.

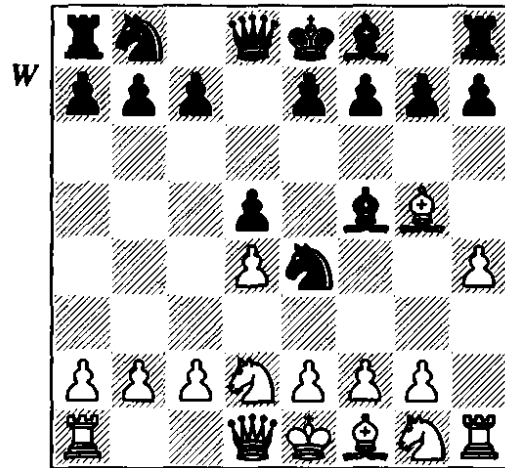
1b) 6...c5 7 g4 (7 dxc5 e6 8 ♗b3 ♖xc5 9 ♖d3 ♖xd3 10 ♗xd3 is considered as clearly better for White by Kosić but I wonder if he took 10...♗xg5! into account, e.g. 11 ♗b5+ ♗c6 12 ♗xc5 ♗xg2 13 ♗xb7 0-0 14 ♗xc6 ♗xh1 15 0-0-0 ♗h4 and Black may even be better) 7...♖d7 8 g6! (a thematic pawn sacrifice in this

line) 8...fxg6 9 ♖d3 ♜b6 10 dxc5 ♜f6 11 ♜f3 e5 12 ♜xf6 gxf6 13 ♖xg6+ ♔e7! (an improvement on the original h4 Tromp game, Depasquale-Kudrin, London 1986, which went 13...♔d8 14 g5! with a clear advantage for White) 14 f3 ♘a6 15 ♙xh7+ ♚xh7 16 ♖xh7 ♖h6 17 ♘f1 ♘xc5 and Black had some pressure in return for his pawn, M.Hansen-Fedorov, Tåstrup 1992.

2) 4...♘d2 5 ♖xd2 occurred in the game Hodgson-Hebden, Candas 1992. One may look at the position in the following way: from the starting position give White the move d4 and Black ...d5, remove a knight from each player and then offer White a couple of free moves; not many players would choose ♖d2 and h4. However, Hebden now opted for 5...e5?! which is exactly the sort of reaction that the 'h4 Tromp' lures people into. After 6 dxe5 ♘c6 7 ♘f3 ♖g4 8 ♖g5 ♖e7 9 ♜d2 ♜d7 10 0-0-0 0-0-0, the simple 11 e3 (instead of 11 ♜f4? f6!) would have left White on top. A more natural course for Black to follow would have been to play ...e6 and ...c5, perhaps even without ...♖f5 which does rather invite White to expand on the kingside. In my opinion this type of 'French' bishop is often just as well placed inside the pawn chain.

3) 4...♖f5 (D) is the most solid, no-nonsense approach to the 'h4 Tromp' and is responsible for Hodgson's solitary defeat in this line. White has:

3a) 5 ♘xe4 ♖xe4 6 f3 h6 7 fxe4 (7 ♖f4 is less risky, but after 7...♖h7



8 e3 e6 9 ♖d3 ♖xd3 10 ♜xd3 ♘d7!? 11 ♘e2 ♖e7 12 g3 c5 Black had an active game in Kosić-Drozdo, Bukovice 1993) 7...hxg5 8 ♜d3 (8 ♘f3!?) 8...e6 9 ♜b5+? ♘c6 10 ♜xb7 ♘b4! (perhaps White had only considered 10...♘xd4, after which 11 0-0-0 would give him good play for the pawn) 11 ♜b5+ ♜d7 12 ♜b7 ♜c8 13 ♜b5+ ♜d7 14 ♜b7 ♜c8 15 ♜b5+ c6 16 ♜a4 dxe4 with advantage to Black, Hodgson-Salov, Wijk aan Zee 1993.

3b) 5 e3 h6 6 ♖f4 e6 7 g4 ♖h7 8 ♘xe4 ♖xe4 9 f3 ♖h7 10 ♖d3 ♖xd3 11 ♜xd3 c5! 12 ♖xb8!? ♚xb8 13 f4 cxd4 14 exd4 ♖d6 15 ♘e2 h5 with a double-edged game, Hodgson-Beliavsky, Groningen 1994.

4 dxc5

In his most recent outings with the 'h4 tromp' Hodgson has preferred 4 d5, after which there is:

1) 4...♜b6 (risky) 5 ♘d2 ♘xg5 6 hxg5 ♜xb2 7 e4 with good compensation for the pawn.

2) 4...♘xg5 5 hxg5 g6 (not just with the intention of placing the bishop on its best diagonal, but also with the idea of preventing any awkward g6 pawn sacrifices from White)

6 ♖c3 d6 7 a4 ♙g7 8 ♚d2 ♜b6 9 ♞a2 ♜a6 10 e4, Hodgson-Adams, Wijk aan Zee 1993, and now I like the look of 10...♜b4, e.g. 11 ♞a3 e6 12 ♙b5+ ♚f8 13 dxe6 ♙xe6 with an active game for Black. However, it wouldn't surprise me if White could improve on his 7th or 8th moves.

3) 4...g6 5 ♚d3 and now:

3a) 5...♜xg5 6 ♚c3!? f6 (6...♞g8 7 hxg5 ♙g7 8 ♜b3 c4 9 ♞a3 b5 10 ♞xh7 was very messy in Hodgson-P.Cramling, Bern 1992 but White does have an extra pawn) 7 hxg5 ♙g7 8 ♜d2 (perhaps White should play 8 gxf6 in order to force Black to recapture with the bishop) 8...d6 9 gxf6 exf6! (9...♙xf6 may seem more natural, but after the text Black has a much healthier pawn structure) 10 ♚g3 (threatening ♞xh7) 10...0-0! 11 ♚h4 h6 12 ♚g3 g5 with an excellent game for Black, Hodgson-Gufeld, London rpd 1995.

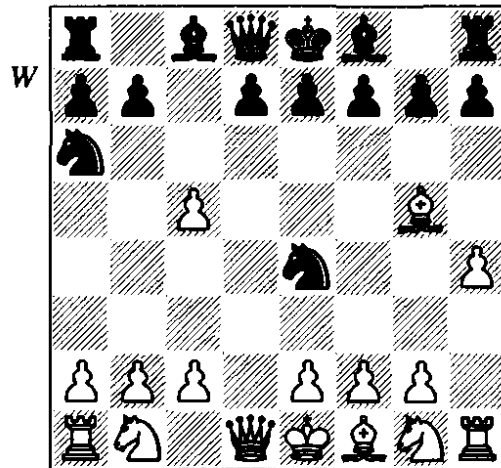
3b) 5...♞a5+ (this avoids Hodgson's ♚c3 idea, although as we saw above it's not clear if it's worth preventing) 6 ♜d2 ♜xg5 7 hxg5 ♙g7 8 c3 (an important move, limiting the scope of Black's strong bishop) 8...d6 9 e4 ♜d7 10 a4 ♞b8 11 ♜c4 ♚c7 12 f4 a6! (Black must open the queenside as quickly as possible in order to try to punish White for moving so many pawns) 13 a5 b5 14 axb6 ♜xb6 15 ♚c2 e6 16 dxe6 ♙xe6 17 ♜e3 and now Black played 17...♙d7 in Hodgson-Emms, British Ch 1992, drawing the sting from any f5 by White and preparing to pressure the e-pawn with ...♙c6. This, though, is a rather slow idea and it could well

be worth investigating the razor-sharp 17...d5!?

4 ... ♞a5+

As one would expect, the theory of this line is still largely undeveloped and there is no clear consensus as to what Black's best continuation is; therefore, I have examined all the main alternatives below:

1) 4...♜a6 (*D*) has been Black's most popular choice but according to Adams, in *Informator*, Hodgson considers it inferior to 4...♞a5+. White has now tried a couple of moves:



1a) 5 ♚d4 ♜axc5 (5...♞a5+ 6 ♜d2 ♜xg5 7 hxg5 ♚xc5, as played in Miladinović-Adams, Moscow OL 1994, also looks comfortable for Black) 6 ♜c3 ♜xc3 7 ♚xc5 ♜e4 8 ♚d5 ♜xg5 (8...♜f6 9 ♙xf6 gxf6 10 0-0-0 d6 11 e4 a6 led to a fairly typical Sicilian position with chances for both sides in Kosić-Shipov, Belgrade 1994) 9 hxg5 ♚b6 10 0-0-0 ♚xf2 11 ♜f3 (11 ♚e4 is suggested by Miladinović but it's hard to believe that White has enough for the pawn after something like 11...♚b6 12 ♜f3 g6 when 13 ♚e5 can simply

be met by 13...f6 14 gxf6 ♖xf6) 11...♗e3+ 12 ♖b1 e6 13 ♗c4 d5 14 ♗b5+ ♙d7 15 ♗xb7 ♜c8 16 ♘d4 ♙c5 17 ♜h3 ♗e5 18 ♜c3 ♖e7 19 e4 ♜c7 with a clear advantage for Black, Kosić-Kiselev, Yugoslavia 1993.

1b) 5 ♘d2 (this seems the better option) 5...♘axc5 with a further branch:

1b1) 6 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 7 ♗d4 ♗a5+ 8 c3 ♘g5 (8...d5!? has been suggested here) 9 hxg5 ♗xg5 10 e4 ♗a5 11 ♘f3 and somewhat surprisingly White seems to have good play for the pawn. For example: 11...d6 12 e5! dxe5 13 ♘xe5 ♙e6 14 b4! ♗a4 15 ♜d1 with a very strong attack for White, Depasquale-Lanka, Melbourne 1991; perhaps 11...♗b6 can be tried, but after 12 ♗xb6 axb6 13 ♘e5 e6 14 ♙b5! ♙d6 15 ♘c4 ♙c7 16 e5 Black will find it difficult to escape the bind, at least with his material advantage intact.

1b2) 6 ♘gf3 ♗b6 7 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 8 ♗d4 ♗xd4 9 ♘xd4 a6 10 g3 e5 11 ♘b3 d5 12 ♙g2 has occurred several times and it appears that White might have an edge in this ending, for example 12...♘xg5 13 hxg5 ♙e6 14 0-0-0 (better than 14 f4 0-0-0 15 ♖f2 ♙e7 16 ♜ad1 d4 17 ♙h3 ♙xh3 18 ♜xh3 f6 with at least equality for Black, Adams-Lesiège, Oakham 1992) 14...0-0-0 15 ♙h3! or 12...f5 13 ♙xe4 fxe4 14 c3 b6 15 0-0-0 ♙e6 16 f3 exf3 17 exf3 ♙d6 18 f4, Hodgson-Hebden, Cappelle la Grande 1992, and in both cases White had slightly the better chances.

2) 4...♘xg5 5 hxg5 e6 6 ♘f3 ♙xc5 7 e3 (7 ♘c3 ♗b6 8 ♘e4 ♗xb2!

9 ♘xc5 ♗c3+ 10 ♘d2 ♗xc5 is good for Black) 7...♘c6 (7...♗b6 8 ♘bd2 d5 9 ♘b3 ♙e7 10 ♗d2 ♘c6 11 0-0-0 ♙d7 12 ♗c3 f6 is unclear according to Timoshenko) 8 ♗d3 (8 g6 looks a little premature as after 8...fxg6 9 ♙d3 0-0 White has nothing immediate and moves such as 10 ♘c3 or 10 ♖e2 are well met by 10...♘b4; 8 ♙d3, threatening to play g6, looks quite natural though) 8...♗b6 9 ♘bd2 (9 ♗b5 or 9 ♗b3 were more solid) 9...♗xb2 10 ♜b1 ♗xa2 11 ♗c3 (11 ♜xh7 is better), Tošić-Varavin, Alushta 1994, and now Black failed to play the decisive 11...♗xb1+! 12 ♘xb1 ♙b4.

3) 4...♘c6 5 ♘d2 ♘xc5!? 6 e4 d6 7 ♘gf3 ♙g4 8 c3 g6 9 ♙e3 ♙g7 10 ♙xc5 dxc5 11 ♗b3 ♗c7 was fine for Black in Miladinović-Sulskis, Moscow OL 1994.

4) 4...h6!? 5 ♙e3 e6 6 ♘d2 ♘xc5 7 ♘gf3 d5 8 c3 b6 9 g3 ♙b7 10 ♙g2 ♙e7 11 0-0-0-0 with a roughly level game, Miladinović-Svidler, Yugoslavia 1995.

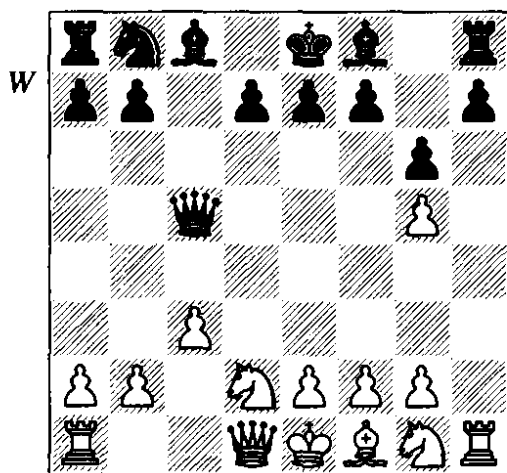
5 ♘d2 ♘xg5
6 hxg5 g6

The immediate 6...♗xc5 is doubtful on account of the familiar pawn sacrifice 7 g6!. After 7...fxg6 8 e3 ♘c6 9 ♘gf3 (9 ♙d3 allows 9...♘e5, but even here 10 ♘gf3 ♘xd3+ 11 cxd3 d6 12 ♘h4 is quite awkward for Black) and White will continue with ♙d3 creating threats of ♙xg6 and ♜xh7. On 9...♘e5 White can play 10 ♘xe5 ♗xe5 11 ♙d3 ♗f6 12 c3 followed by ♗c2 with a strong initiative.

7 c3

I recall that Hodgson once derived great pleasure from the rook manoeuvre 7 $\text{R}h4!$? $\text{Q}c6$ (7... $\text{W}xc5??$ 8 $\text{R}c4$) 8 $\text{R}c4$. Nogueiras and Estevez now give 8... $\text{R}g7$ 9 c3 $\text{Q}e5$ 10 $\text{Q}b3$ $\text{W}c7$ 11 $\text{R}h4$ a5 12 a4 as good for White (Black won't get his pawn back), but why not 8... $\text{Q}e5$ when the consistent 9 $\text{R}c3$ $\text{R}g7$ looks good for Black?

7 ... $\text{W}xc5$ (D)



8 $\text{Q}gf3$

8 $\text{Q}e4$ $\text{W}e5$ (perhaps there was no need to encourage White's next move) 9 $\text{R}h4$ $\text{R}g7$ 10 $\text{Q}f3$ $\text{W}a5$ 11 b4 $\text{W}c7$ 12 $\text{R}c1$ 0-0!? 13 e3 d6 14 $\text{R}c4$ $\text{Q}d7$ 15 $\text{R}b3$ b6 16 $\text{Q}d2$ $\text{R}b7$ 17 $\text{W}h1$ (one of the few white moves that I managed to predict in this game) 17... $\text{R}fc8$ and now:

1) 18 $\text{R}xh7$ $\text{R}xe4$ 19 $\text{R}xg7+$ $\text{Q}xg7$ 20 $\text{W}h6+$ $\text{Q}g8$ 21 $\text{R}h1$ fails to 21... $\text{W}xc3+$, whilst other 21st moves for White are also insufficient, e.g. 21 c4 $\text{R}xf3$ 22 gxf3 (22 $\text{R}h1$ $\text{R}h5$) 22...d5! 23 f4 (23 $\text{R}h1$ $\text{W}e5$) 23...dxc4 24 $\text{R}h1$ $\text{W}d6+$ 25 $\text{Q}e2$ $\text{W}d3+$ 26 $\text{Q}f3$ $\text{W}c3!$ and there is no mate.

2) The game T.Wall-Gallagher, Grangemouth 1990 continued 18 $\text{Q}d4$

$\text{Q}f8!$ (Black now has the better prospects) 19 c4 a5 20 a3 axb4 21 axb4 $\text{W}d7$ 22 $\text{Q}c3$ $\text{R}a3$ 23 $\text{Q}db5??$ (the wrong one) 23... $\text{R}xb3$ 0-1.

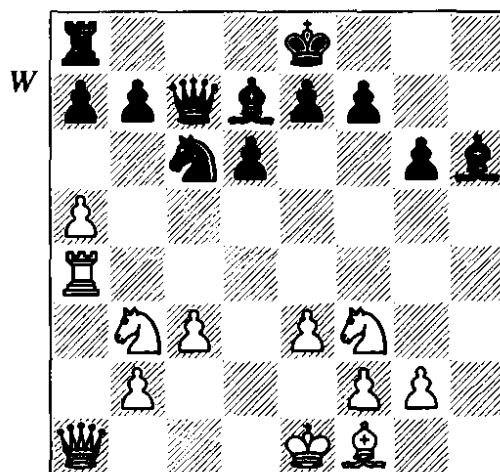
8 ... $\text{R}g7$
9 e3 $\text{Q}c6$
10 $\text{Q}b3$ $\text{W}b6$
11 a4 d6
12 a5 $\text{W}c7$
13 $\text{R}a4$

We've already seen the manoeuvre $\text{R}h4$ -c4, and now Hodgson attempts to treat us to the manoeuvre $\text{R}a4$ -h4. People usually talk about open files for rooks, but sometimes open ranks can be just as effective. Take a look at the splendid game Karpov-Hort, Moscow 1971 for confirmation (beyond the scope of this book, I'm afraid).

13 ... $\text{R}d7$
14 $\text{W}a1!$?

White's imagination is working overtime. With the a-pawn reinforced $\text{R}ah4$ is now a serious threat, hence Nunn's reaction, liquidating the h-file pressure.

14 ... h5
15 gxh6 $\text{R}xh6$
16 $\text{R}xh6$ $\text{R}xh6$ (D)

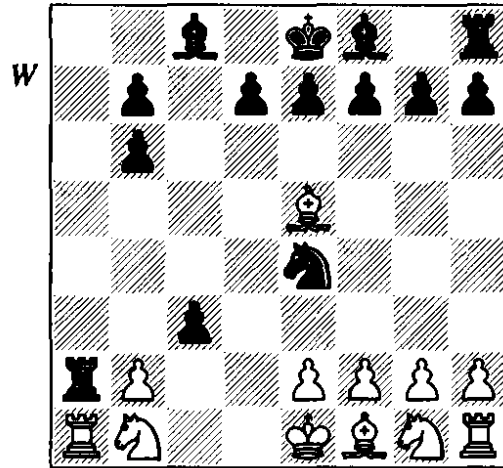
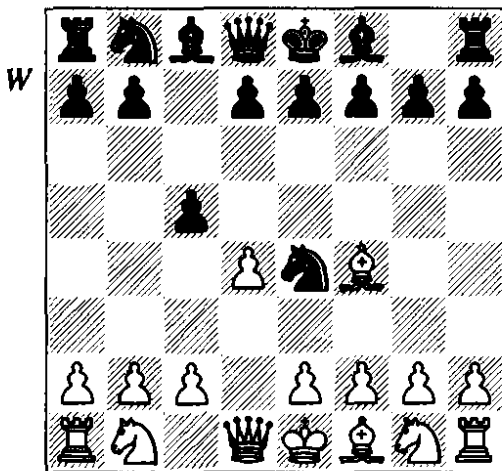


The position is roughly level. The remaining moves were 17 a6 ♖b8 18 ♘bd4 ♙g7 19 axb7 ♘xd4 20 ♘xd4 ♖xb7 21 ♖a2 e5 22 ♘c2 ♙e6 23 ♖a6 ♗b8 24 ♗a5 ♙f6 25 ♘b4 ♙d8 26 ♗a4+ ♙d7 27 ♗d1 ♙e7 28 ♙e2 ♖b6 1/2-1/2

a beautiful trap flashed through my mind and ... ♗b6 was played with a trembling hand. The next few moves were banged out as we followed my opponent's home preparation: 5 ♗b3 cxd4! 6 ♗xb6 axb6 7 ♙xb8 (7 cxd4 ♘c6 is promising for Black) 7...dxc3! 8 ♙e5 ♖xa2!! (D).

Game 19
Gerstner – Gallagher
Biel 1993

- 1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♙g5 ♘e4
3 ♙f4 c5 (D)



3...d5 is equally playable but the text is probably more suitable for King's Indian players.

4 d5

- 1) 4 f3 is the next game.
- 2) 4 dxc5 is almost never played; 4... ♘c6 looks like a decent reply.
- 3) 4 c3 is unambitious and in Terentiev-Gallagher, Liechtenstein 1990, it was only my opponent's unsporting behaviour that deprived me of my quickest ever victory. 4... ♗b6 seemed to me the most logical continuation but I was loathe to exchange queens so early. Suddenly

Only here did he stop to think; a bit late as skilful play is now required to restrict his losses to a rook and three pawns!

4 ... ♗b6

Only in this way can White be prevented from developing his pieces smoothly.

5 ♘d2

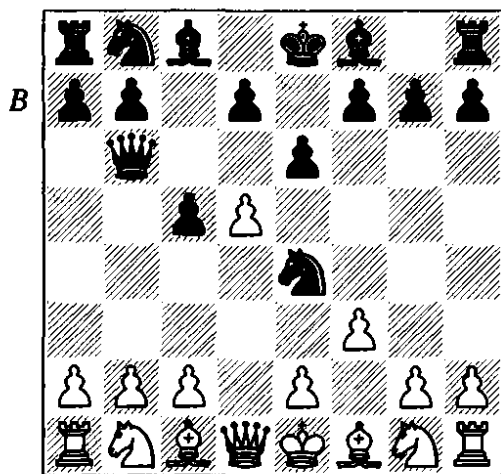
As the b-pawn can only be defended with awkward moves White often leaves it to its fate. It should be noted, though, that Hodgson has no confidence in this particular offer. The alternatives are:

- 1) 5 b3?? ♗f6!.
- 2) 5 ♘c3 ♗b4 (5... ♗xb2 6 ♘xe4 transposes to the game) 6 a3 ♘xc3 7 axb4 ♘xd1 8 ♙xd1 cxb4 9 ♙xb8 ♖xb8 10 ♖xa7 e6 11 dxe6 dxe6 12 e3 ♙c5 with advantage to Black, Serrano-Kolev, St Cugat 1992.

3) 5 ♖c1 c4!? (5...g5 also deserves consideration because Black quickly achieved the better game in Van der Sterren-Yusupov, Amsterdam 1978 after 6 ♙e5 f6 7 ♙g3 ♙g7 8 c3 f5 9 e3 0-0, but White should probably have tried 7 ♙xb8) 6 e3 ♗a5+ 7 ♘c3 (7 ♘d2 c3!) 7...♘xc3 8 ♗d2 e6! 9 bxc3 (9 d6 g5 10 ♙g3 ♙g7 11 ♘e2 b5 is very good for Black) 9...exd5 with some advantage for Black. My source is the *Informator* editorial team, but Kasparov has also suggested 5...c4.

4) 5 ♙c1 is the main alternative to sacrificing the b-pawn. White's bishop has taken three moves to get nowhere, but Black's knight is suspended in mid-air and his queen is also exposed on b6. Black must act vigorously to prevent White from taking over the centre which, for some reason, he often fails to do in practice. We are going to examine a couple of possibilities:

4a) 5...e6 6 f3 (D) and now:



4a1) 6...♘f6 7 c4 exd5 8 cxd5 c4 (Black could have played a Benoni with an extra tempo but ...♗b6 is not of much use; instead he takes his

chances on the dark squares) and now:

4a11) 9 e4 ♙c5 10 ♘h3 d6 11 ♙xc4 ♙xh3 12 gxf3 0-0 13 ♘c3 and now Gurevich and Chernin propose 13...a6! (presumably the immediate 13...♗d8 is met by 14 ♘a4, not fearing 14...♘xe4 15 fxe4 ♗h4+ 16 ♙d2) 14 ♙f1 ♗d8 followed by ...♘h5 and ...f5. It looks like enough play for a lousy pawn to me.

4a12) 9 e3! is Hodgson's new move, which seems to place Black in some difficulties. His game with Stohl, Isle of Man 1995 continued 9...♗a5+ 10 ♘c3 b5 11 ♗d4! ♙b4 12 ♗e5+ ♙f8 (12...♙d8 13 ♙d2 ♗e8 14 ♗g5! ±) 13 a3 ♙b7 14 axb4! ♗xa1 15 ♘ge2 ♗a6 16 ♘d4 with excellent compensation for the exchange. 9...♙c5 would have been another try when both 10 ♙xc4 ♗b4+ 11 ♘d2 ♙xe3 12 ♗e2?! 0-0 and 10 ♘c3 0-0 11 ♙f2 ♗e8 look fine for Black but I'm not sure what to do after 10 ♙f2! as 10...0-0 11 ♙xc4 ♗e8 12 ♗b3 looks insufficient.

4a2) 6...♗a5+ 7 c3 ♘f6 8 e4 d6 (8...exd5 9 e5) and now White has:

4a21) 9 ♙d2 exd5 10 c4 ♗c7 11 cxd5 g6 with a reasonable Benoni according to Kasparov, but he also suggests 10 exd5 as an improvement without considering 10...♘xd5. After 11 c4 ♘b4 12 a3 ♙f5 I can't see a good continuation for White.

4a22) 9 ♘a3 exd5 10 exd5 ♙e7 11 ♘c4 ♗d8 was roughly level in Van der Wiel-Kasparov, Moscow IZ 1982. According to Kasparov, Van der Wiel now began to play

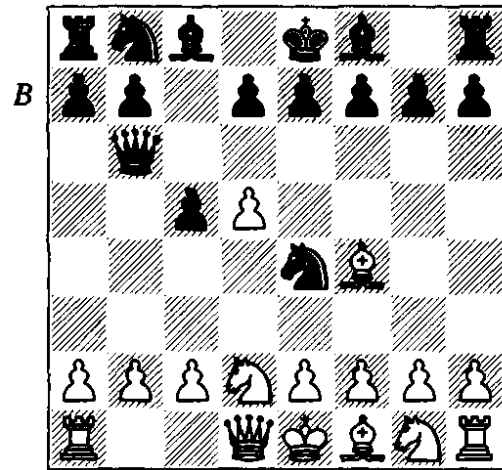
strangely: 12 ♖e3 0-0 13 ♖e2 ♜e8
 14 g4? (White calmly gains space on
 the kingside, ignoring the fact that
 his king is still in the middle on an
 open file; after 40 minutes thought
 Kasparov found the refutation of
 White's plan) 14...♗fd7! 15 ♖g3 ♙g5
 16 ♖f2 ♖e5 17 ♙b5 (17 h4 ♙xe3+
 18 ♙xe3 ♖f6! and the threat of
 19...♗xg4 is decisive) 17...♙d7 18
 ♙xd7 ♗bxd7 19 ♖ef5 c4! 20 ♖h5?
 ♖d3+ 21 ♖g3 ♙xc1 22 ♜xc1 g6!
 and White resigned, realising that
 after 23 ♖d2 Black is not forced to
 capture towards the centre with
 23...gxf5, which loses to 24 ♖h6,
 but can play 23...gxh5 winning at
 once.

4b) 5...g6 6 f3 ♖d6!? 7 e4 ♙g7 8
 ♖d2 0-0 (8...f5 and 8...e6 also come
 into consideration) 9 f4! (9 ♙d3 f5!
 10 ♖e2 c4! and 9 ♖h3 e6 10 ♙e2
 exd5 11 exd5 c4 are both good for
 Black according to Rotshtein) 9...e6
 10 e5 ♖f5 (10...exd5 11 exd6 ♜e8+
 12 ♙e2 c4 may bring you success at
 blitz) 11 ♖c4 ♖d8 and now instead
 of 12 ♖e3? ♖xe3 13 ♙xe3 d6! 14
 ♖f3 dxe5 15 dxe6 ♙xe6 16 ♖xe5
 ♖d7 17 ♖xd7 ♙xd7, which gave
 Black an overwhelming position in
 Liogky-Rotshtein, Cannes 1992,
 White should play 12 dxe6! dxe6 13
 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 14 c3 b6 15 ♙e2 ♙b7
 16 ♙f3 ♙d5! with an equal game.

Let us return to the position after 5
 ♖d2 (D).

5 ... ♖xb2!

Black makes use of a little tactic
 to prevent White developing his
 forces in the most harmonious man-
 ner. After 5...♖xd2 6 ♙xd2 ♖xb2



7 e4 I believe that White *does* have a
 dangerous initiative for the pawn.

6 ♖xe4

There is little choice as 6 ♜b1
 ♖f6 7 ♖xe4 ♖xf4 8 ♖xc5 e6 is fa-
 vourable for Black.

6 ... ♖b4+

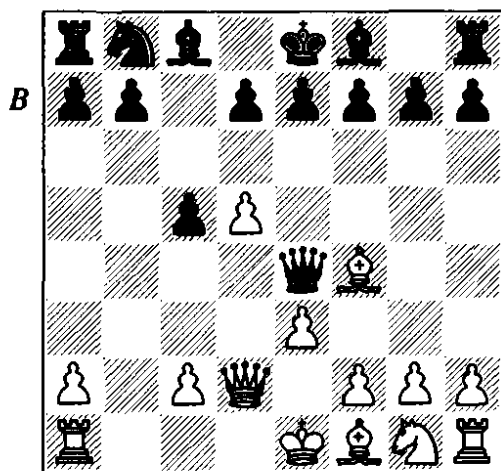
7 ♖d2

7 c3!?, which rules out a later
 ...♖b4, was a new try in Djurhuus-
 Tisdall, Norwegian Ch 1995. After
 7...♖xe4 8 e3 e6 9 dxe6 ♖xe6 10
 ♖f3 ♙e7 11 ♙d3 b6 (Black is not
 tempted by ...d5 as this would allow
 White to open the centre with c4 or
 e4) 12 ♖c2 g6 13 h4 ♙b7 14 h5 ♜g8
 15 hxg6 hxg6 Tisdall states that
 White has no concrete compensa-
 tion for his pawn apart from having
 achieved a complicated position, a
 fair enough comment. After the fur-
 ther moves 16 ♜d1 ♖c6 17 ♖g5
 ♙xg5 18 ♙xg5 ♖e5 19 ♙e4 d5 20
 ♙d3 (20 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 21 ♖d2 is bril-
 liantly refuted by 21...♜d8, when 22
 ♙xd8 fails to 22...♙xg2! and 22 e4
 to 22...♜d7!) 20...♙c6 21 ♙e2 f6 22
 ♙f4 0-0-0 Black's advantage was
 obvious.

7 ... ♖xe4

8 f3?!

More logical is **8 e3 (D)** after which Black has the choice between countering in the centre with **8...e6** or evacuating his queen by **8...♚b4**.



1) **8...e6**, with the following possibilities:

1a) **9 c4 e5** (it's interesting that Black waits for c4 before blocking the centre; White no longer has access to the square c4 and the scope of his light-squared bishop is also reduced) **10 f3 ♚f5 11 ♗d3?? ♚f6 12 ♗g3 e4!** and White lost a whole piece in Hodgson-Chandler, Hastings 1991.

1b) **9 dxe6 ♚xe6 (9...dxe6 10 ♗xb8! ♚xb8 11 ♗b5+ ♚e7 12 0-0-0 ♚d5 13 ♚c3** gives White a very strong attack while **9...fxe6** weakens the kingside but could still be worth investigating) **10 ♖e2! b6** (Black feels that his main priority is to cover the d5-square; **10...♗e7 11 ♖c3 ♗f6 12 ♖b5!** is quite threatening, but Black may be able to bail out with **12...0-0 13 ♖c7 ♚c6 14 ♗d1 b6 15 ♖xa8 ♚xa8** with some compensation for the exchange) **11 ♖c3 ♗b7 12 ♗d1 ♗e7 13 ♖b5 0-0 (13...♖a6 14 ♗c4 d5 15 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 16 ♚xd5**

♚xd5 17 ♗xd5 ♖b4 18 ♖c7+ ♗f8 19 ♗d2 ♗d8 20 ♗e2 ♗xd2+ 21 ♗xd2 f5! 22 a3 ♖c6 23 ♗c3 ♗f7 led to approximate equality in Mortazavi-Howell, British Ch 1992) **14 ♖c7 ♚xa2 15 c4 ♚b3 16 f3 ♗h4+ 17 ♗g3 ♗f6 18 ♗f2 ♖c6 19 ♖xa8 ♗xa8 20 ♗e2 ♖a5 21 ♚xd7 ♖xc4 22 ♗d3 ♚a2 23 ♚c7 ♖b2 24 ♗d7 c4 25 ♗f1**, Klinger-Dimitrov, Velden 1993, and now **25...♚b1+ 26 ♗e1 c3 27 ♗c4 c2 28 ♗xf7 ♚xe1+ 29 ♗xe1 c1♚+** and **30...♚xc4** would have won for Black.

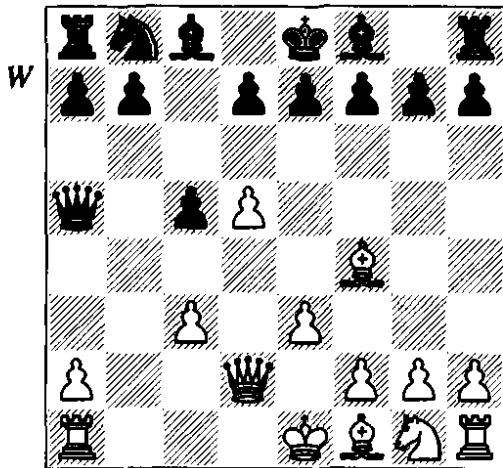
1c) **9 ♖e2!?** **♚xd5 10 ♚xd5 exd5 11 ♖c3** appears to give White enough play for the pawns. Klinger-Akopian, Palma 1989 continued **11...d6 12 ♖xd5 ♗d8 13 0-0-0 ♗e6 14 ♖c3 ♖d7** (Black cannot save his pawn as **14...♗d7** is strongly met by **15 ♖e4 d5 16 c4!** when **16...♗c6 17 ♖c3 dxc4** loses to **18 ♗d8**) **15 ♗e2 f6 16 ♗f3 ♗b8 17 ♖e4 (17 ♗xd6 ♗xd6 18 ♗xd6 ♗e7** is fine for Black) **17...♖e5 18 ♖xd6 ♗xd6 19 ♗xe5 fxe5 20 ♗xd6+ ♗e7 21 ♗hd1 ♗hd8 22 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 23 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 24 ♗xb7 ♗xa2 25 ♗b2 ♗e6 26 ♗a6 1/2-1/2.**

2) **8...♚b4 9 c3 ♚a5 (D)** and now:

2a) **10 ♖f3 d6** with a further branch:

2a1) **11 ♗b1?! g6!** (immediately targeting the weak point of White's position - c3) with a couple of examples:

2a11) **12 e4 ♗g7 13 e5 (13 ♗c1** would be embarrassing and **13 ♗b3** ugly but both are probably better than **13 e5) 13...0-0 14 ♗e2 ♖d7 15**



$\mathbb{B}b5$ (the only way to save the e-pawn) 15... $\mathbb{W}c7$ 16 exd6 exd6 17 $\mathbb{A}h6$ $\mathbb{N}f6$ 18 $\mathbb{A}xg7$ $\mathbb{K}xg7$ 19 $c4$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ and White had nothing to show for his pawn in Adams-Gelfand, Tilburg rpd 1993 (although White did manage to draw). It should be noted that the actual move order of this game was 8 $\mathbb{N}f3$ $d6$ 9 $e3$ $\mathbb{W}b4$ 10 $c3$ $\mathbb{W}a5$.

2a12) 12 $\mathbb{A}b5+$ $\mathbb{N}d7$ (possibly 12... $\mathbb{A}d7$ is better since 13 $\mathbb{A}xd7+$ $\mathbb{N}xd7$ 14 $\mathbb{B}xb7$ $\mathbb{N}b6$ is not an option for White; I actually avoided this line on account of 13 $c4$ as I thought the ending might be difficult to win) 13 $\mathbb{A}xd7+$ $\mathbb{A}xd7$ 14 $\mathbb{B}xb7$ $\mathbb{A}g7$ 15 0-0 (15 $\mathbb{B}b3$ \bar{f}) 15... $\mathbb{A}xc3$ 16 $\mathbb{W}c2$ (on 16 $\mathbb{W}d3$ I had prepared a beautiful variation: 16... $\mathbb{A}c8$ 17 $\mathbb{B}b5$ $\mathbb{A}a6!$ 18 $\mathbb{B}fb1$ $\mathbb{A}b4!$ 19 $\mathbb{B}1xb4$ $cxb4$ 20 $\mathbb{W}d4$ $\mathbb{W}xb5!$ 21 $\mathbb{W}xh8+$ $\mathbb{K}d7$ 22 $\mathbb{W}xa8$ $\mathbb{W}f1\#$) 16... $\mathbb{A}c8$ 17 $\mathbb{B}xe7+$? (totally unsound; better is 17 $\mathbb{B}b3$) 17... $\mathbb{K}xe7$ 18 $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{K}d7$ 19 $\mathbb{A}xd6$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ (Black could also win with 19... $\mathbb{K}xd6$) 20 $\mathbb{A}e5$ $\mathbb{W}b4!$ 0-1 Gilles-Gallagher, Bern 1995.

2a2) 11 $\mathbb{A}d3$ $g6$ 12 $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{A}g7$ 13 $h4!$? $\mathbb{A}g4$ 14 $h5$ $\mathbb{A}xf3$ (14... $\mathbb{A}xh5$ 15 $\mathbb{N}h2$ $f5$ 16 $\mathbb{N}f1!$ followed by $\mathbb{N}g3$ didn't appeal to me) 15 $gxf3$ $\mathbb{N}d7$ 16

$c4!$ (sensible) 16... $\mathbb{W}xd2+$ 17 $\mathbb{K}xd2$ 0-0-0 and whilst White's space advantage gave him some compensation for the pawn I would still assess this position as \bar{f} , Weindl-Gallagher, San Bernardino 1994.

2b) 10 $d6!$? $\mathbb{N}c6$ 11 $\mathbb{N}f3$ $g6$ (the line 11... exd6 12 $\mathbb{A}c4$ $\mathbb{A}e7$ 13 0-0 $b5$ looks good for Black but perhaps White could try to keep Black bottled up with 13 $\mathbb{B}b1$) 12 $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{A}g7$ 13 dxe7 and now:

2b1) Bellon-Dorfman, Logroño 1991 continued 13... $d5?$! 14 $e4!$ $\mathbb{N}xe7$ (14... dxe4 15 $\mathbb{N}g5$ is dangerous) 15 exd5 0-0 16 $d6$ $\mathbb{N}c6$ 17 $\mathbb{A}c4$ (17 $d7$ $\mathbb{A}xd7$ 18 $\mathbb{W}xd7$ $\mathbb{B}fe8+$ allows Black a strong attack) 17... $\mathbb{W}a4$ 18 $\mathbb{A}d5$ $\mathbb{A}e6$ 19 $\mathbb{A}e3$ $\mathbb{A}xd5$ 20 $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}a6!$ 21 $d7$ $\mathbb{N}e7$ 22 $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $\mathbb{N}f5$ and in this highly unclear position the players chickened out and agreed to a draw.

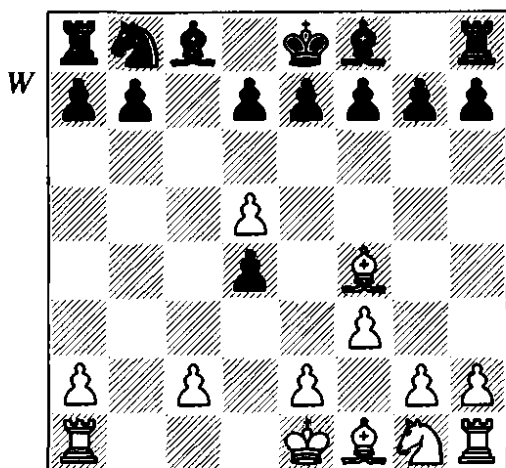
2b2) The simple 13... $\mathbb{N}xe7$ looks good for Black. 14 $\mathbb{A}d6$ doesn't lead anywhere after 14... $\mathbb{N}f5$ 15 $\mathbb{A}c4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ whilst the immediate 14 $\mathbb{A}c4$ can be met by 14... $d5$. On 14 $\mathbb{A}e5$ 0-0 15 $\mathbb{A}xg7$ (15 $\mathbb{A}c4$ $d5$) 15... $\mathbb{K}xg7$ White's development is too poor to exploit the weakened dark squares around the black king.

I think it would be fair to conclude that White is struggling to demonstrate full compensation for the pawn after 8... $\mathbb{W}b4$.

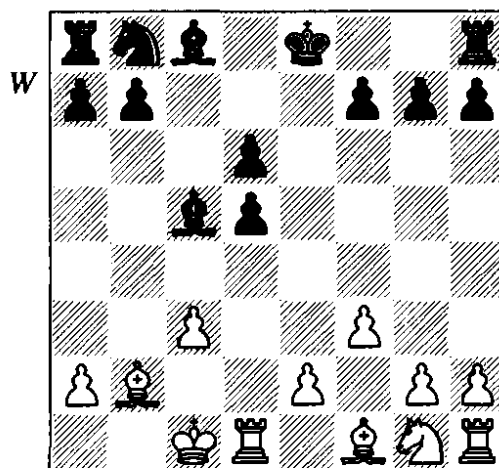
8 ... $\mathbb{W}d4!$?

8... $\mathbb{W}b4$ is an equally valid approach here but I felt that Black's superior pawn structure would give him the better chances in any ending, even if White won his pawn back.

9 ♔xd4 cxd4 (D)



14 0-0-0 d6 (D)



10 ♖e5?!

I was expecting **10 ♜d1**, against which I intended **10...f6!?** (**10...g6** and **10...d6** are also reasonable) with the idea of exploiting the suspect position of the white rook after **11 ♜xd4 e5 12 ♜c4** (**12 dxe6 dxe6** favours Black) **12...♟a6**. For example **13 ♖d2 b5 14 ♜c3 ♟c5 15 e4 b4** and now **16 ♜c4?** loses an exchange after **16...a5 17 ♖e3 d6**, so White has to play **16 ♜e3** to which **16...a5** looks the most natural reply.

10 ... e6
11 ♖xd4?

White should have settled for the slightly worse position that arises after **11 dxe6 dxe6** (**11...♟c6!?**) **12 ♖xd4 ♟c6**. The text is very careless as Black's extra pawn is actually worth quite a lot.

11 ... exd5
12 ♖b2?

12 0-0-0 is better.

12 ... ♖b4+
13 c3

13 ♟f2 0-0 is also very unattractive.

13 ... ♖c5

The opening phase of the game has concluded and it is time for White to take stock. He has lost a pawn, reduced his once proud dark-squared bishop to a tragic state and failed to even contemplate the development of his kingside. As if this were not enough, he has also positioned his king in the firing line of the adversary's two powerful bishops. I still can't believe it took me another 25 moves to win this game.

15 c4 0-0!
16 cxd5 ♖e3+
17 ♟b1

Or **17 ♟c2 ♖f5+** **18 ♟b3 ♟a6** with a murderous attack.

17 ... ♖f5+
18 ♟a1 ♖c2?

Although it was physically painful to part with one of my glorious bishops, I nevertheless cashed in, assuming that my opponent was about to resign. A little more thought would have produced the devastating **18...♜c8!**, with the point **19 ♖d4 ♜c1+!** **20 ♜xc1 ♖xd4+**.

19 ♖c1 ♖xd1
20 ♖xe3 ♟d7

Of course Black is completely winning but, in comparison with 18...♖c8, White is now able to get his kingside out and present the opponent with some technical difficulties. The remaining moves were 21 ♔f4 ♘e5 22 ♘h3 ♖ac8 23 e4 ♔c2 24 ♙e2 f5!? (I was quite willing to return some of my material advantage to regain the initiative and simplify the position) 25 ♘g5! fxe4 26 ♘e6 exf3 27 gxf3 ♖xf4 28 ♘xf4 ♙f5 29 ♖d1? (the last chance was 29 ♘e6, although 29...♙f7 30 f4 ♘g6 should still be winning for Black) 29...♖c2 30 h4 ♙f7 31 ♖e1 a6 32 ♘e6 ♙f6 33 f4 ♘g6 34 h5 ♘e7 35 ♙d1? ♖c1+ 36 ♙b2 ♖b1+ 37 ♙a3 ♘xd5 38 ♘d4 ♘b6 39 ♘b3 ♘c4+ 40 ♙b4 ♘b2 0-1

Game 20

I. Sokolov – Smirin
Wijk aan Zee 1993

- | | | |
|---|-----|------|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | ♙g5 | ♘e4 |
| 3 | ♙f4 | c5 |
| 4 | f3 | ♙a5+ |

At first glance this check may seem difficult to comprehend, but the point is that by forcing White to play c3 (5 ♘d2 ♘xd2 6 ♙xd2 ♙b6 is equal, while after 5...♘f6 there is probably nothing better than 6 c3, transposing to lines considered later) his options are reduced. For example, the position after 4...♘f6 (instead of 4...♙a5+) 5 d5 ♙b6 6 e4 (6 ♘c3 is another extra possibility available to White) 6...♙xb2 7 ♘d2 ♙c3 has been reached on several occasions and the general consensus is

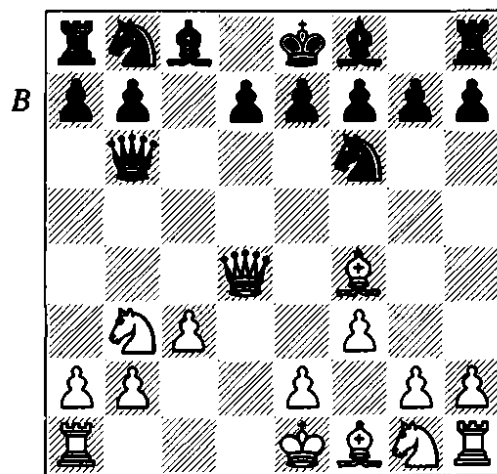
that White has fair play for his pawn; but if Black had flicked in 4...♙a5+, then the move ...♙c3 would have captured a second pawn.

Another variation which Black's queen check avoids is 4...♘f6 5 dxc5, which usually leads to a very sharp Sicilian type position – perhaps not to everyone's taste. A drastic example is Landenbergue-Röder, Bern 1993: 5...♘a6 (5...♙a5+ 6 ♘c3 ♙xc5 7 e4 d6 8 ♙d2 a6 is an alternative way for Black to play) 6 ♘c3 ♘xc5 7 e4 d6 8 ♙d2 ♙d7 9 0-0-0 ♙a5 10 ♙b1 ♖d8?? 11 ♘d5! 1-0.

- | | | |
|---|----|-----|
| 5 | c3 | ♘f6 |
| 6 | d5 | |

6 ♘d2 is a major alternative, employed recently by Salov, Adams and Hodgson amongst others. After 6...cxd4 7 ♘b3 ♙b6 (7...♙f5!? is a recent try but I'm sticking with the older and more trustworthy 7...♙b6) White can choose to conduct the game with or without queens:

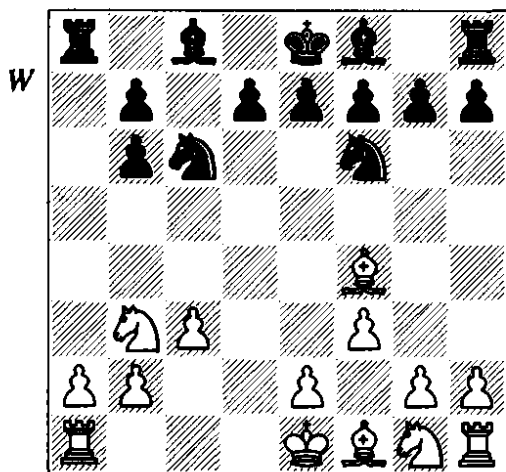
- 1) 8 ♙xd4 (D) and now:



1a) 8...♙xd4 9 cxd4 d5 is probably a little better for White; practice suggests that he can transform his slight lead in development into a

space advantage or something more concrete. For example, 10 e3 e6 11 g4 (11 ♖c1 ♜c6 12 g4 ♙d7 13 ♜c5 ♙xc5 14 ♖xc5 ♚e7 15 ♚d2 ♖hc8 16 ♙d3 was also pleasant for White in Hodgson-Tiviakov, Calcutta 1993) 11...♜c6?! (better is 11...♙b4+ followed by 12...♚e7 with just an edge for White) 12 ♙b5 ♙d7 13 a3! ♚d8 14 ♖c1 ♜e8 15 ♜c5 ♙xc5 16 ♖xc5 ♚e7 17 ♜e2 ♜d6 18 ♙d3 ♖ac8 19 b4 (19 e4? is careless: 19...dxe4 20 fxe4 ♜xd4! 21 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 22 ♜xd4 e5!) 19...b6 20 ♖c3 a5 21 b5 ♜a7 22 a4 ♖xc3 23 ♜xc3 ♖c8 24 ♚d2 ♜c4+ 25 ♚c2 f6 26 e4 dxe4 27 fxe4 ♜d6 28 ♚b3 ♜f7 29 e5! ♖h8 30 ♜e4 h5 31 g5 fxg5 32 ♜xg5 ♜h6 33 ♙c1! ♜c8 34 ♖f1 h4 35 h3 ♖g8 36 ♙h7 ♖h8 37 ♙g6 ♙e8 38 ♙a3+ ♚d7 39 ♙e4 ♜e7 40 ♙xe7 ♚xe7 41 ♖c1 ♙d7 42 ♖c7 ♚d8 43 ♖b7 1-0 Salov-Akopian, Wijk aan Zee 1993. Fortunately for the game of chess there are people with worse technique than Salov.

1b) 8...♜c6! 9 ♚xb6 axb6 (D) leads to a more dynamic position where Black's central superiority should compensate for his weakened queenside. White has now played:



1b1) 10 e4?! d5! (an important point) 11 exd5 (11 ♙d3 e5 12 ♙g5 ♙e6 13 ♜d2 ♜d7 14 exd5 ♙xd5 15 ♙c4 ♙xc4 16 ♜xc4 b5 17 ♜e3 f6 18 ♙h4 ♜c5 was better for Black in Ochoa-Dorfman, New York 1989) 11...♜xd5 12 ♙d2 e5 and Black has a very active game. One example is Rausis-Mukhutdinov, Moscow 1992 which continued 13 a3 ♙e6 (13...♙f5 is also quite good) 14 c4 ♜f6 15 ♙e3 ♜d7 16 ♖c1 ♜c5 17 ♜xc5 ♙xc5 18 ♙xc5 bxc5 19 ♜e2 ♚e7 20 ♜c3 ♖hd8 21 ♙e2 ♜d4 with a clear advantage for Black.

1b2) 10 a3?!. White plans an assault on the b-pawn but first wants to rule out ...b5-b4. Greedy and time consuming is the verdict. 10...d5?! (I think 10...e5! 11 ♙e3 d5 is more accurate as White has hardly anything better than 12 ♙xb6 transposing to the game, while avoiding 11 ♜d4) 11 ♙c7? (Smirin believes White should have played 11 ♜d4, although he still considers Black to have an edge after 11...e5! 12 ♜xc6 exf4 13 ♜d4 ♙d6 14 ♚f2 0-0 15 g3 ♜h5! 16 gxf4 ♜xf4 17 e3 ♜e6 11...e5! 12 ♙xb6 d4! 13 cxd4 ♙e6 14 ♜c5 (14 dxe5 ♜d7 costs White a piece and 14 d5 ♜xd5 15 ♙c5 ♜a5! 16 ♜xa5 ♙xc5 17 ♜xb7 ♙d4! is tremendous for Black) 14...♜d5 15 ♜xe6 fxe6 16 ♙c5 ♜xd4! 17 ♙xd4 (17 ♙xf8 ♖xf8 is also excellent for Black as Smirin demonstrates with the following variation: 18 ♖c1 ♜e3 19 ♚f2 ♜dc2 20 ♜h3 h6! 21 ♚g3 ♖a4! +- 22 ♜f2? ♜f5+ 23 ♚h3 ♖h4#) 17...exd4 18 ♖c1 ♙d6 19 e4? (an understandable bid for freedom

which hastens the end; 19 g3 ♖e7 20 f4 ♜hc8 21 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 22 ♔d2 ♜e3 23 ♜f3 was a better chance although Black is still much better) 19...dxe3 20 ♙c4 ♙e5 21 ♙xd5 exd5 22 ♜c2 ♔d7 23 ♜e2 ♜hc8 24 ♔d1 ♜c6! 25 f4 ♙f6 26 ♜xc6 bxc6 27 ♔c2 ♔d6 28 ♜d1 c5 29 ♜d3 d4 0-1 V.Kovačević-Smirin, Zagreb Z 1993.

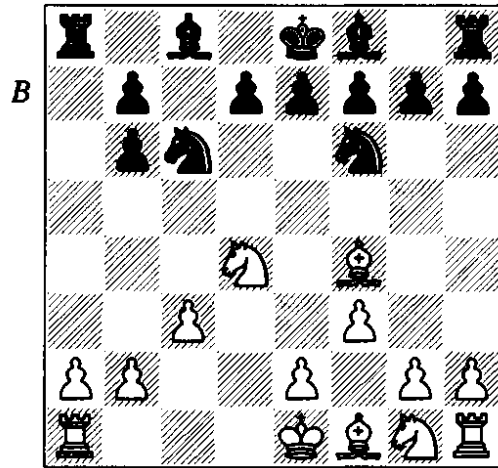
1b3) 10 ♙e3 (greedy and sensible) and now:

1b31) 10...b5 11 ♜d4 (11 ♙d2 e5 12 a3 and now 12...d5?! 13 e3 ♜a7 14 f4!? exf4 15 exf4 ♙d6 allows White some positional advantage, but 12...d6 followed by ...♙e6 should be fine for Black) 11...♜xd4 (11...b4 12 ♜b5! is quite good for White) 12 ♙xd4 e6 13 e4 b4 14 ♙b5! is ± according to Milov.

1b32) 10...d5!? 11 ♙xb6 e5 12 e4! (12 e3 ♜d7 13 ♙c7 ♜c5 would be very bad for White) 12...♙e6 (better than 12...dxe4 13 ♙c4 exf3 14 ♜xf3 when White's pieces are very active) 13 ♙b5 ♜d7 14 ♙f2 dxe4 (14...d4?! 15 ♜c1 dxc3 16 bxc3 ♙c5 17 ♜ge2 ♔e7 18 ♜d3 ♙xf2+ 19 ♔xf2 ♜a3 20 ♜hd1 ♜ha8 21 ♜d2 f6 22 ♜ad1 was a little better for White in Tregubov-Nadyrkhanov, Sochi 1994) 15 ♜d2 exf3 16 ♜gxf3 ♙e7 17 0-0-0 18 ♜fe1 ♜fd8 with chances for both sides. We probably need further tests in this line before any judgement can be made.

1b4) 10 ♜d4 (D) with the further branch:

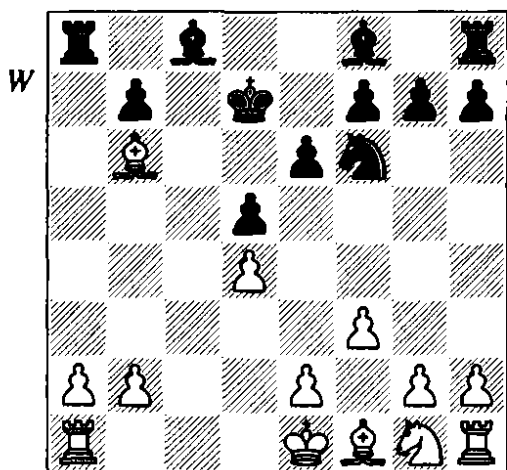
1b41) 10...♜d5? 11 ♜b5! ♜a4 (11...e5 is well met by 12 e4 and 11...♜a5 12 ♜c7+ ♜xc7 13 ♙xc7 e5



14 e3 ♙c5 15 b4 ♜xb4 16 cxb4 ♙xb4+ 17 ♔f2 ♙c3 18 ♙xb6 is winning for White) 12 ♙d2 ♜a5 13 0-0-0! d6 (13...♜xa2 14 ♔b1 ♜a4 15 e4 d6 16 b4) 14 e4 ♜f6 15 ♔b1 ♜c4 16 ♙c1 with a clear advantage for White, Rausis-V.Ivanov, Riga 1993.

1b42) 10...e5!? 11 ♜xc6 exf4 12 ♜d4 d5 (12...♜d5!?) 13 ♔f2 ♙d6 14 e3 fxe3+ 15 ♔xe3 0-0 is assessed as ± by V.Ivanov, but he, no doubt, grew up in the Soviet school of chess where they value things such as pawn structure more highly than us (remember the Short-Kasparov match). I have to confess that I wrote the previous sentence before having actually examined the position, confidently assuming that I would find some way to trouble the white king on e3. I can't, so I'll have to agree with Ivanov after all.

1b43) 10...♜xd4 11 cxd4 d5 12 ♙c7 is assessed as ± by various sources, whilst Nadyrkhanov gives 12...e6 13 ♙xb6 ♜d7! as ♞, which I find quite puzzling as I can't see anything obvious after 14 ♙c7. Instead of 13...♜d7 though, I would like to suggest the paradoxical 13...♔d7!? (D).



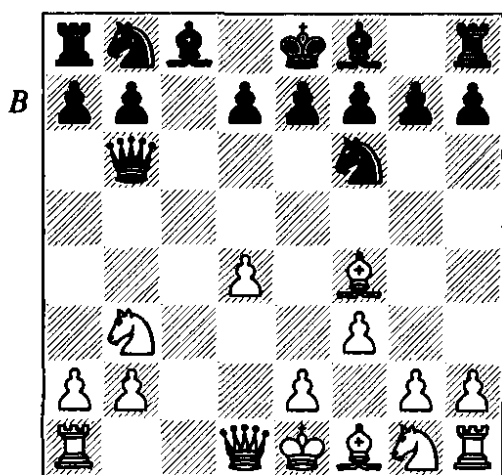
The idea is simply to win back the material with ...c6 and I can't see anything convincing for White, e.g.:

1b431) 14 ♖c1 ♗b4+ 15 ♕f2 ♜xa2 16 ♜c7+ ♕d6 with good play for Black.

1b432) 14 ♗c5 ♗xc5 15 dxc5 ♕c6 16 b4 and now both 16...♞a3 and 16...d4 look very good for Black.

1b433) 14 a4 ♗b4+ 15 ♕f2 ♕c6 16 a5 ♘d7 17 ♜c1+ ♕d6 18 ♗c7+ ♕e7 and Black wins back his pawn (19 ♞a1 b6) with a good game.

2) 8 cxd4 (D) and now:



2a) 8...d5 is by far Black's most common, but perhaps not the best, choice. White now has:

2a1) 9 ♜c1 ♘c6 10 e3 a5! 11 a4 e5!? 12 dxe5 (12 ♗xe5 ♘xe5 13

dxe5 ♜xe3+ is excellent for Black) 12...♘h5 13 ♗b5! ♘xf4 14 exf4 ♗b4+ 15 ♕f1 0-0 16 ♘e2 ♗e6 with an extremely unclear game, Hodgson-Nunn, Pardubice 1993.

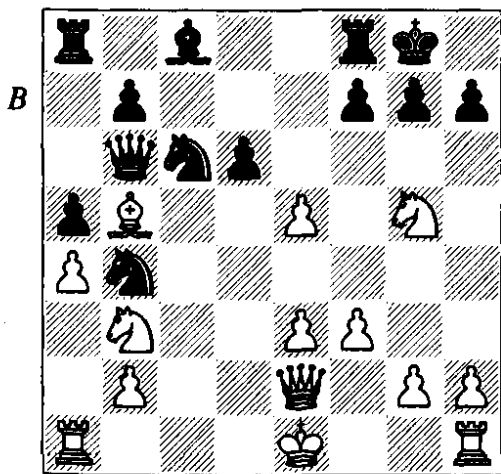
2a2) 9 e3!. After the above game Hodgson came to the conclusion that ♜c1 was a bit of a luxury and that the most important thing for White to do was to rush his king's knight to c3. Black has now tried:

2a21) 9...♗f5 10 ♘e2 ♘c6 11 ♘c3 e6 12 ♜c1 ♜c8 (12...♗e7 13 ♘b5 is good for White and 12...a6 13 ♘a4!? ♜b4+ 14 ♘d2 followed by a3 and b4 should also give White an edge) 13 g4 ♗g6 14 h4 h6 15 ♕f2 ♜d8 16 ♗b5 ♗d6 17 ♘e2 0-0 18 ♘c5 ♗xc5 19 ♜xc5 ♜b6 20 ♗xc6 ♜xc6 21 ♜xc6 ♜xc6 22 g5 hxg5 23 hxg5 ♘h7 24 ♜b3 ± Hodgson-Wojtkiewicz, Rakvere 1993.

2a22) 9...♘c6 10 ♘e2 e5?! (the alternative 10...a5 11 ♘c3 a4 12 ♘d2 ♜a5 13 ♘b5, Hodgson-Anka, Metz 1994 was also a little dubious so Black should probably settle for 10...e6 although after 11 ♘c3 White has a small edge) 11 ♗xe5 ♘xe5 12 dxe5 ♜xe3 13 ♜d4! (13 exf6 ♗b4+ 14 ♘d2 0-0 is extremely dangerous for White) 13...♜xd4 14 ♘exd4 gave White a very good ending in Gallagher-Forster, Metz 1994. Spending a tournament with Hodgson can easily lead one into picking up bad habits. In Metz, not only did he persuade me to play the Benko Gambit, an opening I haven't touched since I was in short trousers, but he also talked me into wheeling out my first Tromp for many years. He is of

course blameless for the fact that I failed to win my game against Forster.

2b) 8...e6! 9 ♖d2 (one of the main points behind the flexible 8...e6 is that 9 e3 is now met by 9...♗d5; therefore White has to waste time with his bishop before he can get his kingside out) 9...♗c6 10 e3 a5!?! (slightly more aggressive than the 10...♙b4 which Hodgson had faced in the previous round although there, too, Black achieved a comfortable game after 11 ♗e2 ♖xd2+ 12 ♗xd2 0-0 13 ♗c3 d6 14 g4 e5 15 d5 ♗e7 16 0-0-0 a5 17 ♖b1 a4 18 ♗c1 a3 19 b3 ♖a5 20 ♖c4 ♖d7 =, Kengis-Hodgson, Bern 1995) 11 a4 ♙b4 12 ♙b5 ♗d5 13 ♗e2 (the e-pawn needs protection but now White has to develop his knight to the edge of the board) 13...0-0 14 ♗h3 d6 (as in Hodgson-Kengis Black aims for ...e5) 15 ♗g5 (15 ♗f2 is safer) 15...e5 16 ♖xb4 ♗dxb4 17 dxe5 (D) and now:

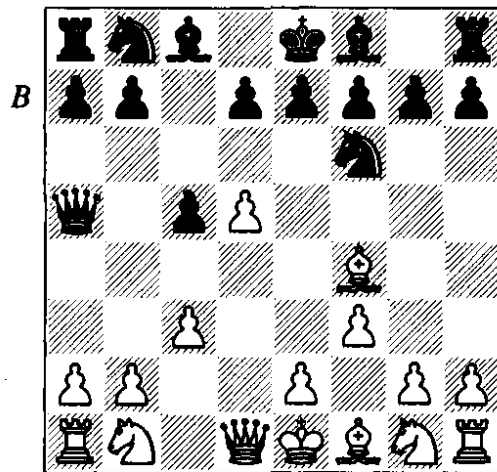


2b1) Hodgson-Suetin, Bern 1995 continued 17...dxe5 18 ♖d1 h6 19 ♗e4 ♖f5 20 0-0 ♖ad8 21 ♖c4 ♗c7 22 ♖c1 ♗e7 23 ♗bc5 b6 24 ♗g3

♖c8 25 ♗ce4 ♖e6 with a level position.

2b2) I believe that Hodgson was more concerned about 17...♗c2+!?. After 18 ♗xc2 ♗xe3+ 19 ♖f1 (19 ♗e2 ♗xb3 20 exd6 ♗d4 21 ♗e4 ♗b4+ followed by ...♖f5 is awful for White) 19...♗xg5 20 exd6 White has an extra pawn but an unhappily placed king.

Let us now return to the position after 6 d5 (D).



6 ... ♗b6

Very often Black simply plays ...d6 and ...g6, or 6...e6 straight away, but I believe that the attack on b2 poses White the most problems.

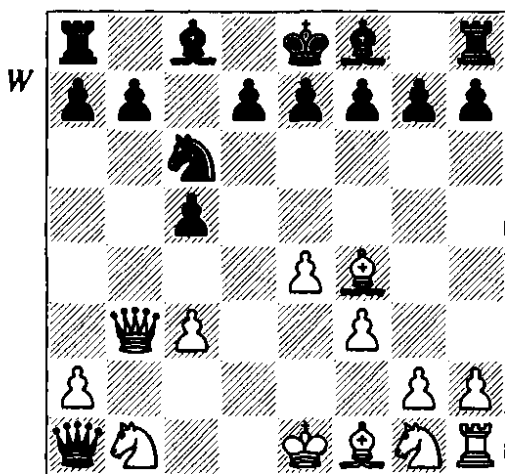
7 b3

White accepts a slight weakening on the a1-h8 diagonal (which can prove relevant) in order to maintain the material balance. The alternatives involve giving up a large amount of material for uncertain compensation and are therefore rarely seen. They are, however, not without danger for Black.

1) 7 e4. Trompowsky players don't usually lose too much sleep over the fate of their b-pawn, but

here this sacrifice, thanks to ...♙a5+, involves throwing in the c-pawn as well. After 7...♙xb2 8 ♘d2 ♙xc3 9 ♙c4 d6 10 ♘e2 ♙a5 White has a serious lead in development but Black is solid and two pawns ahead. I, myself, have played this position with White (a long time ago) in several quickplays but without success. White should probably now play 11 a4 to prevent ...b5 and 11...g6 would be a sensible reply.

2) 7 ♙d2 is the move White would like to play, but it does allow 7...♘xd5 8 ♙xd5 ♙xb2 9 ♙b3 ♙xa1 after which Black has won the exchange and two pawns but got his queen into a tight spot. If we continue with the natural moves 10 e4 ♘c6 (D) White then requires another four moves to win the queen; ♙ on f1 somewhere, ♘ge2, 0-0 and ♘a3. Let's have a look at a few lines and Black's attempts to counter this plan.



2a) 11 ♙c4 e6 12 ♙c2 (Black was threatening ...♘a5) 12...b5! 13 ♙xb5 (13 ♙e2 b4!? 14 ♙d2 bxc3 15 ♙xc3 ♘d4!) 13...e5! 14 ♙c1 (14 ♙xc6 ♙b8) 14...♙b8 15 a4 a6 and Black wins.

2b) 11 ♙b5 d6 and now there are two possibilities:

2b1) 12 ♙c4 e6 13 ♙c2 b5 (the line 13...♙d7 14 ♙c1 ♘e5 15 ♙b2 ♙xb2 16 ♙xb2 ♘xc4 17 ♙xb7 ♘b6 followed by ...♙e7 and ...0-0 also looks good for Black) 14 ♙xb5 ♙d7 15 ♙c1 ♙b8 16 ♘a3 ♙xb5!? (other moves such as 16...♘e5 or 16...♙e7 might be even better, but the text is a good example of the sort of tactics that are available to Black in his attempt to extricate his queen) 17 ♘xb5 ♘b4! with advantage to Black.

2b2) 12 ♘e2 ♙e6 13 ♙xc6+ bxc6 14 ♙b7 ♙c8 15 ♘c1 g6 (Black simply plans ...♙g7, ...0-0 and ...♙b8) 16 ♙g5 f6 17 ♙d2 ♙g7 18 ♘a3 ♙f7 19 ♘c2 ♙b8 20 ♙xb8 ♙xc1+ 21 ♙xc1 ♙xb8 and Black is winning.

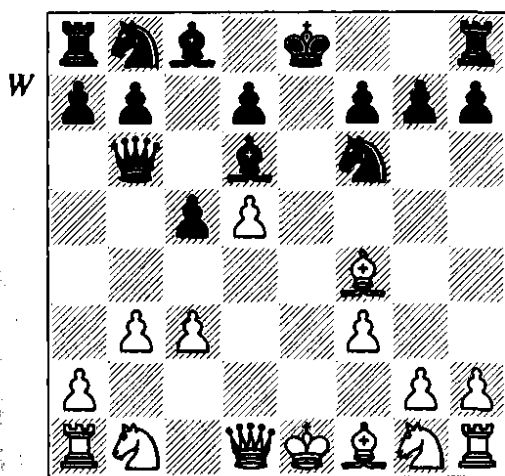
2c) 11 ♙d3 d6 12 ♘e2 (12 ♙c1 ♘e5! 13 ♙b5+ ♙d8 14 ♙e2 c4 15 ♙c2 ♙d7, setting up ideas of ...♘d3 and ...♙a4, is winning for Black) 12...♙e6 13 ♙xb7 ♙c8 14 ♙c4 ♙b8! 15 ♙xc6+ ♙d7 16 ♙xf7+ ♙d8 and Black wins. Basically, once the b-file is open White has very little chance of achieving his aim. These variations are not meant to be conclusive but are intended to demonstrate the sort of resources available to Black and to help you pluck up your courage before sending your queen into the unknown. Perhaps the most important clue as to the status of 7 ♙d2 is that none of the major Trompowskyites is willing to try it, which is especially revealing in the case of Hodgson who has a soft spot for allowing ...♙xa1.

It is also quite reasonable for Black to continue in Benoni fashion. A recent example is Adams-Tkachov, Wijk aan Zee 1995: 7...d6 8 e4 g6 9 $\text{\textcircled{R}}d3$ $\text{\textcircled{R}}g7$ 10 $\text{\textcircled{C}}e2$ 0-0 11 $\text{\textcircled{C}}d2$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}bd7$ 12 $\text{\textcircled{C}}c4$ $\text{\textcircled{W}}c7$ 13 a4 b6 14 0-0 a6 15 $\text{\textcircled{W}}d2$ $\text{\textcircled{K}}e8$ 16 $\text{\textcircled{C}}g3$ $\text{\textcircled{R}}b7$ with about equal chances.

8 e4

8 dxe6?! looks very anti-positional. After 8... $\text{\textcircled{W}}xe6$ 9 c4 d5 10 $\text{\textcircled{C}}c3$ d4 11 $\text{\textcircled{C}}b5$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}a6$ 12 e4 dxe3 13 $\text{\textcircled{K}}c1?$ (13 $\text{\textcircled{W}}e2$) 13... $\text{\textcircled{C}}h5!$ 14 $\text{\textcircled{C}}d6+$ $\text{\textcircled{R}}xd6$ 15 $\text{\textcircled{R}}xd6$ $\text{\textcircled{R}}d7$ 16 g4 $\text{\textcircled{R}}c6!$ White was already completely lost in Aleksandrov-Akopian, Oakham 1992.

8 ... $\text{\textcircled{R}}xd5$
9 exd5 $\text{\textcircled{R}}d6$ (D)



10 $\text{\textcircled{C}}h3$

Smirin comments, in his excellent notes in *New in Chess*, that he was more afraid of 10 $\text{\textcircled{R}}g5$ upon which he intended 10... $\text{\textcircled{R}}e7$. I believe that Black stands quite well here since White's development is rather poor and his unprotected bishop on g5 exposes him to some tactical tricks. For example:

1) 11 c4 0-0 (11... $\text{\textcircled{W}}d6!$? also deserves serious consideration as it is

unlikely that White can get away with 12 $\text{\textcircled{C}}e2$ $\text{\textcircled{W}}e5$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{R}}f4$) when White needs to just play $\text{\textcircled{R}}d3$ and $\text{\textcircled{C}}ge2$ to consolidate his position, but this is difficult to arrange, e.g. 12 $\text{\textcircled{C}}c3$ $\text{\textcircled{K}}e8$ creates awkward pressure on the e-file (13 $\text{\textcircled{R}}d3$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}xd5!$) whilst 12 $\text{\textcircled{R}}d3$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}xd5!$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{R}}xh7+$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}xh7$ 14 $\text{\textcircled{W}}xd5$ $\text{\textcircled{R}}xg5$ (14... $\text{\textcircled{R}}f6?$ 15 $\text{\textcircled{W}}f5+!$) 15 $\text{\textcircled{W}}xg5$ $\text{\textcircled{K}}e8+$ should be very good for Black.

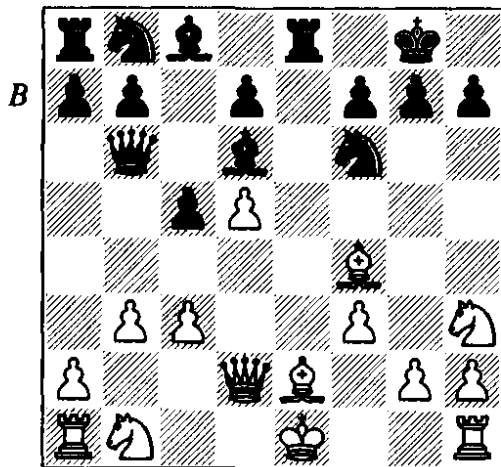
2) After 11 $\text{\textcircled{C}}a3$, Black should probably avoid 11... $\text{\textcircled{W}}a5$ 12 $\text{\textcircled{C}}c4!$? $\text{\textcircled{W}}xc3+$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{R}}d2$ $\text{\textcircled{W}}d4$ 14 d6 $\text{\textcircled{R}}xd6$ 15 $\text{\textcircled{C}}e2$ $\text{\textcircled{W}}d5$ 16 $\text{\textcircled{C}}f4$ $\text{\textcircled{R}}xf4$ 17 $\text{\textcircled{R}}xf4$, which gives White strong pressure in return for his pawns, and instead play 11...d6 12 $\text{\textcircled{C}}c4$ $\text{\textcircled{W}}d8$ or possibly even 11... $\text{\textcircled{W}}d6!$?

10 ... 0-0

10... $\text{\textcircled{R}}xf4$ 11 $\text{\textcircled{C}}xf4$ $\text{\textcircled{W}}d6$ 12 $\text{\textcircled{W}}e2+$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}d8$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{W}}d2$ (\pm Schussler) 13...g5 14 $\text{\textcircled{C}}h3$ is assessed as \pm by Sokolov, but I'm not so sure. After 14...h6 15 $\text{\textcircled{R}}c4$ $\text{\textcircled{K}}e8+$ 16 $\text{\textcircled{C}}f2$ violent reactions such as 16...b5 or 16...g4 17 $\text{\textcircled{C}}f4$ gxf3 18 gxf3 $\text{\textcircled{K}}e4$ are perhaps inappropriate owing to Black's lack of queenside development. However, there are more measured approaches, e.g. 16...a6!? 17 a4 b6 18 $\text{\textcircled{C}}a3$ $\text{\textcircled{C}}c6$ or 16...b6 17 $\text{\textcircled{C}}a3$ a6! 18 $\text{\textcircled{K}}ae1$ $\text{\textcircled{K}}xe1$ 19 $\text{\textcircled{K}}xe1$ b5 when 20 $\text{\textcircled{R}}xb5$ will at most lead to unclear complications, and probably less.

11 $\text{\textcircled{W}}d2$ $\text{\textcircled{K}}e8+$
12 $\text{\textcircled{R}}e2$ (D)

Smirin comments that the white pieces are placed somewhat awkwardly, but that if he manages c3-c4 he will be able to complete his development without hindrance and



place Black under positional pressure. Hence Black's next move.

12 ... c4!

13 dxd6

13 bxc4 dxc5 looks awful for White. On 14 dxc5 Black can still play 14...d6 as 15 dxf6 gxf6 16 Wh6 fails to 16...Wb2!.

13 ... Wxd6

14 bxc4 b5!

White is allowed no respite. The text both breaks up the white centre and starts to tackle the only drawback to Black's position – his lack of queenside development.

15 cxb5 a6

15...dxd5 is also playable but ...a6 ensures that even more lines will be opened.

16 c4 axb5

17 cxb5?

Too optimistic according to Smirin. White should have settled for 17 dxc3 bxc4 18 0-0 with a complex game ahead. Sokolov now gives the variation 18...Ba3 19 de4 dxe4 20 fxe4 fxe4 21 dg5 with an attack for White, but I can't see anything devastating after 21...f4 22 h3 (22 g3 fxc3+) 22...f6. Smirin, on the other hand, suggests 18...dxc6 while

18...Wc5+ followed by ...d6 is another idea.

17 ... We5

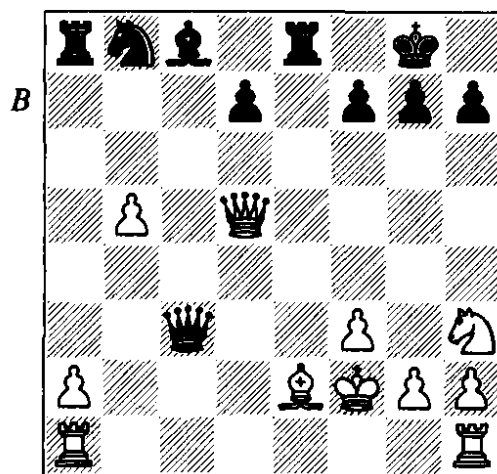
18 dxc3 dxd5!

19 Wxd5

On 19 Bc1, 19...de3 looks good but 19...dxc3 20 Bxc3 Bxa2! is even more convincing (21 Wxa2 Wxc3+ 22 Wd2 Wc5).

19 ... Wxc3+

20 cf2 (D)



20 ... db7!!

It took Smirin 25 minutes to find this star move, after first being depressed by variations along the lines of 20...We3+? 21 cf3 Be6 22 d3 with 23 Bhe1 to follow and 20...Ba4 21 Bhe1.

21 Wc4

The far from obvious point behind Black's last move is that 21 Wxb7 costs White his queen after 21...Wc5+ 22 cf3 Ba7!. 21 Wd3 also fails to 21...Wc5+ 22 cf1 Ba3.

21 ... We3+

22 cf3 h5?

Although this move forces transposition into an ending a piece up it seems to let slip Black's advantage. The alternatives are:

1) 22...♙xe2? 23 ♖he1 ♙xe1+ 24 ♖xe1 ♖xe1 25 ♘g5 ♖e7 26 ♙c7 ♖e8 27 ♙xb7 with a winning position for White.

2) 22...♖e4 23 ♙c1! ♙xe2 24 fxe4 ♙xe4 25 ♘f4 g5 26 a4 (perhaps you believe this to be a misprint, as I did at first) 26...gxf4+ 27 ♙xf4 and White is winning according to Smirin. The point is that after 27...♙xg2+ 28 ♔h4 Black has no choice but to exchange queens (28...♙e4) whereupon White's passed pawns will triumph over Black's pitiful pieces.

3) 22...d5! is the solution according to Smirin, who provides the following variations:

3a) 23 ♙c7 h5! 24 ♙xb7 ♖a4! with a decisive attack.

3b) 23 ♙f4 ♙xf4+ 24 ♘xf4 g5 25 ♘h5 ♖xe2 and Black has a much better version of the game as he has a square on d7 for his knight and he has retained his h-pawn.

3c) 23 ♙d3 ♙xe2 (23...♙e5+ 24 ♔f2 ♘d7 is also good) 24 ♖he1 ♙xe1+ 25 ♖xe1 ♖xe1 and Black's material advantage should be sufficient to win the game.

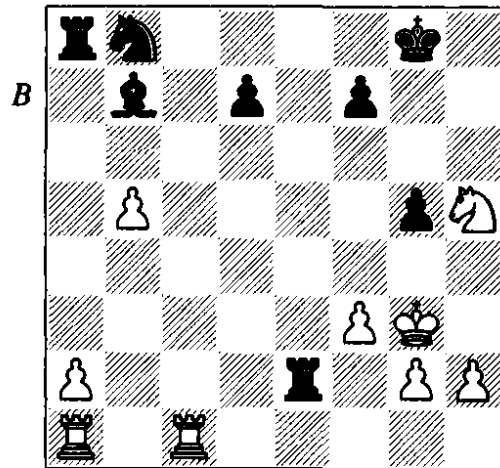
23 ♙f4!

Forced because 23 ♖he1 loses to 23...♖e4 and 23 ♘d3 to 23...d5 24 ♙b3 (24 ♙c3 ♖a4) 24...♙e5+ 25 ♔f2 ♙d4+.

23 ... ♙xf4+

Black too has no choice since 23...♙xe2 24 ♖he1 ♙xe1+ 25 ♖xe1 ♖xe1 26 ♙c7 ♘d5 27 ♘f4 is out of the question.

24 ♘xf4 g5
25 ♘xh5 ♖xe2
26 ♖hc1 (D)



For his piece White has two passed pawns, including the incredibly powerful one on b5 which dominates the whole queenside. After serious thought Smirin came to the conclusion that his only chances lay in a counterattack on the kingside.

26 ... f5!

26...♖axa2? 27 ♖xa2 ♖xa2 28 ♖c7 ♖a7 29 b6 and 26...♔h7 27 ♖c7 ♔g6 28 ♖xb7 ♔xh5 29 a4 are very good for White.

27 ♖c7 f4+

28 ♔h3 g4+!

29 ♔h4!

29 fxf4 ♘xg2+ gives Black a dangerous f-pawn and 29 ♔xg4 ♖xg2+ 30 ♔xf4 ♖a4+ allows him to activate his pieces.

29 ... gxf3

30 ♖xb7

Better than 30 ♘xf4, which would leave White fighting for a draw after 30...♖e4 31 ♖xb7 ♖xf4+ 32 ♔g3 ♖f8 33 gxf3 ♖a3.

30 ... fxf2

31 ♘xf4 ♖f2

32 ♘xg2!

Otherwise ...♖f1 wins.

32 ... ♖xg2

33 ♖c1!

There is no time to push the a-pawn on account of 33...♔f7, threatening to whip up a mating attack by 34...♘c6.

33 ... ♖xh2+

The players now agreed to a **draw** (in a position where Black's d-pawn and queen's knight remain unmoved) in view of 34 ♔g3 ♖hx2 35 ♖c8+ ♔f7 36 ♖bxb8.

10 The Torre Attack

The Torre Attack is one of the most solid systems in this book and a popular choice for those who wish to avoid anything resembling a theoretical battle (for a variety of reasons, but a lack of time for the amateur and a lack of the work ethic for the grandmaster are the most common). After the moves 1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 ♗g5 ♗g7 White usually plays 4 ♘bd2 intending to play e4. Then after 4...0-0, 5 e4 is not very highly thought of because of 5...d5! (see Game 21) so it is better for White to wait with 5 c3. Then Black can choose between the solid 5...d5 and the more dynamic 5...d6, which after 6 e4 actually transposes to the Pirc Defence. Black then has the choice of playing for ...e5 (6...♖e8, 6...♘bd7) or playing 6...c5, which is the course I am recommending and which recently received the PCA World Champion's seal of approval. The details are to be found in Game 22.

Game 21
Bogdanovich – Cvitan
Liechtenstein 1994

- | | | |
|---|------|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | ♘f3 | g6 |
| 3 | ♗g5 | ♗g7 |
| 4 | ♘bd2 | |

Sometimes White plays 4 c3 (or even 3 c3) to dissuade Black from

playing a very quick ...c5, but as this is not our intention it will merely lead to a transposition of moves.

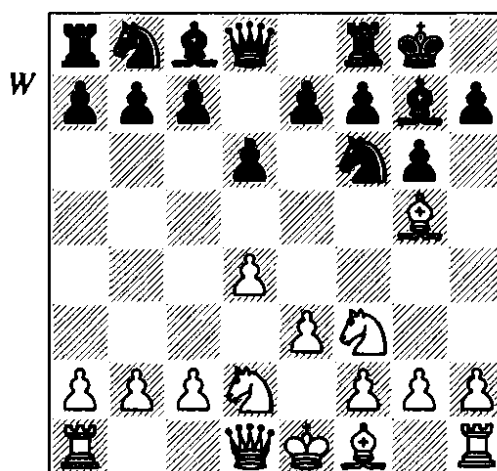
4 ... 0-0

It's too early for Black to declare his hand in the centre as, depending on the white set-up, he can strike with either his d-, c-, or e-pawn.

5 e4

5 c3, actually White's most popular choice, is the subject of the next game.

5 e3 is extremely passive but has its supporters (usually pretty rock-solid characters). After 5...d6 (D) we consider various moves by the king's bishop, but not 6 c3 which will just transpose to one of the other lines. In each case Black plays for ...e5, supported by ...♘bd7 and ...♖e8, which seems to be the best reaction when White has played e3. This line can be annoying to meet in a must-win situation, but then that's life.



1) **6 ♖d3 ♗bd7 7 0-0 e5 8 c3 h6 9 ♖h4 ♜e8!** (threatening ...e4) and now:

1a) **10 ♗e1** (10 ♜c2 could also be met by 10...d5) 10...d5!? 11 ♗b3 a5 12 a4 ♗b6!? 13 ♗c5 ♗fd7 14 ♜b3 ♗xc5 15 dxc5 ♗c4 16 ♖xc4 dxc4 17 ♜xc4 ♖e6 18 ♜e2 ♜c6 19 e4 ♜xc5 with an edge for Black, Moiseev-Bronstein, Moscow 1968.

1b) **10 e4** (a bit embarrassing as White is simply a tempo down on a respectable line where Black plays ...d6 and ...e5 against e4) 10...♗h5 11 ♜e1 f5!? (Black puts his extra tempo to violent use; 11...♗f4 12 ♖f1 ♗b6 is a solid alternative) 12 exf5 gxf5 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 ♗d4 ♗b6 15 ♗b5 ♗f4 16 ♖f1 ♜f7 with a double-edged position in which I prefer Black, de Guzman-Gutierrez, Manila 1991.

2) **6 ♖e2 ♜e8 7 0-0 ♗bd7** (7...e5 8 c3 ♗c6) 8 c3 (8 c4 is more aggressive but doesn't really fit with ♗bd2) 8...e5 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 e4 h6 11 ♖h4 ♗c5 12 ♜c2 ♖d7 13 ♜fe1 a5 14 ♖g3 ♗h5 15 ♗c4 ♗xg3 16 hxg3 b5 17 ♗e3 c6 ♞, Kaber-Lutz, Bundesliga 1990.

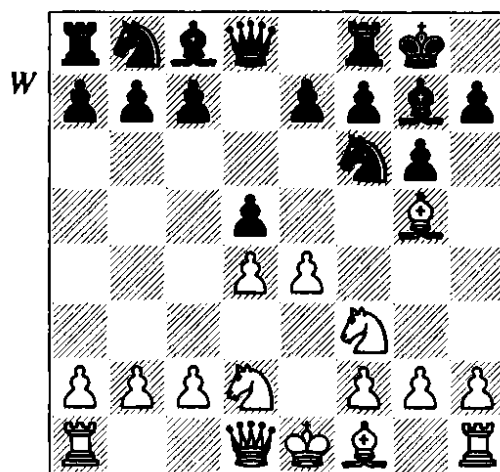
3) **6 ♖c4 ♗bd7 7 0-0 e5** (7...♜e8 would avoid '3a') with a couple of examples:

3a) **8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♗e4 ♜e8 10 ♗xf6+ ♖xf6 11 e4 ♜e7 12 ♖xf6 ♗xf6** was soon agreed drawn in Dreev-Khalifman, Vilnius 1988.

3b) **8 c3 ♜e8 9 b4 a5 10 ♖b5 c6 11 ♖e2 ♗d5 12 ♖c4 ♗7b6** (the alternative 12...♗xc3 13 ♜b3 axb4 14 ♜xb4 is not so clear) 13 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 14 ♜b3 h6 15 ♖h4 ♖e6 16 c4 ♗xb4

17 a3 ♗a6 18 ♜xb7 exd4 19 exd4 ♜c8 20 ♜e7 g5 21 ♖g3 g4 22 ♗h4 ♜d8 23 ♜xd6 ♜xd6 24 ♖xd6 ♜fd8 25 ♖g3 ♜xd4 with an excellent ending for Black, Kraut-Mohr, Bundesliga 1990.

5 ... d5! (D)



This strong central thrust seems to equalise effortlessly (the sort of words which can return to haunt one) and has cast a cloud over the natural 5 e4.

6 ♖d3

The alternatives have not brought White much joy either:

1) **6 ♖xf6** (this relieves the central pressure but at quite a high price; it has, though, twice been the choice of Salov) 6...♖xf6 (6...exf6 is also interesting: 7 ♖e2 dxe4 8 ♗xe4 ♗d7 9 0-0 f5 10 ♗ed2 c5 11 c3 cxd4 12 ♗xd4 ♗c5 was about equal in Guseinov-Petrushin, Tallinn 1983) 7 exd5 (after 7 e5 ♖g7 Black is ready to strike back with both ...f6 and ...c5, whilst 7 c3 ♖g7 8 exd5 ♜xd5 9 ♖c4 ♜f5 {9...♜d8} 10 0-0 c5 11 ♜e1 cxd4 12 ♗xd4 ♜c5 13 ♜e2 e6 was level in Salov-Ye Jiangchuan, Tilburg rpd 1994) 7...♜xd5 8 ♖c4 ♜d8

9 c3 ♖c6 (...e5 is coming) 10 ♗e4 ♙g7 11 0-0 ♙g4 (11...e5) 12 h3 ♙xf3 13 ♗xf3 e5 14 ♗c5! exd4 15 ♗xb7 ♗e5! 16 ♗e4 ♗f6 17 ♙b3 dxc3 18 bxc3 ♗ab8 19 ♗c5 with equality, Salov-Hebden, Moscow 1986.

2) 6 e5 ♗e4 with several possible moves:

2a) 7 ♙d3 ♙f5 (7 ♙d3 was recommended by Hodgson but he just gave 7...♗xg5 8 ♗xg5 c5 9 h4!, although even here 9...c4 followed by ...f6 looks OK for Black) 8 ♙f4 c5 9 dxc5 ♗c6 10 ♗b3 (I assume that in reply to 10 0-0 Black would have simply played 10...♗xc5 as after 11 ♙xf5 gxf5 he has a strong central grip in return for his slightly exposed king position) 10...f6!? (Black prefers to face the future with a big centre as opposed to spending some time recuperating the pawn; I'm sure, though, that a case could also be made out for 10...♗c7) 11 exf6 ♙xf6 12 c3 e5 13 ♙h6 ♗f7 14 0-0 ♗e7 15 ♗c2 ♗d8 16 ♗ae1 ♙g7 17 ♙xg7 ♗xg7 18 ♗fd2 ♗xc5 19 ♙xf5 gxf5 20 f4 e4 21 ♗e3 ♗e6 with advantage to Black, Vaisman-Magerramov, Nîmes 1991.

2b) 7 ♙e3 c5 and now:

2b1) 8 c3 cxd4 9 cxd4 ♗c6 10 ♙e2 ♗b6 11 ♗b3 ♗xd2 12 ♗xd2 ♙e6 (not 12...♗xd4? 13 ♗xb6 ♗c2+ 14 ♗d1 ♗xe3+ 15 ♗xe3! – it may seem trivial to include a note like this but it's the sort of thing that can be easily overlooked in practice) 13 ♗xb6 axb6 14 0-0 f6 15 exf6 ♙xf6 16 ♗f3 ♙g4 with a quite satisfactory position for Black, Van Beers-Rogers, Ostend 1992.

2b2) 8 dxc5 ♗c6 (8...♗d7!?) 9 ♗xe4 dxe4 10 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 11 ♗d2 ♗xe5 12 h3 ♙e6!? (12...f5) 13 a3 (13 ♗xe4 ♗c4 14 ♙xc4 ♙xc4 15 c3 and now 15...♙d5!? or 15...♙d3 16 ♗d2 e5 17 0-0-0 f5 give Black good play for the pawn although it is still slightly surprising that he preferred this to 12...f5) 13...f5 14 0-0-0 h6 15 ♙e2 g5 16 g3 ♗g6 17 ♙h5 ♙f7 18 ♗c4 ♗e5 19 ♙xf7+ ♗xf7 20 ♗a5 ♗c6! and Black was better in C.Horvath-Khalifman, Leningrad 1989 as 21 ♗xb7 is met by 21...♙xb2+.

2c) 7 ♙f4 c5 8 c3 ♗c6 9 dxc5 ♗xc5 10 ♗b3 ♗a4 11 ♗d2 ♙g4 with a strong initiative for Black, Sørensen-Hebden, London Lloyds Bank 1991.

3) 6 exd5 ♗xd5 with a couple of examples:

3a) 7 c3 c5 8 dxc5 ♗c7 9 ♙c4 ♗xc5 10 b4? (an incredible move) 10...♗c6 11 0-0 ♗xc3 12 ♗e1 ♙e6!? 13 ♙xe6 ♗xe6 14 ♗xe6 fxe6 with a clear advantage to Black, Manor-Smirin, Tel Aviv 1991.

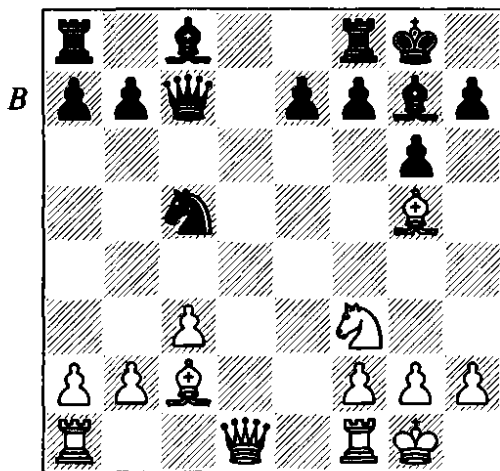
3b) 7 ♗b3 h6 (7...a5!?) 8 ♙d2 ♗d7 9 ♙e2 e5 10 dxe5 ♗xe5 11 0-0 (11 ♗xe5 ♙xe5 12 ♙xh6 ♗e8 13 c4 ♗h4 is dangerous for White) 11...c6 12 c3 ♗c7 13 ♗e1 ♗f4 14 ♗xe5 ♙xe5 15 ♙f1 ½-½ Bareev-Khalifman, Wijk aan Zee 1995.

6	...	dxe4
7	♗xe4	♗xe4
8	♙xe4	c5
9	dxc5	

9 c3 led to a quick defeat for White in Dunne-Wolff, Philadelphia 1991: 9...cxd4 10 ♗xd4 ♗a5! 11 ♗d2?! (11 ♙d2 e5 12 ♗b3 ♗c7

holds no hardship for Black but is better than the text which leads to big problems on the d-file) 11...♖d8! 12 0-0-0? (suicide; 12 0-0 is met by 12...♙xd4 13 b4 ♙xc3!, so White should probably try the ugly 12 b4 although 12...♗b6! looks like a good reply) 12...♙xd4 13 cxd4 ♗xa2 14 d5 ♙g4 (threatening ...♖c8+) 15 ♗b4 ♘a6 16 ♗xe7 ♖ac8+ 17 ♔d2 ♗xb2+ 18 ♙e3 ♖e8 19 ♗f6 ♗e2+ 0-1.

9 ... ♗c7
10 c3 ♘a6!
11 0-0 ♘xc5
12 ♙c2 (D)



“White is better due to his queenside pawn majority” is a familiar phrase from my chess youth and also a great fallacy. The benefits of a queenside pawn majority can normally only be appreciated deep into the endgame and before he gets there White (in this case) will have to negotiate a tricky middlegame where Black possesses an extra central pawn. I’m not going to go as far as to suggest that Black is better in the diagram position, but I think you would be hard-pressed to find a

grandmaster who would take the white pieces, given the choice.

12 ... ♗b6

The bishop clearly belongs on the long diagonal and it is worth taking a little bit of time to develop it effectively.

13 ♖e1 e5!

More to the point than 13...♖e8, whereafter 14 ♗e2 ♙b7 15 ♖ad1 a6 16 ♗e3 ♖ac8 17 ♖e2 b5 18 ♖ed2 ♙a8 was roughly level in Cifuentes-Wolff, Wijk aan Zee 1992.

14 ♗c1?!

White intends to exchange dark-squared bishops but in doing so he seriously compromises his position. 14 ♗e2 looks better.

14 ... ♙b7

15 ♘h4?

When I first played over this game I was astounded by this move. White was obviously not very impressed with 15 ♗e3 f6 16 ♙h4, but this was the course he had to follow.

15 ... ♖fe8

16 ♙h6 ♙f6

17 ♙g5 ♙g7

18 ♙h6 ♗e7

19 ♙xg7 ♙xg7

20 g3

A sad necessity.

20 ... ♗f6

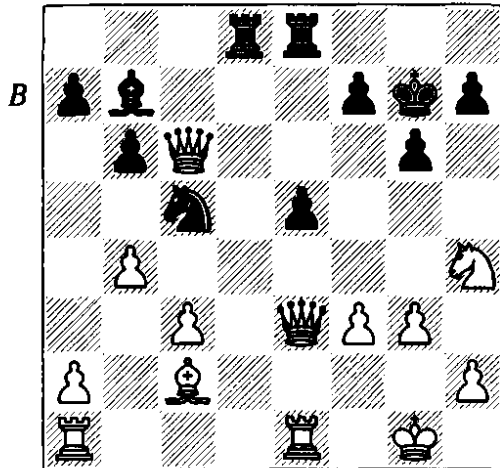
21 ♗e3 ♖ad8

22 b4?!

By fatally weakening his queenside White invites the coming combination. 22 ♖ad1 was natural when Black would have to find 22...e4! to maintain a serious advantage. Then after 23 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 24 ♘g2 ♘d3, 25 ♖b1 loses to 25...♘xf2!, 25 ♖d1

to 25...♖xb2 26 ♜xd8 ♚xd8 27 ♙xe4 ♚d1+ 28 ♗e1 ♗c4 and 25 ♙xd3 exd3 re-opens the long diagonal with predictable consequences.

22 ... ♚c6
23 f3 (D)



23 ... e4!!
24 fxe4

The main line runs 24 bxc5 exf3 25 ♚f2 (25 ♚xf3 ♚xc5+ 26 ♚f2 ♚xf2+ 27 ♗xf2 ♜d2+) 25...♜e2! 26 ♜xe2 fxe2 27 ♗g2 ♜d2 and Black wins.

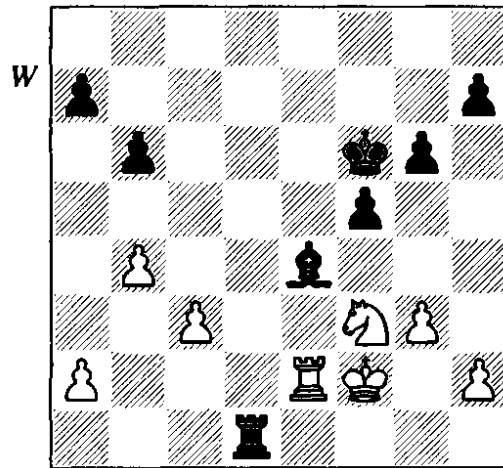
24 ... ♗xe4
25 ♙xe4 ♜xe4
26 ♚xe4 ♚xe4
27 ♜xe4 ♙xe4
28 ♜e1 f5

White has made it to the ending, but one in which he will require a miracle to survive. His queenside is ripe for plucking whilst his knight is a pitiful creature in comparison with Black's majestic bishop.

29 ♗f2 ♜d2+
30 ♜e2 ♜d1
31 ♗f3

Of course 31 ♜e1 loses to 31...♜xe1 32 ♗xe1 g5.

31 ... ♗f6! (D)



There is no rush for Black to convert his positional advantage into a material one. As long as White is denied counterplay the pawns will soon start dropping off. The text, apart from centralising the king, prevents ♗g5.

32 ♗d4

32 ♗d2 ♙d3 and 32 ♜e1 ♙xf3 both lose at once.

32 ... ♜c1!

33 ♗b5?

Obviously a blunder but after 33 ♜e3 ♜h1 34 ♗f3 ♜a1 35 ♜e2 ♜c1 36 ♜e3 ♜c2+ Black wins a pawn without relinquishing any of his positional trumps.

33 ... ♙d3
34 ♗xa7 ♙xe2
35 ♗xe2 ♜xc3
36 b5 ♜c2+
37 ♗f3 0-1

Game 22

Yusupov – Kasparov
Riga 1995

1 d4 ♗f6
2 ♗f3 g6
3 ♙g5 ♙g7
4 c3 0-0

5 ♖bd2 d6

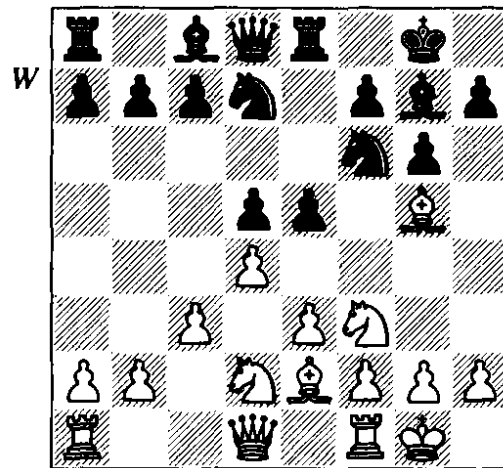
5...d5 is an important alternative even if such a move is against the nature of many King's Indian players. Although I'm not really recommending it, I feel that a summary of the current theoretical situation is worthwhile. 6 e3 gives Black three possibilities, of which line 3 is by far the most important (at the moment):

1) 6...b6 7 a4! (the most annoying move for Black to face) 7...c5 8 ♖d3 ♖a6 9 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 10 0-0 ♜c7 11 ♜e2 ♜b7 12 h3 ♞fe8 13 ♜e5 ± Malaniuk-Gufeld, Calcutta 1993.

2) 6...c6!? 7 ♖e2 ♖g4 8 0-0 ♜bd7 9 b4 (9 h3!? ♖xf3 10 ♜xf3 ♜e4 11 ♖f4) 9...♖xf3!? (9...a5 10 b5 a4 11 ♞c1 ♞c8 12 c4 ♜a5 13 h3 ♖xf3 14 ♖xf3 e6 15 bxc6 bxc6 16 ♜c2 ± Kamsky-Anand, Las Palmas 1995) 10 ♜xf3 (10 ♖xf3 e5 11 e4 h6 12 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 13 dxe5 ♜xe4 = Beliakov) 10...♜e4 11 ♜b3? (11 ♞c1 =), Beliakov-Gudzovaty, Yalta 1995, and now Black could have picked up an exchange by 11...h6! 12 ♖f4 g5 13 ♖g3 g4 14 ♜h4 ♜d2.

3) 6...♜bd7 (Black plans ...♞e8 and ...e5) 7 ♖e2 (7 ♖d3 ♞e8 8 c4 {8 0-0 e5 =}) 8...e5 9 cxd5 exd4 10 ♜xd4 ♜b6 11 ♜e4 ♜bxd5 was at least = for Black in Barbero-Gallagher, San Bernardino 1991 while 7 b4 c6 8 ♖e2 ♞e8 9 0-0 e5 is considered later) 7...♞e8 8 0-0 e5 (*D*) and now:

3a) 9 dxe5 (timid) 9...♜xe5 10 ♜xe5 ♞xe5 11 ♜f3 ♞e8 12 a4 h6 13 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 14 ♜b3 c6 15 a5 a6 16 ♞fd1 ♜c7 17 c4 dxc4 18 ♖xc4 ♖e6 = Hug-Adams, Biel IZ 1993.



3b) 9 b4 (with his rock-solid centre it's logical for White to expand on the wing) 9...c6 with several tries for White:

3b1) 10 ♖h4 a5 11 a3 e4 12 ♜e1 h6 13 ♜c2 ♜f8 14 c4 g5 15 ♖g3 ♜g6 is a fairly typical position for this line. White hopes that his queenside advance will create weaknesses to attack or some entry squares into the heart of the opponent's position, while Black is dreaming of glory on the kingside. Salov-Gelfand, Reggio Emilia 1993 continued 16 bxa5 ♞xa5 17 ♜b4 ♞a8 18 cxd5 ♜xd5 19 ♜xd5 cxd5 20 ♜c2 ♞e6 21 ♞fc1 ♞c6 22 ♜b3 f5 23 ♖h5 ♜f8 24 h3 ♜e6 25 ♜d1 f4 26 ♖h2 ♜d6 27 a4 ♞xc1 and a draw was agreed in a position where I prefer Black.

3b2) 10 c4 exd4 11 ♜xd4 h6 12 ♖h4 dxc4 13 ♜xc4 ♜b6 14 ♜b3 g5 15 ♖g3 ♜e4 16 ♞fd1 ♜e7 17 ♞ac1 ♞d8 was at least equal for Black in Kallai-Gyorkos, Hungarian Club Ch 1993.

3b3) 10 ♞c1 a5 (10...e4; 10...♜e7) 11 b5 c5 12 dxe5 ♜xe5 13 c4! ♜xc4 14 ♜xc4 dxc4 15 ♜xd8 ♞xd8 16 ♖xc4 h6 (Malaniuk-Stohl, Brno 1993) and now Stohl gives 17 ♖xf6!

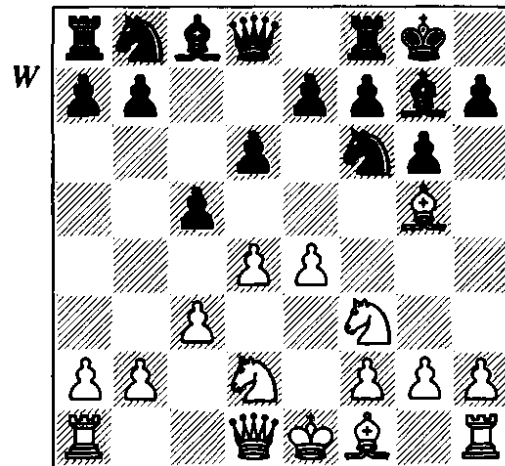
♙xf6 18 ♖fd1 ♖xd1+ 19 ♖xd1 ♙g4
20 ♖d6 ♚g7 21 ♜d2 ♖d8 22 ♖xd8
♙xd8 23 f3 ♙d7 24 a4, with ♙d5
and ♜c4 to follow as ±.

3c) 9 ♜b3!?. This modest-looking move of Miles's has posed Black the most problems recently. The idea is to vacate d2 for the king's knight from where it will support c4 and prevent an annoying ...♜e4 (after ...h6 and ...g5 for example). Miles-Nunn, London Lloyds Bank 1993 now continued 9...c6 (9...a5 10 a4 c6 11 c4 exd4 12 ♜bxd4 ♜b6 13 ♜d2 h6 14 ♙h4 g5 15 ♙g3 ♚e7 16 ♚c2 dxc4 17 ♙xc4 ♜e4 18 ♜xe4 ♚xe4 19 ♙d3 was quite good for White in Stangl – Har-Zvi, Altensteig 1994) 10 ♖c1 a5 (10...♚b6?! 11 ♜fd2 ♜f8 12 dxe5 ♖xe5 13 ♙f4 ♖e8 14 c4 ± Miles-Gdanski, Iraklion 1993) 11 c4 a4 (in his notes Miles points out a couple of other ideas for Black – 11...exd4 or 11...dxc4 12 ♙xc4 a4 13 ♜bd2 exd4 14 ♜xd4 ♜b6 – but these remain untested) 12 ♜bd2 exd4 13 ♜xd4 ♚a5 14 cxd5 ♚xd5 15 ♙f4 ♜e5 16 ♚c2 (16 h3 would have been smoother) 16...♙g4 17 ♙c4! ♚a5 18 h3 ♙d7 19 ♙e2 ± ♖ac8? (the start of a dubious plan) 20 ♖fd1 b5 21 ♜2f3! ♜xf3+ 22 ♙xf3 ♜d5 23 ♙d6 ♚b6 24 ♚c5 ♚xc5 25 ♙xc5 ♜f6 26 ♙a3 and the black c-pawn dropped off (1-0, 45)

6 e4 c5 (D)

7 dxc5

The standard reaction. 7 d5 h6 8 ♙h4 e6 doesn't look very promising for White whilst other moves are slightly frowned upon because White's d-pawn may become weak,



for example: 7 ♙d3 cxd4 8 cxd4 h6
9 ♙h4 ♜h5 10 0-0 g5 11 ♙g3 (11
♜xg5 hxg5 12 ♚xh5 gxh4 13 e5 ♖e8
14 ♜f3 looks dangerous for Black,
but 11...♜f4! is a much safer way to
win a piece) 11...g4!?! (11...♜c6 12
d5 ♜b4 13 ♙c4 a5 is a safer, but
probably not better, way to play) 12
♜h4 ♜xg3 13 hxg3 ♙xd4 14 ♜f5
♙xf5 15 exf5 h5 16 f6 (otherwise
Black will blockade with ...♜d7-f6)
and now:

1) Timman-Topalov, Belgrade
1995 continued 16...♜d7 17 fxe7
♚xe7 18 ♙f5 ♜c5 19 ♜c4 ♚f6 20
♚d2 d5 21 ♜e3 ♜e4 22 ♙xe4 dxe4
23 ♜d5 ♚e5 24 ♖ad1 ♚xd5 25
♚xd4 ♚xd4 26 ♖xd4 f5 and White
was able to hold the ending.

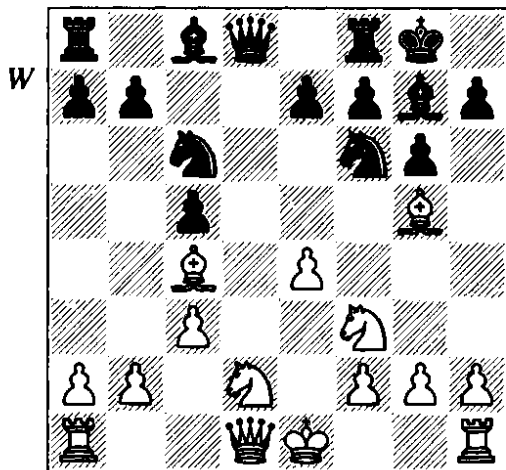
2) I hesitate to suggest 16...♙xf6
to you as Timman must have planned
something and Topalov must have
had his reasons for rejecting it, but
let's just say that I can't see anything
very convincing for White, e.g. 17
♚a4 (17 ♜e4 ♙g7 looks good for
Black) 17...d5 18 ♚f4 and now Black
should avoid 18...e5 on account of
19 ♚h6 e4 20 ♜xe4! when he gets
mated and play instead 18...♚g7 as
19 ♚f5 is simply met by 19...♖h8.

7 ... **dx c5**

In such a position Black's first priority will be to establish some control over e5 so that White can't advance his e-pawn under favourable circumstances. The radical way to do this is to play ...e5 himself but this leaves a gaping hole on d5; therefore it is preferable for Black to achieve his aim through piece play. In the longer term Black will be looking to expand on the queenside or to gain the bishop pair, whilst occasionally he may just have to react to whatever action White has taken.

8 **♙e2**

Sometimes White plays ♗c2 first but this just transposes. A slightly different idea is 8 **♙c4**. After 8...♘c6 (D) we have:



1) 9 0-0 ♘a5!? 10 **♙e2** ♙e6 11 **♞e1** (11 **♙e3** ♗c7 12 ♘g5?! ♙d7 13 f4 h6 14 ♘gf3 ♘g4) 11...a6 12 ♗c2 (12 a4 is not on due to the weakness on b3) 12...b5 13 ♘b3 ♘xb3 14 axb3 ♗c7 (the immediate 14...♗b6 may be better) 15 **♙h4** h6 16 ♘d2 ♗b6 17 ♘f1 ♞fd8 18 ♘e3 ♞a7 19 ♞ad1 ♞ad7 with a roughly level game, Malaniuk-Marín, Calimanesti 1992.

2) 9 **♗e2** ♗c7 10 0-0 h6 11 **♙h4** ♘h5 12 **♗e3** ♘a5 13 **♙e2** (13 **♙d3** would transpose into Zilberman-Yurtaev, Frunze 1989, where after 13...♞d8 14 **♙c2** g5 15 **♙g3** ♘xg3 16 fxg3!? **♙e6** 17 e5 ♗c6 18 ♘e4 ♘c4! 19 ♗xc5 ♗xc5+ 20 ♘xc5 **♙d5** Black had achieved good play in return for what is almost certainly a temporary pawn sacrifice) 13...♘f4 14 ♘b3 ♘xe2+ 15 ♗xe2 ♘xb3 16 axb3 **♙e6** = Espig-Reeh, Potsdam 1988.

8 ... **♘c6**

9 0-0

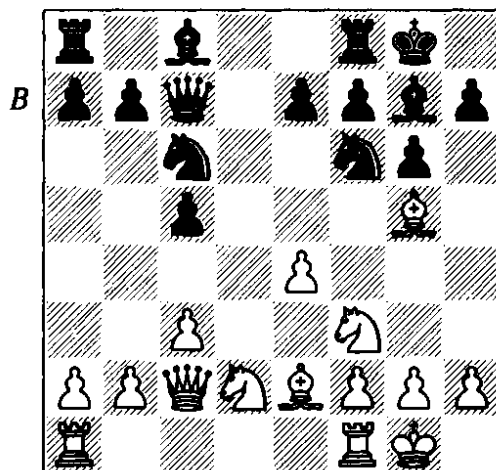
In Sharif-A.Kuzmin, Doha 1993, White tried 9 **h3** ♗c7 10 ♘h2 hoping to develop a quick kingside attack. However, after 10...♘d8! 11 **♙e3** ♘e6 12 g3 b6 13 ♗c2 **♙b7** 14 ♘g4 ♞ac8!? 15 ♘h6+ ♗h8 16 **♙c4** (the point of Black's mysterious 14th move is revealed after 16 0-0-0 ♘d4!) 16...♗c6 17 f3 b5 he must have wished that he had treated the opening more conventionally.

9 ... **♗c7**

More accurate than 9...h6 which gives White the extra option of **♙f4**.

10 **♗c2** (D)

10 **♞e1** ♞d8 11 ♗c2 transposes.



10 ... ♖d8!?

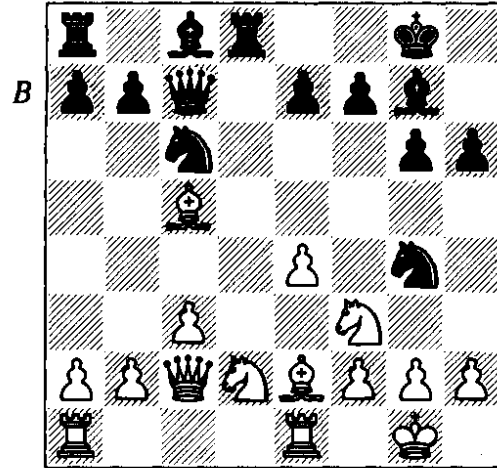
A clever new move retaining the option of developing the queen's bishop at e6 or on the long diagonal, according to Stohl. Whilst this is true, I suspect that Kasparov had something much more devious in mind (see the note to White's 12th move). The main alternative is 10...h6, after which White has the usual choice:

1) 11 ♖h4 ♗h5 12 ♜fe1 ♕e6 13 ♖f1 ♜ad8 14 ♗c4 ♜d7 15 ♜ed1 ♜fd8 16 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 17 ♗e3 ♗e5 18 ♗xe5 ♕xe5 19 ♖g3 ♗xg3 20 hxg3 c4 with an edge for Black, Kiselev-Yurtaev, Barnaul 1988. This is similar to the main game.

2) 11 ♕e3 b6 12 h3 ♖b7 (after 12...♗h5 13 ♜fe1 ♗f4 14 ♖f1 g5 15 a4 ♜d8 16 ♗c4 ♗g6 17 a5 White had a lot of pressure, Ye Rongguang-Wang Zili, Chinese Ch 1994) 13 ♗h2 (White prepares f4 and e5, a typical plan for this variation; there is no need for Black to panic, though, as once White plays e5 he will obtain squares of his own) 13...♜ad8 14 f4 e6 15 ♖h1 ♜b8 (giving the option of ...♜a8) 16 ♜ad1 ♜fe8 17 e5?! ♗d5 18 ♖g1 ♗ce7! 19 ♗e4 ♗f5 (White's next move loses by force but he is already in grave difficulties having boxed his own king in) 20 ♜f3 ♗xf4!! 21 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 22 ♗g4 (22 ♜xf4 ♕xe4 with ...♗g3# to follow) 22...♕xe4 23 ♜xe4 ♗xe2 24 ♜xe2 h5 and Black soon won, Malaniuk-Tkachev, London 1994. A fine performance from Black against a leading specialist in the Torre Attack.

11 ♜fe1 h6
12 ♖h4

The alternative is 12 ♕e3, when the normal move is 12...b6, but I'm sure that Kasparov had prepared 12...♗g4!. After 13 ♕xc5 (D):



1) Stohl gives 13...b6 14 ♕a3 ♗d4 15 ♜c1 ♗xe2+ 16 ♜xe2 as ±, but I doubt the validity of this assessment as after 16...♕a6 17 ♜e1 (17 c4 ♜ac8) 17...♗e5! 18 ♗xe5 ♕xe5 19 ♗f3 (19 g3 is very weakening) 19...♖f4 20 ♜c2 ♕d3 Black is extremely active and the white queen short of squares.

2) Whilst variation '1' is quite attractive it's also academic because 13...♗ce5! is extremely strong, e.g.:

2a) 14 ♗xe5 (best) 14...♕xe5 15 ♕xg4 ♕xh2+ 16 ♖h1 ♕xg4 gives Black some advantage as 17 ♕xe7? fails to 17...♜xd2! 18 ♜xd2 ♖f4.

2b) 14 ♕a3 ♗xf2! 15 ♗xe5 (15 ♖xf2 fails against 15...♗g4+ 16 ♖g1 ♜b6+) 15...♜b6! 16 ♖f1 (what else?) 16...♗h3! and White will be mated.

2c) 14 ♕d4 loses a piece and 14 ♕e3 is too sick a move to analyse.

12 ... ♗h5!

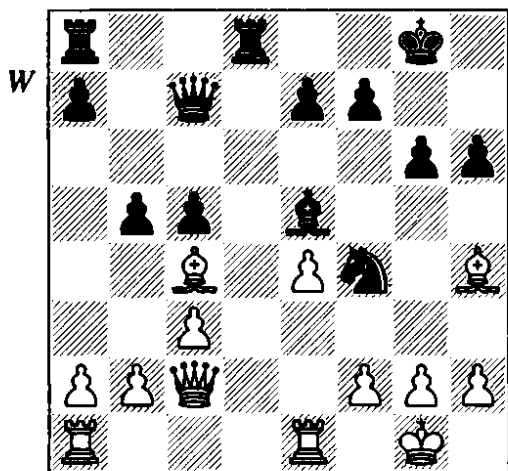
A key move whenever the white bishop drops back to h4. ♕g3 is

prevented and Black has the option of ... $\text{d}f4$ or ... $g5$.

13 $\text{d}c4$ $\text{e}e6$
14 $\text{d}e3$

According to Stohl White should have played 14 $a4$ to prevent Black's queenside expansion. He then gives 14... $\text{d}f4$ 15 $\text{e}f1$ $g5$ 16 $\text{e}g3$ $\text{e}xc4$ 17 $\text{e}xc4$ $\text{d}e5$ 18 $\text{d}xe5$ $\text{e}xe5$ =.

14 ... $\text{d}f4$
15 $\text{e}f1$ $\text{d}e5$
16 $\text{d}xe5$ $\text{e}xe5$
17 $\text{d}c4$ $\text{e}xc4$
18 $\text{e}xc4$ $b5!$ (D)



19 $\text{e}f1$

19 $\text{e}xb5$ $c4$ (threatening ... $\text{d}d3$)
20 $\text{e}g3$ $\text{f}ab8$ (20... $\text{d}d3$ 21 $\text{e}xe5$ $\text{f}xe5$ 22 $\text{e}xc4$ =) 21 $a4$ $\text{d}d3$ 22 $\text{e}xe5$ $\text{f}xe5$ 23 $\text{f}e3$ $\text{d}xb2!$ 24 $\text{f}xb2$ $a6$ is about equal according to Stohl, but Yusupov must have felt that this line was too risky. There are many other dangerous ideas lurking just beneath the surface, 21... $\text{f}d6$ to mention just one. I think the vast majority of players would have reacted like Yusupov, accepting a slight disadvantage rather than heading into complications where it is easy to drop a piece and the best possible

outcome is equality (and in addition, Yusupov had to contend with the intimidating flourish that Kasparov must have played 18... $b5$ with).

19 ... $c4$
20 $\text{f}ed1$ $\text{d}h5$
21 $\text{e}g3$ $\text{d}xg3$
22 $hxg3$ $\text{f}b6$

Black has some advantage as his bishop has more mobility and more targets than White's. These sort of opposite-coloured bishop positions are extremely unpleasant to defend, although Yusupov did a very good job until he cracked up just before the end.

23 $a4!$ $a6$

23... $\text{e}xg3$ 24 $axb5$ allows White counterchances.

24 $axb5$ $axb5$
25 $\text{f}xa8$ $\text{f}xa8$
26 $g4$ $e6$
27 $\text{e}e2$ $\text{f}a2$
28 $\text{c}f1$ $\text{e}b8$

Intending ... $\text{e}a7$.

29 $\text{f}d2$ $\text{c}g7$

Avoiding $\text{f}d8+$.

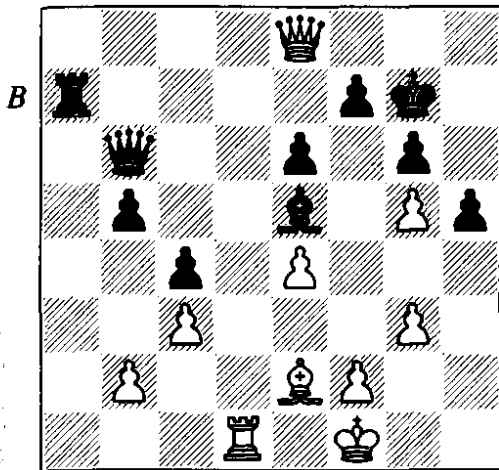
30 $g5$ $h5$
31 $g3$ $\text{e}e5$
32 $\text{f}d7$ $\text{f}a8$
33 $\text{f}e7$

Ftačnik points out that it would be difficult for Black to increase his slight edge after 33 $\text{f}d2$. One idea would be to try ... $\text{f}h8$ and ... $h4$.

33 ... $\text{f}a7$
34 $\text{f}e8?!$ (D)

White places his queen in a precarious position when, instead, 34 $\text{f}d7$ $\text{f}xd7$ 35 $\text{f}xd7$ would have given him a tenable ending.

34 ... $\text{e}d6!$



35 ♔g2
 Perhaps Yusupov had originally intended 35 e5, and this would still

represent his best chance. After 35...♖e7 (not 35...♙xe5? 36 ♜d8, but 35...♙e7 is safer) 36 ♚c8 (36 ♜xd6 ♚xd6 37 ♚xb5 ♚d5!) 36...♙xe5 37 ♜d8 ♜c7 38 ♜g8+ ♔h7 39 ♚f8 ♜a7 40 ♙f3 (Stohl) 40...b4! White's pieces are, thankfully, less menacing than they appear.

35 ... ♙e7
 36 ♜h1? ♚b7!
 Netting the queen.
 37 ♙f3 ♜a8
 0-1
 38 e5 ♚xf3+!

11 The London System

This chapter deals with all the lines where White plays an early ♙f4 (except for the Barry Attack, Chapter 14). Game 23 examines an early c4 by White whereas Game 24 concentrates on the more cautious c3 . The latter is a favourite amongst those who disregard opening theory or those who wish to bore you out of your mind. Against both c3 and c4 I am recommending that Black plays for $\dots\text{e5}$, which is more attractive here than in the previous chapter as when $\dots\text{e7-e5}$ is achieved it will gain time hitting the bishop on f4 (admittedly Black sometimes has to play $\dots\text{♖e8}$ and $\dots\text{♗e7}$ in order to achieve $\dots\text{e5}$). The white bishop usually drops back to h2 from where it can either play a pivotal role in a white queenside attack or find itself completely out of play. Obviously we shall be trying to bring about the latter.

Game 23
Yusupov – Tukmakov
USSR 1978

1	d4	♗f6
2	♗f3	g6
3	♙f4	♙g7
4	e3	

4 c3 is the next game whilst 4 ♗bd2 also occurs from time to time. It seems dubious for White to play an

early e4 , though; Dominguez-Cvitan, Novi Sad OL 1990 continued 4...0-0 (after 4 ♗bd2) 5 e4 d6 6 ♙d3 ($\text{6 ♙e2 ♗bd7 7 c3 ♗h5 8 ♙e3 e5 9 ♖c2 ♗e8 10 ♗g1 f5 11 g4 fxg4 12 ♙xg4 ♗f4 13 ♙f3 exd4 14 cxd4 c5}$ gave Black good play in Quinteros-Uhlmann, Leningrad 1973, although it has to be admitted that White lost his head a little) 6...c5! (Black finds a nice way of increasing the effect of $\dots\text{e5}$) $\text{7 c3 cxd4 8 cxd4 e5! 9 ♙e3 exd4 10 ♙xd4}$ (10 ♗xd4 ♗g4) $\text{10...♗c6 11 ♙e3 d5}$ ($\text{11...♗g4 12 ♙g5 ♖b6}$ looks like an alternative idea) $\text{12 0-0 ♙g4 13 ♙g5 ♙xf3 14 ♗xf3 dxe4 15 ♙xf6 ♖xf6 16 ♙xe4 ♖xb2 17 ♖b1 ♖xa2 18 ♖xb7 ♗fd8 19 ♗d7 ♗d4!}$ (otherwise the game would peter out to a draw) $\text{20 ♖xd4 ♙xd4 21 ♗xd4 ♖ac8 22 ♖b3 ♖xb3 23 ♗xb3 ♖c3 24 ♗a5 ♖dc8}$ and Black eventually won this favourable endgame.

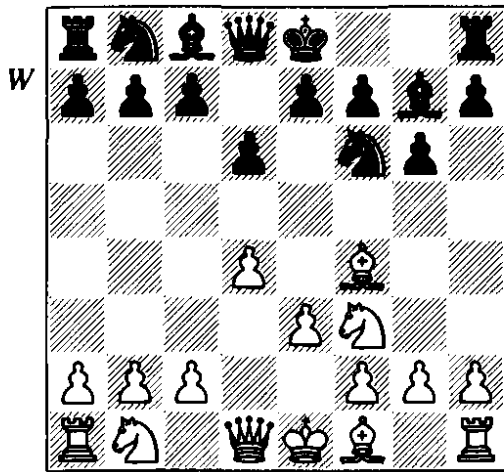
4 ... d6 (D)

It's too early to chase the bishop as after $\text{4...♗h5 5 ♙e5 f6 6 g4!}$ Black is in trouble.

5 h3

Now, however, 5 ♙e2 should be met by 5...♗h5 , e.g. $\text{6 ♙g5 h6 7 ♙h4 g5 8 ♗fd2 ♗f4! 9 exf4 gxh4 10 c3 c5}$ when White has the alternatives:

1) $\text{11 dxc5 dxc5 12 ♗f3 ♖c7 13 ♗xh4 ♙f6 14 ♗f3 ♖xf4}$ with an



active game for Black, Lopushnoi-Bologan, Kazan 1995.

2) 11 d5 (this looks more testing) 11...d7 12 0-0 d6 13 d4 h5 14 e3 f8 (Black didn't play ...h6 at once on account of 15 e4xh5+ e4xf4 16 a4+) 15 d2 h6 16 g3 h3 17 e1 h3g3 (17...g8!?) 18 f3g3 h4 with unclear play in Rivas-Romero, Leon 1995.

5 ... 0-0
6 e2

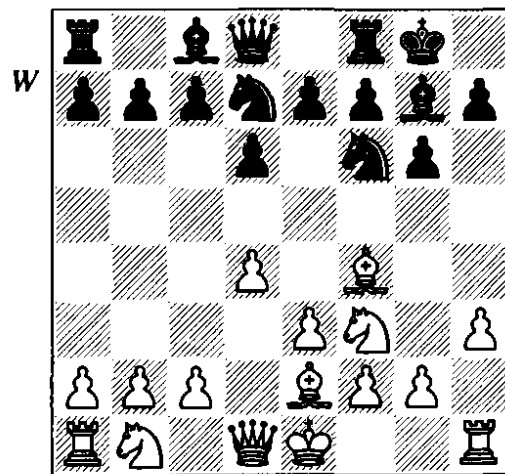
6 c3 and 6 e4 are considered in the next game whilst the immediate 6 c4 is very rarely played. It does, however, pose us a slight problem as Black will be unable to transpose into the main line (White will play d3 next move to prevent ...e4). One possibility is to play 6...e4!?, whilst another is to try 6...c5 which has more effect now that White cannot play the deadly dull c3 in response. A couple of examples of the latter:

1) 7 d3 cxd4 8 exd4 d5 9 e5 e6 (9...d6!?) 10 b3 bd7 11 cxd5 exd5 12 dxe5 dxd5 13 d1 xc3 14 xd8 xb3 15 xa8 xa8 16 axb3 d5 17 c4 d8 18 0-0 e6 and Black has emerged from the

complications with a slightly better ending in view of White's weak pawns, Anastasian-Xu Jun, Beijing 1991.

2) 7 d5 e4! looks very annoying for White (8 c2 a5+) but I would also like to have a quick look at 7...e8 since after 8 c3 we have transposed to Sitanggang-Tkachev, Djakarta 1994, whose actual move order (1 d4 f6 2 c4 g6 3 c3 g7 4 f3 d6 5 h3 0-0 6 f4 c5 7 d5 e8 8 e3) is not examined elsewhere in this book. The game continued 8...e6 9 dxe6?! (as White has no intention of grabbing the hot pawn on d6 he might have settled for 9 e2, when 9...exd5 10 cxd5 a6 11 a4 e4!? would be an interesting way for Black to continue) 9...xe6 10 e2 d5 (of course) 11 0-0 h6 12 b5 a6 13 d2 e7 14 g3 d7 15 a4 b4 16 a3 c6 17 f3 d4 18 exd4 dxd4 19 dxd4 dxd4 with advantage to Black.

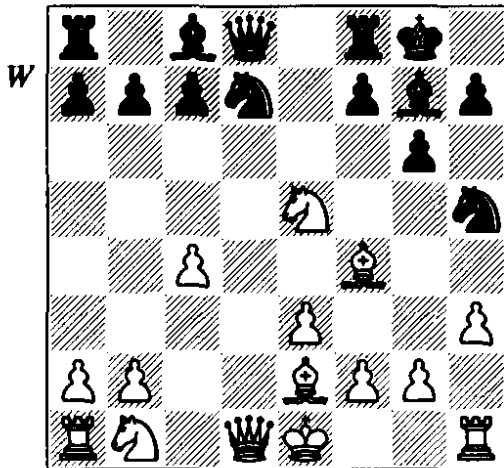
6 ... bd7 (D)



7 0-0

7 c4 allows Black to play ...e5 without any further preparation, e.g. 7...e5! 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 exd5 (9 e5

♖xe5 10 ♖xe5 ♖e4 11 ♚xd8 ♜xd8 12 ♖d3 gives Black good play for the pawn; 12...♜xd3 is one possibility while 12...♙e6 is another) 9...♖h5! (D) and now:



1) 10 ♙xh5 ♖xe5 11 ♙e2 ♖xc4 (11...♚xd1+ and 12...♖d3+ is also good) 12 ♚xd8 ♜xd8 13 ♙xc4 (13 ♖c3 ♖xb2 14 ♜c1 c6 is a safe extra pawn) 13...♙xb2 14 ♙xc7 ♜d7 is winning for Black.

2) 10 ♖xd7 ♖xf4 11 ♖xf8 ♖xg2+ 12 ♚f1 ♚xd1+ 13 ♙xd1 ♙xb2! and Black will pick up the two trapped pieces and emerge with the advantage.

7 ... ♚e8

Black aims to play ...e5, more logical than ...c5 once ...♖bd7 has been played. 7...♜e8 doesn't help but 7...♖e4!? is certainly worthy of attention as Black may be able to save a tempo on the main line, e.g. after 8 ♖bd2 ♖xd2 9 ♚xd2 e5 10 ♙h2 ♚e7 Black has achieved ...♚e7 in one go. Other tries don't look too convincing for White either. 8 ♙d3 should be met by 8...f5 whilst the one game I've seen with 7...♖e4, Ehrke-Volke, Munich 1992, quickly

turned sour for White: 8 ♚d3 f5 9 ♜d1 e6 10 c4 b6 11 ♖c3 ♙b7 12 b4?! e5 13 ♙h2 ♖xf2! 14 ♚xf2 e4 and Black was much better.

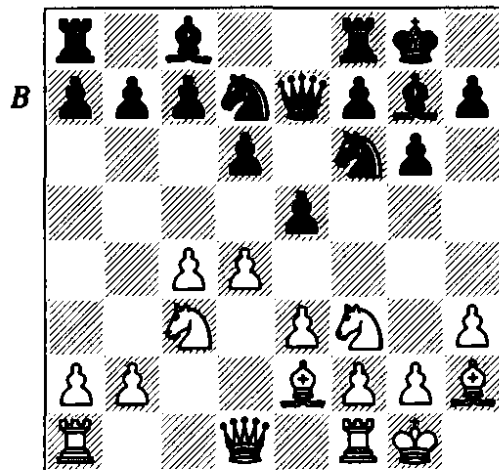
8 c4

8 c3 transposes to the next game.

8 ... e5

9 ♙h2 ♖e4

This seems to be the best move. 9...♚e7 is quite often played but, in my view, this doesn't really solve Black's opening problems. After 10 ♖c3 (D), there is:



1) 10...c6 (this weakens the h2-b8 diagonal, but it's the only sensible way to maintain the tension in the centre) 11 b4 (11 c5!?) and now:

1a) 11...b6 12 c5! bxc5 13 bxc5 dxc5 14 ♖xe5 ♙b7 15 ♖c4 ♜fd8 16 ♚b3 with a pleasant game for White, Bellon-Tal, European Club Ch 1984.

1b) 11...exd4 12 exd4 (12 ♖xd4) 12...d5 13 c5 ♖e4! 14 ♜c1 (14 ♖xe4 dxe4 15 ♙d6 ♚f6 is fine for Black) 14...f5 15 ♜e1 ♜f6!? 16 b5 ♜e6 17 bxc6 bxc6 18 ♙f1 h6 (18...♖dxc5 19 ♖xd5) 19 ♚b3! ♖df6 (Black wasn't keen on allowing 20 ♖e5 but the d5-square needed bolstering; both 19...♖g5 and 19...♚h7 would

have been strongly answered by 20 Qxd5!) 20 Qe5 Qh7 21 Qd3 Qd7?! , Anastasian-Wang Zili, Beijing 1991, and now instead of 22 Qxd5 , I believe that 22 Qxc6 would have been a more promising piece sacrifice: 22... Qxc6 23 Qxd5 Qb7 24 Qxe4 fxe4 25 Qxe4 looks good for White.

2) 10... e4 11 Qd2 and now:

2a) I'm not certain if I played 11... b6? in this particular position or in a very similar one – thankfully, I've lost the scoresheet – but 12 Qdx4! is very embarrassing for Black.

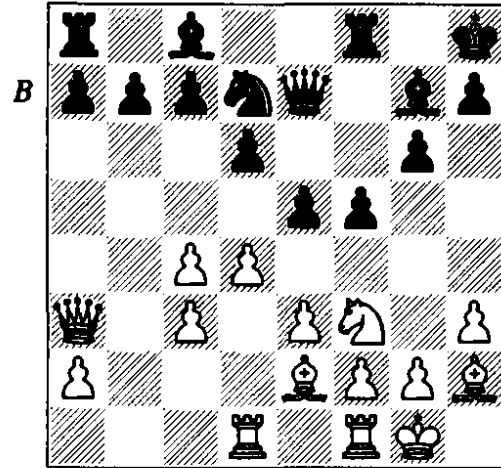
2b) 11... c6 12 b4 d5 13 cxd5 cxd5 14 Qb5 Qe8 15 Qb3 is clearly better for White according to Bellon.

2c) 11... Qe8 (probably the best although White has some dangerous piece sacrifices) 12 Qb5 Qd8 13 c5 a6 14 cxd6 (14 $\text{Qxc7!?$ Qxc7 15 Qc4 is also mentioned by *ECO*) 14... axb5 15 dxc7 Qe7 16 Qxb5 Qb4 (16... Qf8 17 Qc4 Qe6 , Spassky-Bukic, Bugojno 1978, and now 18 Qb3! would have been very good for White) 17 a4 Qe6 18 Qc2 Qb6 19 b3 Qf8 with unclear play according to *ECO*, Eslon-Gallego, San Sebastian 1984.

Before moving on it is also worth mentioning Torben Sørensen's idea, 9... Qh5 . After 10 dxe5 (10 0-0 and 10 g4 are clearly options) 10... dxe5 11 Qb5 Qd8 12 g4 Qhf6 13 Qxe5 Qe4 14 Qd3 Qh4 15 Qf3 Qdc5 16 Qxe4 Qxe4 17 Qf3 Qd7! 18 Qxc7 (18 Qxe4 Qc6) 18... f5! 19 Qxa8 Qc6 Black had excellent attacking chances in Fedder-T.Sørensen, Copenhagen Ch 1992.

10 Qbd2

10 Qc3 is perhaps a more critical move. After 10... Qxc3 11 bxc3 Qe7 (11... $\text{b6!?$ 12 a4 a5) 12 Qb3 Qh8 13 Qad1 f5 14 Qa3 (*D*):



1) Andrianov-Burger, New York 1990 continued 14... e4 15 Qd2 g5 16 c5 f4 17 cxd6 cxd6 18 exf4 gxf4 19 f3! exf3 (19... e3 20 Qe4 wins a pawn and it is unlikely that Black will be able to generate sufficient counterplay) 20 Qxf3 Qe3+ 21 Qh1 Qxd4 22 Qg1 (22 Qe4 looks very strong) 22... Qc5 23 Qxe3 Qxa3 24 Qd4+ Qe5 25 Qc4 Qc5 26 Qxc5 Qxc4 27 Qd4+ Qe5 28 c4! and the powerful bishops gave White a clear advantage.

2) In his notes to the above game Andrianov suggests 14... c5 as a possible improvement and this does indeed seem to be the case although Black must still take care, e.g. 15 dxe5 (15 dxc5 Qxc5) and now:

2a) 15... dxe5?! 16 Qd5 Qb6 (perhaps 16... b6 but Black is very tied down after 17 Qfd1) 17 Qxe5! (but not 17 Qxc5? Qa4!) 17... Qxe5 18 Qxe5+ Qg8 19 Qd1 with tremendous compensation in return for the exchange.

2b) 15...♞xe5 16 ♞d2 when:

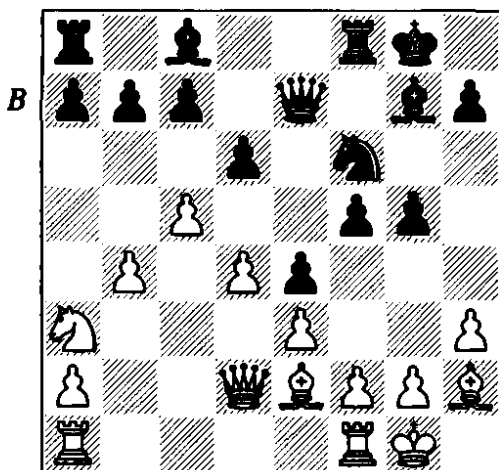
2b1) The natural move 16...♙e6 allows White some advantage after 17 ♞fd1 b6 18 ♚a4! (18 ♞xd6 ♞xc4 19 ♙xc4 ♙xc4 20 ♞d7 ♞fd8! is OK for Black), e.g. 18...♙d7 19 ♚b3 ♙c6 20 ♞xd6 ♞xf3+ 21 ♙xf3 ♙xf3 22 gxf3 ♞ad8 23 ♞d5 and Black doesn't have a great deal in return for his pawn.

2b2) But the solid 16...♞f7! 17 ♞fd1 ♞d8 will make it very difficult for White to improve his position. Black, on the other hand, can develop his queen's bishop (probably on b7) and attack c3 with ...♚f6. Somebody good (it might have been Bronstein) once commented that f7 is the perfect square for a knight in the King's Indian.

10	...	♞xd2
11	♚xd2	e4!?
12	♞e1	♚e7
13	♞c2	f5
14	b4	g5

The position demands that White attacks on the queenside and Black on the kingside, as is so often the case in the King's Indian.

15	c5	♞f6
16	♞a3 (D)	



16 ... f4!

16...d5 looks natural but Tukmakov points out that White could have then played 17 ♙e5! followed by f4.

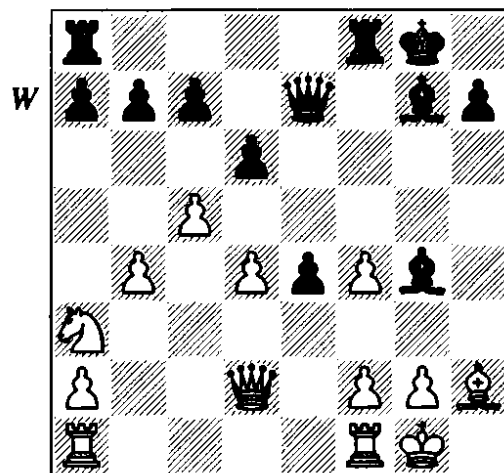
17	exf4	g4
18	hxg4	

White could have reopened the diagonal for his bishop at once with 18 f5!?, when Tukmakov considers 18...gxh3 19 g4 ♞e8!, intending to play 20...h5, as unclear.

18	...	♞xg4
19	♙xg4	

There was little choice, e.g. 19 ♙g3 e3! and 19 ♞c2 ♞xh2 20 ♚xh2 ♙h6! 21 g3 ♞xf4!.

19	...	♙xg4 (D)
----	-----	----------



20	♞ae1	dxg5
----	------	------

20...♞ad8! would have been better according to Tukmakov. Now White gets rid of his weak d-pawn.

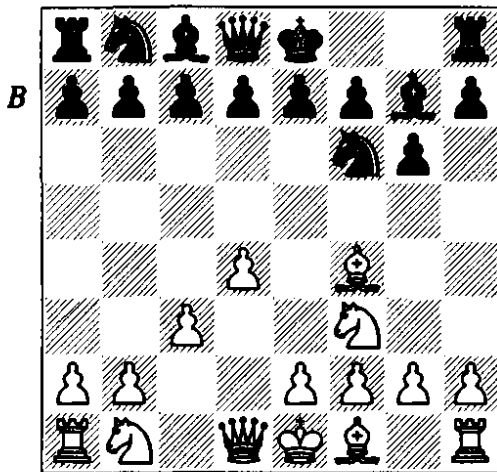
21	dxg5	♞ad8
22	♚c1	♞d3
23	♞e3	♞fd8
24	♚c4+	♚f7
25	♚xe4	♙f5
26	♚c4	

White heads for the ending as 26 ♚xb7 ♞xe3 27 fxe3 ♚xa2 would be very risky for him.

26 ... ♖xe3
 27 fxe3 ♖d2
 28 ♔xf7+ ♕xf7
 29 ♘c4 ♖xa2
 30 ♘e5+ ♙xe5
 1/2-1/2

Game 24
 Zach – Bangiev
 Binz 1994

1 d4 ♘f6
 2 ♘f3 g6
 3 ♙f4 ♙g7
 4 c3 (D)



An extremely solid and unambitious move which makes no attempt to take the initiative. White's principal aim is to block the King's Indian bishop out of the game, but ironically, it's often his own bishop on h2 which ends up as a mere spectator. There are various move orders that White can employ but for practical purposes it is easier if we get c3 out of the way at once.

4 ... d6

Better than castling as White now has to deal with the positional threat of 5...♘h5.

5 h3 0-0
 6 e3

Or 6 ♘bd2 ♘bd7 7 e4 (on 7 e3 I quite like the idea of playing ...b6 and ...♙b7 before playing for ...e5) and now:

1) 7...e5 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♘xe5 (9 ♙e3 ♔e7 10 ♔c2 b6 11 0-0-0 ♙b7 was at least equal for Black in Braga-Bass, Leon 1990) 9...♘xe5 (or 9...♖e8 10 ♘xd7 ♘xe4 =) 10 ♙xe5 ♘xe4 11 ♙xg7 ♖e8 12 ♘xe4 ♖xe4+ 13 ♙e2 ♔xd1+ 14 ♖xd1 ♕xg7 with a level endgame. Note that 15 ♖d8 leads nowhere in view of 15...b6 threatening 16...♖xe2+.

2) If you are not happy with a dull endgame you can try 7...♘h5 before playing ...e5.

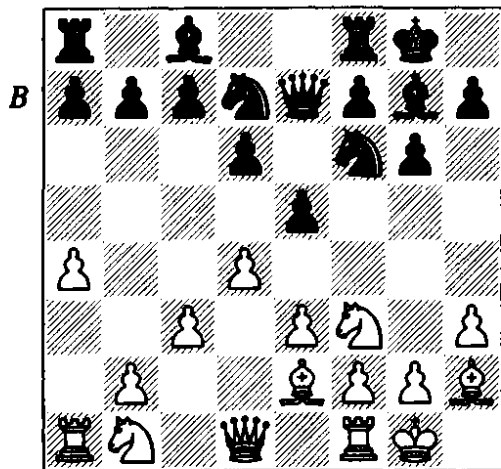
6 ... ♘bd7
 7 ♙e2

Occasionally White develops his bishop more actively to c4 but this need not dissuade us from our plan, e.g. 7 ♙c4 ♔e8 8 0-0 e5 9 ♙h2 (9 dxe5 dxe5 10 ♙h2 b6 is clearly fine for Black, while 9...♘xe5 has been played several times in similar positions) 9...b6 10 0-0 ♙b7 with a satisfactory position for Black. At some point in the near future White is quite likely to have a poke on the queenside with a4 against which Black should probably respond with ...a6.

7 ... ♔e8
 8 0-0 e5
 9 ♙h2

We have the same position as the previous game except that there is a white pawn on c3 instead of c4; consequently there is even less pressure on the black position.

9 ... ♔e7
10 a4 (D)



10 ... e4!?

Black stakes his future on a king-side attack but in doing so liberates the bishop on h2 and allows White a free hand on the queenside. Less boat-burning alternatives are:

1) 10...♖e4 11 ♖fd2 ♖xd2 12 ♖xd2 f5 13 ♜e1 ♗h8 14 a5 a6 with a more or less level game, A.Hoffman-Epishin, St Barbara 1992.

2) 10...♖e8 is another method of preparing kingside play. A.Hoffman-C Foisor, Zaragoza 1992 continued 11 a5 (11 c4 f5 12 ♖c3 c6 13 ♛c2 g5 is given by Bangiev) 11...♗h8 12 a6 b6 13 ♜b5 c5 14 ♖a3 ♖c7 15 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 16 dxe5 d5! 17 ♛e2 ♜c8 18 ♖c2 ♜d7 19 ♖a3 ♜c8 and White should have agreed to a repetition.

3) 10...♗h8 11 ♖a3 (perhaps 11 c4) 11...♖e8 12 b4 f5 13 b5 g5 14 c4 f4 (Black is not so much playing for mate as to lock the bishop on h2 out of the game; once this is achieved he will be quite happy to counter on the queenside) 15 ♖c2 h6 16 ♜a3 ♖df6 17 exf4 exf4 18 ♜e1 ♛f7 19 a5 c6 20 bxc6 bxc6 21 ♖b4 ♛c7 22 c5 dxc5

23 dxc5 ♜b8 24 ♖a6 ♜xa6 25 ♜xa6 ♜d8 with advantage to Black, Denoth-Gallagher, Chiasso 1992.

11 ♖fd2 ♜e8
12 c4

12 a5 a6 13 b4 ♖f8 14 ♖a3 h5 15 b5 ♖8h7 16 c4 ♖g5 17 ♛b3 h4 18 bxa6 bxa6 19 ♜ac1 ♜e6 gave Black quite a good attacking position in J.Garcia-Vaganian, Dubai OL 1986.

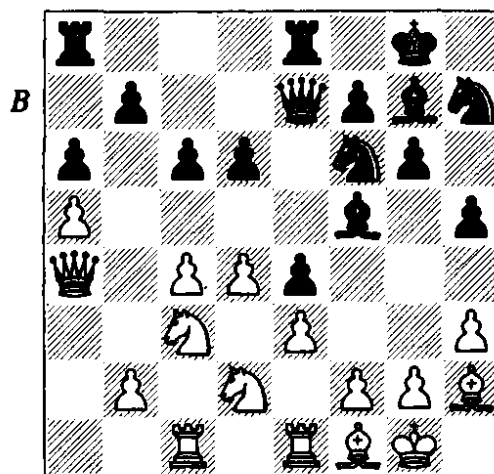
12 ... ♖f8
13 ♖c3 h5

A standard move in such positions. Black can now defend his e-pawn with ...♜f5 without having to worry about g4 and he can also re-deploy his knight on f8 to g5 via h7.

14 ♜c1

14 ♖d5? just loses a pawn after 14...♖xd5 15 cxd5 ♛g5 with a double threat to h3 and d5.

14 ... c6
15 a5 ♖8h7
16 ♜e1 ♜f5
17 ♛a4 a6
18 ♜f1 (D)



White has now achieved his optimum defensive position and is ready to turn his attention to the queenside where he will hope to breakthrough

before Black can arrange a successful sacrifice on h3. The position is difficult to assess.

18 ... ♖h6

In his notes Bangiev preferred 18...♖f8, which might have saved him a tempo on the game continuation. 18...♘g5, or perhaps 18...h4 first, also suggest themselves.

19 b4 ♗d8

Holding up b5, which would now lose the a-pawn. 19...g5 would have been the consistent follow-up.

20 ♘b3 ♖e6

21 ♘d2 d5!?

Black declines the tacit draw offer.

22 ♘b3 ♖f8!

23 ♘c5 ♖c8

24 ♗a2 ♖d6

Despite being theoretically the 'bad' piece, White's dark-squared bishop was clearly outperforming its opposite number. Therefore it's a good idea to exchange it off.

25 cxd5?!

White should have taken on d6 first as after 25 ♖xd6 ♗xd6 26 cxd5 cxd5 27 ♘3a4 we have transposed back into the game.

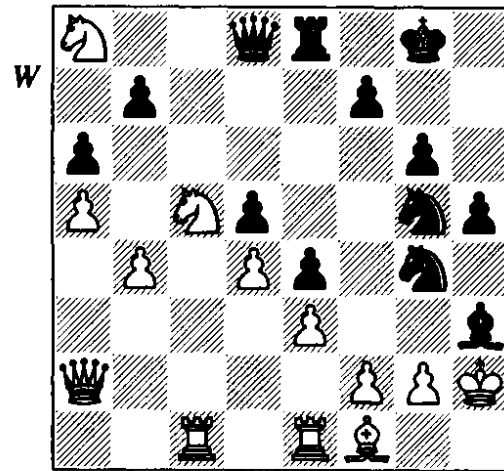
25 ... ♖xh2+

26 ♖xh2 cxd5

27 ♘3a4 ♗d6+?!

27...♘g5! was more accurate leaving Black more options with his queen. After 28 ♘b6 (the logical follow-up whilst on 28 ♖e2, 28...♖xh3 29 gxf3 ♗c8 could be worth a try; the white knights are miles away from their king) 28...♖xh3! 29 ♘xa8 (29 gxf3 ♘f3+ 30 ♖g2 ♗d6 is good for Black) 29...♘g4+ (D) White has three

possible king moves, all of which suffer the same fate:



1) 30 ♖g3, not surprisingly, is swiftly dealt with by 30...h4+.

2) 30 ♖g1 ♘f3+! 31 gxf3 exf3 and despite his enormous material advantage White gets mated or loses all his pieces (I've checked with a computer), e.g. 32 ♖xh3 ♗h4 or 32 ♗a4 ♖f8! (not 32...♖xf1 33 ♗d7!, nor 32...♗h4 33 ♗xe8+ ♖g7 34 ♘e6+!) and White has only delayed the inevitable.

3) 30 ♖h1 ♖xg2+! 31 ♖xg2 (31 ♖xg2 ♘f3 32 ♖h3 ♗d6 is all over) 31...♗d6 32 ♖c4 ♗h2+ 33 ♖e1 ♘f3 and Black wins.

28 ♖g1 ♘g5

29 ♖e2

Perhaps White should have tried 29 ♘b6. Obviously Black doesn't want to allow ♘xc8 because without his bishop he has little chance of a successful kingside attack, whilst 29...♖xh3 30 ♘xb7!? ♗e6! 31 ♗e2!? is open for debate.

29 ... ♖b8

29...♖xh3!? 30 gxf3 ♘xh3+ 31 ♖g2 ♘xf2! looks quite promising.

30 ♘b6 ♖f5

The same sacrifice as in the previous note could have been played here as well.

31 h4

Although Black never actually plucked up the courage to sacrifice on h3 things have not worked out too badly for him. He has managed to preserve his bishop and will have new attacking opportunities based on advancing his g-pawn and the weakness of White's g4-square.

31 ... ♖gh7

32 b5

32 ♖c2 might be a better try, intending to move the knight from c5 and try to exchange queens.

32 ... axb5

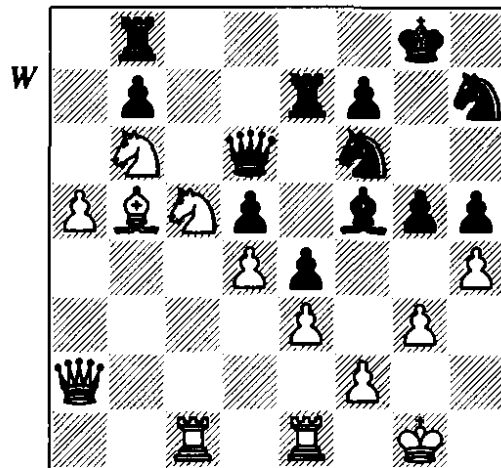
33 ♙xb5 ♗e7

34 g3 g5! (D)

The white king has every reason to feel displeased with his subjects; just when they are most needed the minor pieces have disappeared *en masse* and the white queen finds itself cut off from the action.

35 ♔g2 gxh4

36 gxh4 ♔h8



37 ♖h1 ♙g4

38 ♔f1 ♙f3?!

38...♗g8 was more accurate.

39 ♖g1 ♗d8

40 ♖b3?!

40 ♖g3 offered some defensive chances.

40 ... ♖h2!

41 ♙d7 ♗exd7

41...♗g8 also looks pretty terminal.

42 ♖cxd7 ♖g4

43 ♖xg4 0-1

In view of **43...♙xg4 44 ♔e1 ♖g1+** followed by munching through the pawn chain with check and then taking the knight on d7.

12 The Kingside Fianchetto

This chapter deals with all the lines where White fianchettoes his king's bishop but doesn't play c4. Instead he usually aims to steer the game into Pirc territory by playing e4, but Black has no reason to fear this; even if the Pirc is not part of his normal repertoire the variations are quite limited and there is an easy plan for Black to follow. The main problem is that White can, and often does, exchange on e5, leading to deadly dull positions. But one shouldn't be too disheartened as, with the right attitude, virtually any position can be won against weaker opposition and against strong opponents ... well, a draw is not too bad with the black pieces.

afraid of this as the fact that the white knight is on f3 makes it a slightly inferior version for White. The most popular alternative is 6 c4, transposing into one of the main lines of the King's Indian which is outside the scope of this book. All the other alternatives are examined in game 26, except for 6 b3 which we shall look at here.

6 b3 (D) is certainly one of the most tedious variations against the KID but Black should still take great care in the opening so as to avoid slipping into a prospectless position where White has a nagging edge. I am going to examine a couple of possibilities but, it has to be said, there are no miracle solutions for Black to liven the game up:

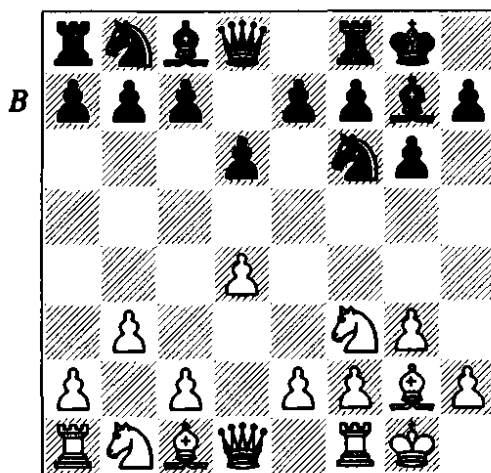
Game 25
Espig – Gallagher
Bad Wörishofen 1994

1	d4	♘f6
2	♘f3	g6
3	g3	♗g7
4	♗g2	0-0
5	0-0	d6

Those of you who are happy to play a Grünfeld or the symmetrical line of the Fianchetto variation can play 5...d5.

6 ♘c3

White hopes to take the game into a g3 Pirc, but Black should not be



1) 6...c5 and now:

1a) 7 c4 d5!? (7...♘c6 8 ♗b2 cxd4 9 ♘xd4 ♗d7 is a solid alternative) 8 cxd5 ♘xd5 9 ♗b2 ♘c6 10

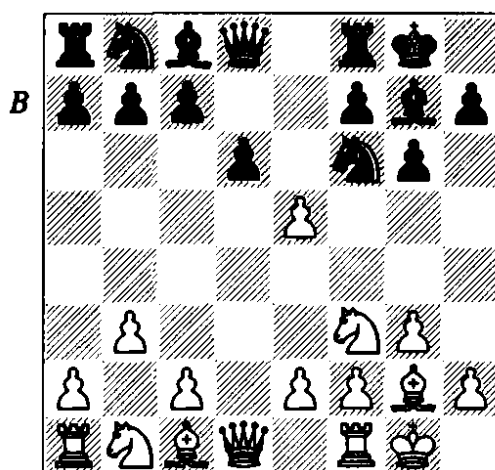
♖d2! (by defending his queen's bishop White cuts out a lot of tricks) 10...♗c7! (10...cxd4 11 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 12 ♗xd4 ♗c3 13 ♗xg7 ♗xd2 14 ♗xd2 ♗xe2+ 15 ♖h1 ♖xg7 16 ♗fe1 is good for White) 11 ♗d1 cxd4 12 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 13 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 14 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 15 ♗xd4 ♗b5! 16 ♗d5 ♗d6 17 ♗c3 ♗e6 18 ♗dd1 ♗fc8 19 ♗ac1 ♗ab8! resulting in a level ending, A.N.Panchenko-Gallagher, Bad Wörishofen 1994.

1b) 7 ♗b2 cxd4 8 ♗xd4 d5 9 c4 (9 ♗a3 e5 10 ♗f3 e4 11 ♗d4 ♗c6 12 c4 transposes to variation '1b2') and now:

1b1) 9...dxc4 10 bxc4 (10 ♗a3!? cxb3 11 ♗xb3 ♗b6 12 ♗c4 ♗xb3 13 axb3 ♗bd7 14 ♗fc1 a6 15 ♗c2 ♗b8 16 ♗ac1 ♗e8 gave White some pressure for his pawn in Bistrić-Vogt, Bugojno 1983) 10...♗b6 11 ♗b3 (11 ♗b3 is well met by 11...♗fd7!) 11...♗d8 12 ♗c1, Azmaiparashvili-Kochiev, USSR 1981, and now Kochiev gives 12...♗c6 13 ♗c3 ♗e6 as the most comfortable for Black.

1b2) 9...e5 10 ♗f3 (10 ♗c2 dxc4 11 ♗xe5 cxb3 12 axb3 ♗c6 13 ♗b2 ♗e6) 10...e4 11 ♗d4 ♗c6 (11...dxc4 12 bxc4 ♗c6 13 ♗xc6 bxc6 14 ♗c3 could be an edge for White) 12 ♗a3 ♗xd4 13 ♗xd4 ♗g4 14 ♗e3 (14 cxd5 ♗xe2 15 ♗fe1 ♗d3 looks good for Black, but 14 ♗fe1 is possible) 14...♗e7 15 ♗ab1 ♗f5 16 h3?! d4! 17 ♗xd4?! (17 ♗xd4 ♗h5 18 ♗d2 e3 19 ♗xe3 ♗xe3 20 fxe3 ♗xb1 21 ♗xb1 offers a much better chance) 17...♗xa3 18 ♗c5 ♗a5 19 ♗xf8 ♗xf8 with advantage to Black, Danielsen-Deep Blue, Copenhagen 1993.

2) 6...e5 7 dxe5 and now (D):



2a) 7...♗g4?! 8 ♗b2 ♗d7 9 ♗c1! ♗gxe5 (or 9...dxe5 10 h3 ♗h6 11 ♗a3 ♗f5 12 ♗d1 ♗e8 13 e3 ♗d6 14 c4 e4 15 ♗e1 ♗xb2 16 ♗xb2 ♗e7 17 ♗d2 ± Stangl-Gallagher, Kecskemet 1990) 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 11 f4 ♗g4 12 ♗xg7 ♖xg7 13 h3 ♗f6 14 e4 with an edge for White, Smyslov-Xie Jun, Prague 1995.

2b) 7...♗fd7 8 ♗b2 dxe5 9 e4 a5 10 a4 ♗a6 11 ♗bd2 ♗ac5 12 ♗e2 b6 13 ♗fd1 ♗a6 14 ♗e3 ♗e7 with an equal game, Dizdarević-Kožul, Zagreb Z 1993.

2c) 7...dxe5 with the branch:

2c1) 8 ♗b2 (not 8 ♗xe5? ♗g4) 8...e4 9 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 10 ♗g5 ♗f5 11 g4 (11 ♗h3 ♗xh3 12 ♗xh3 ♗c6 13 ♗a3 ♗d4 14 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 15 ♗ad1 ♗ad8 was very pleasant for Black in Fuster-Gligorić, Portorož IZ 1958) 11...♗xg4 12 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 13 ♗xg7 ♖xg7 14 ♗xe4 ♗c6 15 ♗c3 ♗d4 16 f3 ♗f5 17 ♗xf5 ♗xf5 and Black's superior pawn structure gave him a small advantage in Filip-Geller, Amsterdam 1956.

2c2) 8 ♗a3 ♗e8 9 ♗c3 ♗c6 10 ♗g5 ♗f5 11 ♗ge4 ♗xe4 12 ♗xe4

♙xd1 13 ♖fxd1 ♘d4 14 ♖d2 ♖ad8
 15 ♖f1! ♘b5?! (15...♙xe4!? 16
 ♙xe4 ♘b5 17 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 18 ♙b2
 c6 19 c4 ♘c7 and even though White
 has the bishop pair he cannot claim
 any advantage) 16 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 17
 ♙b2?! (17 ♙e7! gives White a clear
 advantage after 17...♖d4 18 ♘f6+
 ♖h8 19 ♙xb7 ♙xc2 20 ♖c1 and an
 edge after 17...♖e8 18 ♘f6+ ♙xf6
 19 ♙xf6 ♘d6 20 c4 ♘e4 21 ♙xe4
 ♙xe4 22 ♖d1 ♙f5) 17...b6 18 e3 ♖d7
 19 ♖e1 1/2-1/2 Ekström-Gallagher,
 Swiss League 1994.

6 ... ♘bd7

Once White has blocked his c-pawn a strong case may be made for changing plans and playing ...d5. I am, however, sticking with the Pirc set-up as our main line since this can arise from a variety of 6th moves. It is worth, though, examining a couple of examples of 6...d5:

1) 7 ♖e1 (White's most logical plan is to play for e4) 7...♘e4!?
 (7...c6 8 e4 dxe4 9 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 10
 ♖xe4 ♘d7 is an alternative) 8 ♙f4
 ♘c6 9 ♘b5 a6! 10 ♘a3 (10 ♘xc7
 ♖a7 and the knight on c7 will not es-
 cape) 10...♘xd4 11 ♘xd4 e5 12 ♙e3
 exd4 13 ♙xd4 ♙xd4 14 ♙xd4 c5 15
 ♙e3 ♖e8 16 ♖ad1 d4 17 ♙f4 ♘g5
 18 ♘c4 ♙h3 19 ♙d6 b5 20 ♙xd8
 ♖axd8 and a draw was agreed in
 Romanishin-Magerramov, Helsinki
 1992 although after 21 ♘a5 ♙xg2
 22 ♖xg2 ♘e4 Black must have some
 advantage.

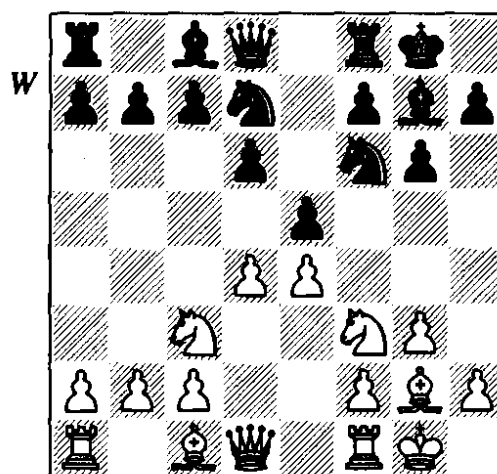
2) 7 ♘e5 c6 8 e4 ♙e6 9 exd5
 cxd5 10 ♘e2 ♘c6 11 ♘f4 ♙f5 12 c3
 ♙e4 13 ♙h3 ♙c7 14 ♘fd3 ♙xd3 15
 ♘xd3 e6 16 ♙f4 ♙d8 17 ♖e1 ♖e8

18 ♙g2 ♘d7 19 h4 h5 20 ♙f3 b5!
 and Black's minority attack eventu-
 ally triumphed in Ivkov-Fischer,
 Santa Monica 1966. The bishop pair
 is not an advantage in such positions
 as White's light-squared bishop is
 biting on granite.

7 e4

7 d5 was the strange choice in
 Rottstädt-McNab, Hastings 1991.
 After 7...♘c5 8 ♘d4 a5 9 a4 ♙d7 10
 e4 ♖a6!? 11 f3?! c6 12 dxc6 bxc6 13
 ♙e3 ♙b8 14 b3 e5 15 ♘de2 ♘e6 16
 ♙d3 ♙c8 17 ♖ad1 ♖d8 18 ♙d2 d5
 Black's powerful centre gave him a
 decisive advantage.

7 ... e5 (D)



8 h3

White's actual move order is not
 easy to predict but over the next few
 moves he almost invariably plays a
 combination of h3, ♖e1 and a4. It
 doesn't make much difference for
 Black, who can just get on with his
 plan. One alternative which does
 change the character of the game is
 the insipid 8 dxe5, which has, some-
 what surprisingly been favoured by
 Smyslov. One example is Smyslov-
 Sax, Tilburg 1979, which continued

8...dxe5 9 b3 (9 ♖e2 c6 10 ♙d1 ♗c7 11 b3 ♜e8 12 ♙a3 ♗a5 13 ♙b2 ♘c5 14 ♘d2 ♙e6 15 ♘c4 ♗c7 ♣ Barcza-Sax, Hungary 1983) 9...axb6 10 a4 ♙b7 11 ♘d2 ♜e8 12 ♙a3 ♙f8 13 ♙xf8 ♘xf8 14 ♘c4 ♘e6! 15 ♜e1 (15 ♘xe5? ♗d4! is very good for Black) 15...♗d4!? (15...♘d4 looks more natural) 16 ♘d5 ♖g7 and now instead of 17 ♗f3?! ♙xd5 18 exd5 e4 19 ♗d1 ♘xd5 20 ♙xe4 ♜ad8 21 ♙xd5 ♗xd5 which gave Black a nagging edge in the endgame, Sax gives 17 ♗xd4 ♘xd4 18 ♘xc7 ♘xc2 19 ♘xe8+ ♜xe8 20 ♘d6 ♜e7 21 ♜ac1 ♘xe1 22 ♜xe1 ♙d7 23 ♘xb7 ♜xb7 24 ♜c1 a5 as =.

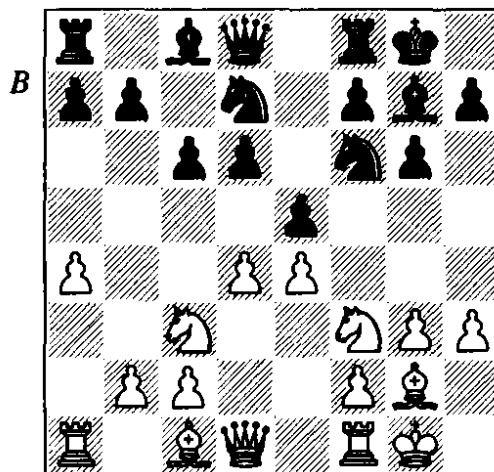
8 ... c6

The plan I am suggesting for Black is based on holding his e5 strong-point. With his secure position in the centre he will be able to calmly complete his development: ...♗c7, ...b6 and ...♙b7 (or ...♜b8 and ...b5 if White plays a5), ...♜e8 and ...♜ad8 (optional). Once done, he will then be able to contemplate active operations on the queenside.

9 a4 (D)

In the game Timman-J.Polgar, Madrid 1995, White ignored the 'threat' of ...b5: 9 ♜e1 b5!? (there is nothing wrong with 9...♗c7 and if White still refrains from a4 he will not have the same queen invasion as in the game) 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 ♗d6 ♙b7 12 ♙g5 ♜e8 13 ♜ad1 (White's position looks attractive but it is not easy to strengthen) 13...♗b6 14 ♙e3 ♗a5 15 a3 ♜ad8 (15...♙f8 is probably more accurate) 16 ♘d2 ♙f8 17 ♘b3 ♗a6 18 ♗d3 ♙c8 19 ♙d2 ♗b7

20 ♜ed1 ♘b6! (fine judgement as after 21 ♗xd8 ♜xd8 22 ♜xd8 ♘bd7 White will have to make some concessions to extricate his rook, e.g. 23 ♙g5 ♖g7 24 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 is quite good for Black and 23 ♘c5! ♗c7 24 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 {24...♗xd8 25 ♘xe5 ♗e8 26 ♘xc6! gives a lot of play for the queen} 25 ♜e8 ♘f6 26 ♜ed8 ♘d7 27 ♜e8 ♘f6 is a draw by repetition unless White risks 28 ♜xf8+ ♖xf8 29 ♙c5+ ♖g7 30 ♙d6 ♗a5! when 31 ♙xe5 is met by 31...b4! and 31 b4 ♗xa3 32 ♙xe5 ♗xb4 33 ♙d6 ♙e6 is unclear) 21 ♗e2 ♜xd2 22 ♘xd2 ♙e6 23 f4 ♙g7 24 ♗f2 ♗c8 25 ♖h2 exf4 26 gxf4 ♗c7 27 ♙xb6? (this appears to be the result of a tactical oversight) 27...axb6 28 e5 ♘h5 29 ♘de4 ♘xf4 30 ♘d6 ♙xe5! and White resigned on account of 31 ♘xe8 ♘xh3+!.



9 ... ♗c7

In practice Black very often chooses to block the further advance of the white a-pawn with 9...a5. However, I don't believe this to be a good idea; firstly because a4-a5 from White is not a serious positional threat and secondly, once Black has

played ...a7-a5 his dynamic potential on the queenside is considerably reduced.

10 ♖e1

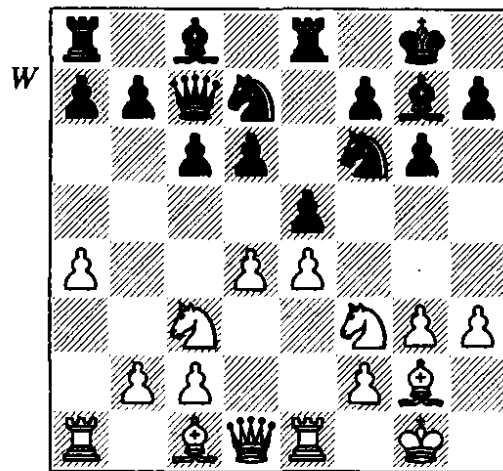
The moves ♖e1 and ...♗e8 are occasionally omitted. White can play **10 a5**, when Malaniuk-Gallagher, Hamburg 1995 continued 10...♗b8 (10...♗e8 11 ♖e1 is considered later, whilst on 11 ♗e3?! Black should not play 11...♗b8, on account of 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 ♗xa7, but 11...exd4! 12 ♖xd4 ♖c5 when 13 f3 is answered by 13...d5! and 13 ♖db5 looks unsound) 11 ♗e3 b5 12 axb6 axb6 when White thought for an hour and played 13 dxe5 accompanied by a draw offer (accepted). Similar positions are considered in more detail in the notes to White's 11th move.

Another example of White omitting ♖e1 (which does lend support to the e-pawn) was Nogueiras-Shirov, Moscow OL 1994. After **10 ♗e3** b6 11 ♖d2 ♗b7 12 ♗h6 ♗fe8 13 ♗xg7 ♖xg7 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 ♗fd1 ♗ad8 16 ♖e3 ♖c5 17 a5 ♖e6 18 ♗f1 c5 Black's strong grip in the centre enabled him to claim an edge.

10 ... ♗e8 (D)

An example of Black delaying this move is Martinovsky-Gallagher, Geneva 1995: **10...b6** 11 ♗e3 ♗b7 12 ♖d2 a6 13 dxe5 (my experience of this variation is that White is usually panicked into this exchange once Black has lined up his queenside pawns from a6 to d6; not only does he then have to contend with ...b5, but he must also watch out for ...exd4 followed by ...c5) 13...dxe5 14 ♖e2 b5 15 ♖d2 ♗fe8 16 f3 ♖h5

17 ♖f2 ♗f8 (17...f5!?) 18 ♗ad1 ♖g7 19 ♖b3 b4 20 ♖b1 c5 21 ♖1d2 ♗c6 22 a5 ♖e6 ♖.



11 ♗e3

An important alternative is **11 a5 ♗b8!** (certainly not 11...exd4 12 ♖xd4 ♖c5 13 ♗f4 ♖h5? as 14 ♖db5! cxb5 15 ♗xd6 is crushing; this trick has occurred several times) **12 ♗e3 b5 13 axb6 axb6 14 d5** (the only try for the advantage) **14...♗b7** (better than 14...cxd5?! which needlessly ceded control over b5 in Rashkovsky-Schulz, Berlin 1991; after 15 exd5 ♖c5 16 ♗f1! ♗b7 17 b4 ♖ce4 18 ♖b5 ♖c8 19 c4 White had a clear advantage; 14...b5 may be worth examining though) **15 dxc6 ♗xc6 16 ♖d2 b5** and now we have a couple of examples:

1) The game Romanishin-C.Hansen, Groningen 1991 continued **17 ♗a7 ♗b7 18 ♗xb7 ♖xb7 19 ♖b3?! (19 b4 d5 20 exd5 ♖xd5 21 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 22 ♗xd5 ♖xd5 23 c4! bxc4 24 ♖xc4 is given as = by Stohl) 19...b4 20 ♖d5 (20 ♖a5 ♖c7 21 ♖xc6 bxc3) 20...♖xd5 21 exd5 ♗a4 22 ♖a5 ♖c7 23 ♖c6 e4! 24 ♗f4 f5 25 b3 ♗xc6 26 dxc6 ♖xc6 27 ♖xd6**

♙xd6 28 ♖xd6 ♙c3 29 ♜d1 ♘e5 30 ♙c5? (30 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 31 ♙f1 ♜e7 would leave White a little worse in a defensible position) 30...♞a8 31 ♜d5 ♞a1+ 32 ♚h2 ♜c1 and White found himself in a lost position as 33 ♙xb4 ♙xb4 34 ♞xe5 ♞xc2 35 ♚g1 ♙c5 is hopeless.

2) 17 b4 ♘b6 (Stohl recommends 17...♙a8 but I'm not sure what Black has achieved after 18 ♞a3) 18 ♙xb6 and now:

2a) Kurajica-Cramling, Debrecen 1992 continued 18...♙xb6 19 ♘b3 ♙d7 20 ♞e3 ♞a8 21 ♞a5! ♞xa5 22 bxa5 ♙c7 23 ♘a2 ♙e6 24 ♜c3 ♙a7 25 ♘b4 with some advantage for White.

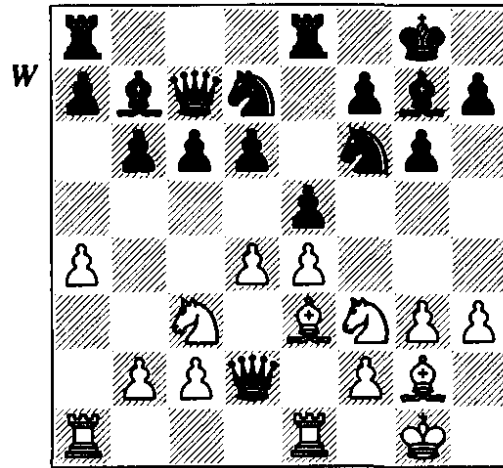
2b) I would prefer 18...♞xb6!? which feels like the more harmonious recapture. For example, 19 ♘b3 ♙d7 20 ♞e3 ♞c8 21 ♞a5 ♙e6!? 22 ♙f1 (22 ♞xb5 ♞c6; 22 ♘b5 ♙xc2) 22...♙h6 23 ♞f3 ♙e7 and White will not be picking up the b-pawn free of charge.

11 ... b6
12 ♙d2

12 d5 ♙b7 13 ♘d2 cxd5 14 exd5 a6 15 g4 ♞ac8 16 ♘f1 h5 17 g5 ♘h7 18 ♘g3 ♘c5 19 ♘ge4 ♞b8! intending ...♙b7-c8, was quite satisfactory for Black in Bernard-Stangl, Bad Wildbad 1990. The position closely resembles a Sicilian Najdorf.

12 ... ♙b7 (D)

I believe that Black's rock-like position gives him at least equal chances. The problem for White lies in his knight on f3. In the g3 Pirc it normally stands on the superior e2-square which provides him with a



couple of aggressive options which are not available to him here. One would have been to increase the pressure on the centre with a quick f4 and another would be to aim for a kingside attack with g4 and ♘g3, followed by g5 or f4.

With his knight on f3, Espig can find nothing better than to exchange dark-squared bishops, not with the intention of starting a kingside attack but simply to give his congested pieces a little more room.

13 ♙h6

13 d5 cxd5 14 exd5 a6 gives Black a good Sicilian position, whilst 13 dxe5 does little to help White.

13 ... a6
14 ♞ad1 ♞ad8
15 ♙xg7 ♚xg7
16 dxe5 dxe5
17 ♙e3 b5

Not 17...♘c5? 18 a5!, but now Black is ready to bring his knight to e6 via f8. White also feels the time is ripe for a knight manoeuvre.

18 ♘d2 ♘f8
19 ♘b3 ♘e6
20 ♘c5

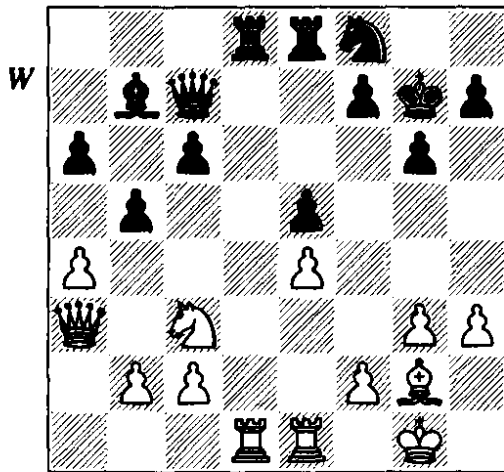
White is worried about Black playing ...b4 and ...c5, but the text

allows Black's king's knight to duplicate the movements of his queen-side colleague. Once it arrives on e6 its superiority over White's knight on c3 will be evident.

- 20 ... ♖xc5
 21 ♚xc5 ♘d7
 22 ♚a3

I was surprised by this move. White probably refrained from 22 ♚e3 on account of 22...b4 23 ♘b1 c5 which must be slightly better for Black.

- 22 ... ♘f8! (D)



- 23 b4!?

A slightly controversial move; White believes it will be in his interest to exchange as many pawns as possible on the queenside as well as hoping that his queen can become active on the long diagonal.

- 23 ... ♘e6
 24 ♘e2 ♚g8

A useful prophylactic measure which was mainly inspired by my opponent's time pressure; it's much harder to play quickly against such moves than against ones which create concrete threats.

- 25 ♚a1?!

25 ♚b2 would save a tempo as Black would probably still continue with ...c5.

- 25 ... c5
 26 axb5 axb5
 27 bxc5 ♚xc5
 28 ♚b2

28 ♚c3 ♚xc3 29 ♘xc3 ♘d4 is also very unpleasant for White.

- 28 ... ♖xd1
 29 ♖xd1 ♖c8
 30 c3 ♚c4!

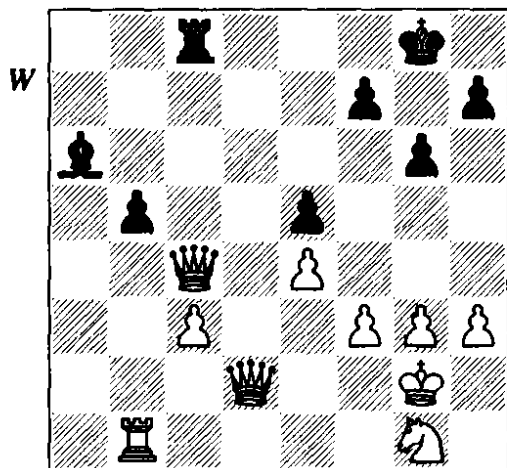
Once White has covered d4 the black knight needs new employment. The text clears a route to the queenside for it whilst the attack on the e-pawn also forces a weakening of the white kingside.

- 31 f3 ♘c5
 32 ♚d2 ♘a4
 33 ♖b1 ♗a6
 34 ♗f1 ♚c5+!

Again the queen vacates a square for the black knight. Taking the pawn would have been premature, e.g. 34...♘xc3 35 ♘xc3 ♚xc3 36 ♚xc3 ♖xc3 37 ♗xb5 ♗c8 (37...♗xb5 38 ♖xb5 ♖xf3 39 ♚g2 =) 38 ♗f1! when 38...♖xf3 39 ♖b8 ♖xg3+ 40 ♚f2 ♖c3 41 ♗a6 is likely to end in a draw.

- 35 ♚g2 ♘b6
 36 ♘g1 ♘c4
 37 ♗xc4 ♚xc4 (D)

At first I was a little reluctant to exchange off my heroic knight but one has to look at what is left on the board rather than what is going off it. Black's advantage consists of his safer king, the weak white pawn on c3 and, most importantly, the dreadful white knight. It can't even go to



e2 because of ...b4. The only factor in White's favour is the reduced amount of material which allows him to hope for a draw.

- | | | |
|----|-------|-------|
| 38 | ♖a1 | ♜c6 |
| 39 | h4 | h5 |
| 40 | ♔f2?! | ♚c5+! |

Black takes the opportunity to transfer his rook to the d-file.

- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 41 | ♔g2 | ♜d6 |
| 42 | ♚c1 | ♔g7 |
| 43 | ♞h3 | |

Or 43 ♞e2 ♚c4! when the knight is forced back to g1. Now that the white pieces have been coaxed onto inferior squares Black is ready to start another assault on the enemy c-pawn.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----|------|
| 43 | ... | ♜c6! |
| Threatening ...b4. | | |
| 44 | ♚e1 | ♞c8 |
| 45 | ♜b1 | ♞d7! |
| 46 | ♜b3 | ♚c4 |
| 47 | ♚d1 | ♜a6! |
| 48 | ♞f2 | ♜a2 |

By some accurate manoeuvring Black has succeeded in infiltrating to the seventh rank. His attack is now decisive, one nice point being that 49 ♚d5 is refuted by 49...♞h3+!

- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 49 | ♔g1 | ♞e6 |
|----|-----|-----|

- | | | |
|-----|------|-------|
| 50 | ♜b1 | ♚xc3! |
| 51 | ♜xb5 | ♚e3 |
| 0-1 | | |

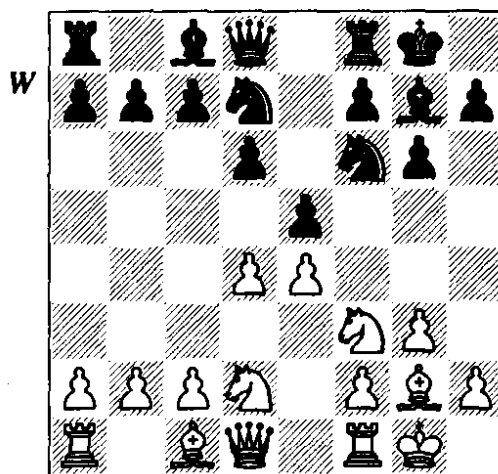
Game 26
Rivas – Khalifman
Dos Hermanas 1993

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♞f6 |
| 2 | ♞f3 | g6 |
| 3 | g3 | ♞g7 |
| 4 | ♞g2 | 0-0 |
| 5 | 0-0 | d6 |
| 6 | ♜e1 | |

The remaining 6th move alternatives are:

1) 6 ♞bd2, intending e4, when Black has a couple of ways to prepare ...e5.

1a) 6...♞bd7 7 e4 e5 (D) and now:



1a1) 8 dxe5 dxe5 (8...♞xe5 will transpose to '1b21') 9 b3 ♜e8 10 ♞b2 b6 11 ♞c4 ♞b7 12 ♞fd2 (12 ♞fxe5 is also equal) 12...♚e7 13 a4 a6 14 ♜e1 ♜ad8 15 ♚e2 h5 with a comfortable game for Black, Todorčević-Lautier, Palma 1989.

1a2) 8 c3 b6 9 ♜e1 ♜e8 10 ♚c2 ♞b7 (the position is the same as line

'1' in the note to White's 8th move except for the fact that a4 and a5 were flicked in there) 11 dxe5 ♖xe5 12 ♖xe5 ♗xe5!? 13 ♖c4?! ♙xe4 14 ♙xe4 ♗xe4 15 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 16 ♗xe4 d5 17 ♗f3 (17 ♗e2 dxc4 18 ♗xc4 ♗d1+ 19 ♗f1 ♗c2 favours Black) 17...dxc4 18 ♙g5 ♗e8 19 ♗d1 c6 ♭ Frenzas-Moutousis, Peresteri 1994.

1b) 6...♖c6 and now:

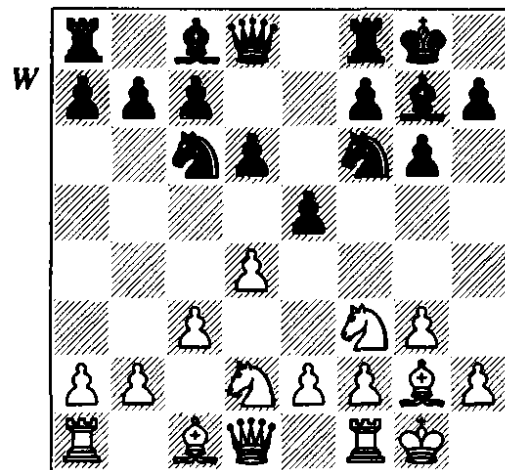
1b1) 7 ♖c4 (a suggestion by Andersson) 7...♙e6!? 8 ♖e3 (8 b3?! ♗c8 9 ♗e1 ♙xc4 10 bxc4 ♖a5 11 ♗d3 c5 is given as ♭ by Shabalov) 8...♙d7 9 c4 (9 d5 ♖b4 10 c4 c6 is another game) 9...e5 10 d5 ♖e7 11 c5 ♖e8 12 ♖c4 f5 with an unclear position, Shabalov-W.Watson, Belgrade 1988.

1b2) 7 e4 e5 (7...♖d7!? 8 c3 e5 is an idea of Nigel Davies) and now:

1b21) 8 dxe5 ♖xe5 (since the knight on c6 will not be well placed after a subsequent c3 by White it makes sense to exchange it) 9 ♖xe5 dxe5 10 ♗e2 ♗e7 11 ♗d1 b6 12 b3 a5 13 a4 ♙a6 14 ♗e1 ♗fd8 15 ♙a3 ♗e6 16 ♖f1 ♙f8 = Filip-Fischer, Stockholm 1962.

1b22) White has been reluctant to play 8 c3 here, perhaps because of 8...exd4!? (Davies's 8...♖d7 and 8...♙g4, hoping to get White to block the centre, are reasonable alternatives) 9 cxd4 ♙g4. A possible continuation is 10 d5 ♖e5 11 h3 ♖xf3+ 12 ♖xf3 ♙d7 13 ♗e1 ♗e8 14 e5 (14 ♖d4? allows 14...♖xd5! and 14 ♗c2 c6 is fine for Black) 14...dxe5 15 ♖xe5 ♙f5 when Black has a comfortable game as 16 g4 can be met by 16...♙e4!.

1b3) 7 c3 e5 and now (D):

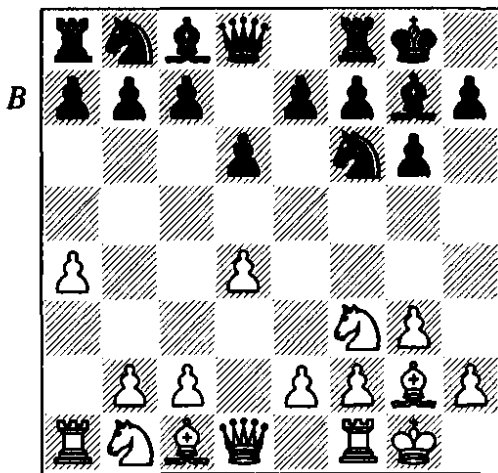


1b31) 8 ♗c2?! (8 e4 is variation '1b22') 8...exd4! 9 ♖xd4 (9 cxd4 d5 is at least equal for Black) 9...♖e5!? (attempting to mix it up in a crucial last-round game, but 9...♖xd4 10 cxd4 d5 is the sensible way to play) 10 e4 c5 11 ♖e2 ♗e7 12 h3 ♗e8 13 c4 ♖c6 14 ♖c3 ♖d4 15 ♗d3 ♙e6 with good play for Black, Kurz-Gallagher, Baden 1996.

1b32) 8 dxe5 ♖xe5 9 ♖xe5 dxe5 10 e4 ♗e7 11 a4 ♗d8 12 ♗c2 b6 13 ♗e1 ♙a6 14 ♙f1 ♙b7 15 a5 ♙h6! with a slight initiative for Black, Giertz-Gallagher, Villars 1995. The rest of the game is worth a glance as it demonstrates that White cannot draw 'to order' by playing an early dxe5: 16 f3 ♗d7 17 ♙h3 ♗c5+! 18 ♙g2 ♗dd8 19 ♖b3 ♗f8 (Black's play may look suspect but the idea was to lure White's pieces onto inferior squares) 20 ♙g1 ♙xc1 21 ♗xc1 ♙a6 22 ♙f1 ♙xf1 23 ♗xf1 ♗e8! (the queen will be very active on b5) 24 ♗d1 ♗b5 25 ♗xd8+ ♗xd8 26 ♗c2 ♖e8! (the knight heads for c4) 27 axb6 axb6 28 ♗d1 ♗xd1+ 29 ♗xd1 ♖d6 (White had assumed the

draw was very close but this was the position I had been aiming for as Black is simply winning) 30 ♖f2 ♘c4 31 ♚c2 (the only move to save the b-pawn...) 31... ♚a4! (...but White is now caught in a terminal pin) 32 ♖e2 ♘a5! 33 ♘d4 ♚c4+ 34 ♚d3 exd4 and Black soon won.

2) 6 a4!? (D)



An interesting idea which has become quite popular recently. Before deciding on his piece placement White wishes to discover the shape of the queenside. I am proposing that Black simply ignores White's offensive. Firstly, because the Pirc type positions that we are aiming for are less promising once Black has played ...a5, and secondly, I don't believe that a5 is such a strong positional threat that we should save White from wasting a further tempo on playing it. 6... ♘bd7 7 a5 (consistent; instead 7 ♘c3 c5 8 e4 a6 9 a5 ♚c7 10 ♚e1 cxd4 11 ♘xd4 ♘e5 12 h3 ♘c4 13 ♘b3 e5!? 14 g4 ♙e6 led to an unclear Sicilian position in the game Polugaevsky-J.Polgar, Hastings 1992/3 whilst 7...e5 8 e4 would be similar to the previous game)

7...c6 (7...e5 is worth examining as 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 a6 e4 10 ♘g5 ♚e7 11 ♘c3 ♘c5 looks OK for Black, whilst 7... ♚b8 8 ♘c3 c5 9 e4 cxd4 10 ♘xd4 a6 11 ♚e1 ♘e5 12 b3 ♘c6 13 ♘xc6 bxc6 14 ♙b2 c5 was roughly equal in Hergott-Bologan, Biel 1993) 8 ♘bd2 (8 ♘c3 is more common and should also transpose to Game 25) 8...e5 9 e4 and now:

2a) 9... ♚c7 10 c3 ♚e8 11 ♚e1 ♚b8 12 ♘c4 b5 (12...exd4 13 ♚xd4!) 13 axb6 ♘xb6 14 ♘a5 c5 15 d5 ♙d7 16 ♙f1 was slightly better for White in Khuzman-Gallagher, Antwerp 1993.

2b) Perhaps Black could have exchanged in the centre before White had the chance to support it with c3. After 9...exd4!? 10 ♘xd4 ♘c5 the pressure on e4 will make it difficult for White to complete his development without playing b4 (f3 would be even more suspect as it would make the ...d5 break more appealing). After, for example 11 ♚e1 ♚e8 12 b4 ♘e6 13 ♘xe6 ♙xe6 14 ♙b2 d5!? (by no means the only way to handle the position) 15 e5 ♘d7 Black has a comfortable game. His plan will be to break up the white centre with ...f6, whilst 16 a6 is not a serious worry as after 16...b6 17 ♘b3 c5! 18 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 19 ♚xd5 there is the resource 19... ♘xe5!.

6 ... ♘bd7

Again Black is heading for the favourable version of the g3 Pirc that we saw in the previous game. 6... ♘c6 is played quite frequently but I believe that 7 d5 ♘b4 8 e4 gives White good chances of an edge. The most interesting alternative to the

text is 6...c5 which, depending on White's reply, can lead to positions resembling the Sicilian, the Benoni, the English or the King's Indian! Let's take a brief look:

1) 7 c4 ♟c6 8 ♟c3 (8 d5) 8...cxd4 9 ♟xd4 ♟xd4 10 ♖xd4 ♙e6 11 ♖d3 ♜c8 12 ♟d5 ♟xd5 13 cxd5 ♙d7 was level in Andersson-Christian- sen, Moscow IZ 1983. In effect, White's ♜e1 left him a tempo down on one of the main lines of the Sym- metrical English.

2) 7 dxc5 dxc5 8 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 9 c3 (9 ♟e5 ♟a6 10 c3 ♟d5 11 ♟c4 ♙e6 12 ♟ba3 ♜d7 13 ♜b1 ♜ad8 was also fine for Black in Anders- son-Quinteros, Mar del Plata 1981) 9...♟d5!? 10 ♜d1 ♟c6 11 ♟g5 e6 12 ♟e4 b6 13 ♙g5 ♜f8 14 ♟a3 h6 15 ♟f6+ ♙xf6 16 ♙xf6 ♙a6 17 c4 ♟xf6 18 ♙xc6 ♜ac8 19 ♙g2 ♜fd8 20 e3 ♟f8 21 h3 ♟e7 22 f4 ♜xd1+ 1/2-1/2 Nogueiras-Ivanchuk, Moscow 1990.

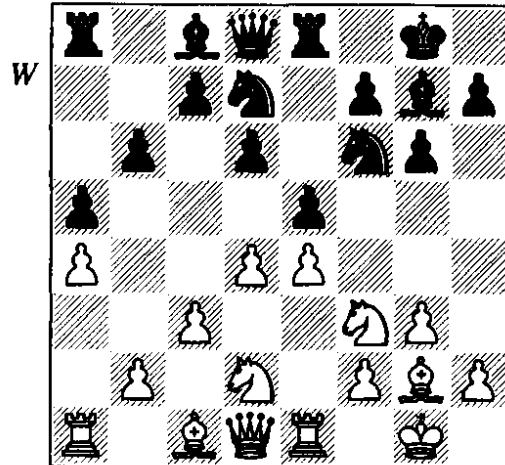
3) 7 d5 b5!? 8 e4 ♙b7 9 c4 bxc4 10 ♟fd2 ♟fd7 11 ♟xc4 ♟e5 12 ♟ba3 ♟bd7 13 ♟e3 ♙a6 14 ♙f1 ♖a5 15 ♟g2 (15 ♙d2 ♖xd2) 15...♜ab8 and Black had Benko Gambit style play without being a pawn down in Panno-J.Polgar, Aruba 1992.

4) 7 e4 cxd4 8 ♟xd4 leads to a pretty tame variation of the Sicilian Dragon. One example is Hoffman- Zapata, Seville 1992 which contin- ued 8...♙g4 (presumably 8...♟c6 is met by 9 ♟xc6 bxc6 10 e5) 9 f3 ♙d7 10 a4 ♟c6 11 ♟b3 ♟e5 12 ♟c3 ♜c8 13 ♟h1 ♖c7 14 ♟d4 a6 with a dou- ble-edged position.

7 e4 e5

8 a4

8 ♟c3 is Game 25, which leaves 8 c3 as the most important alternative. After 8...♜e8 9 ♟bd2 b6 10 a4 a5 (now it would be uncomfortable to allow a5) there is (D):



1) 11 ♖c2 ♙b7 12 d5 (the pres- sure on the e-pawn makes decent al- ternatives hard to find) 12...c6! 13 dxc6 ♙xc6 (Black's pawns may look weak but the point is that White won't be able to prevent ...d5) 14 ♟c4 ♖c7 15 ♟fd2 ♟c5 16 b3 d5 17 exd5 ♙xd5 with an edge for Black, Züger-Gallagher, Bad Ragaz 1994.

2) 11 ♟c4 occurred in the game Ye Rongguang-Domingues, Cuba 1992 where Black refrained from the critical 11...exd4:

2a) Perhaps this was on account of 12 ♟xd4 ♙b7 13 e5?! (13 ♙g5 is better with a level game), but then 13...♙xg2 14 exf6 ♜xe1+ 15 ♖xe1 ♙d5! 16 fxg7 (or 16 ♟e3 ♟xf6) 16...♙xc4 17 ♙h6 ♙d5 (18 ♟c6 was threatened) should be good for Black.

2b) The alternative recapture 12 cxd4 is also not particularly promis- ing for White. After 12...♜xe4 13

Bxe4 Dxe4 14 Dg5 the solid 14... d5
 15 Dxe4 dxe4 16 Axe4 Bb8 17 Axf4
 Df6 looks about level, whilst the
 sharp 14... Dxg5 15 Axa8 Aa6 16
 Ad5 Dh3+ 17 Ag2 Df6 is certainly
 worth looking into.

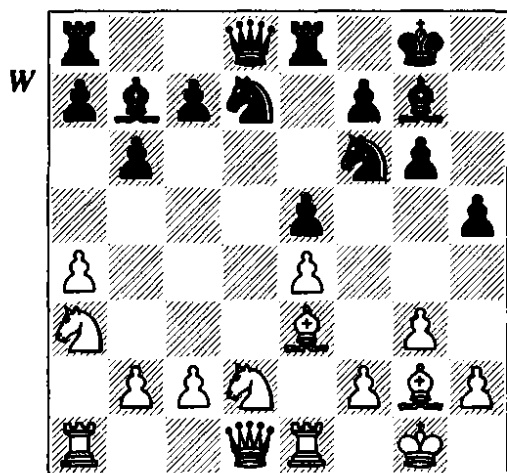
8 ... Ae8
 9 dxe5?!

This exchange, here and in similar
 positions, rarely brings White any
 benefit and normally just relieves
 any pressure Black may have been
 experiencing. It is, however, not un-
 usual for White to play dxe5 as the
 players who opt for the systems in
 this chapter are often trying to play
 without the slightest risk. 9 Dc3 c6
 would again transpose to Espig-Gal-
 lagher.

9 ... dxe5
 10 Da3?!

And this is not a good follow-up
 as Black will now be able to take
 over the initiative by attacking e4 be-
 fore White can get at e5 . Better was
 10 Dc3 c6 with equality.

10 ... b6!
 11 Ae3 Ab7
 12 Dd2 h5! (D)



13 f3

The alternative way to deal with
 the threat of ... Dg4 , 13 h3 , would also
 have been met by ... Ae7 and ... Dc5
 when White would probably end up
 having to play f3 anyway.

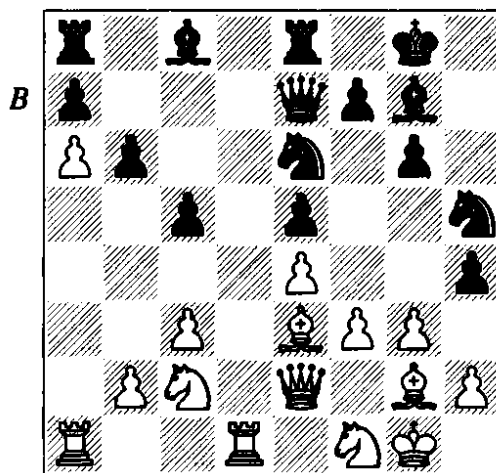
13 ... Ae7
 14 Ae2 Dc5
 15 a5 De6
 16 a6?!

White should have just played 16
 c3 instead of driving the bishop onto
 a more active diagonal and awarding
 himself a weak a -pawn.

16 ... Ac8
 17 c3 h4!
 18 Dc2 Dh5
 19 Df1

19 Axf2 c5! also leaves Black with
 a considerable space advantage.

19 ... c5
 20 Aed1 (D)



20 ... Def4!

Excellent judgement from Black
 who gives up a piece for purely posi-
 tional reasons.

21 gxf4

21 Axf4 exf4 22 g4 Df6 is pretty
 horrible for White and 21 Ad2 Ae6!
 22 gxf4 Aad8 is no better than the
 game.

21 ... exf4
 22 ♖c1
 22 ♖f2 h3 23 ♖h1 ♔g5+.
 22 ... h3
 23 ♖h1

If that thing on h1 tried to describe itself as a bishop it would find itself in contravention of the Trade Descriptions Act. Of course the permanent incarceration of this piece is what Black's combination is all about.

23 ... ♖e6!

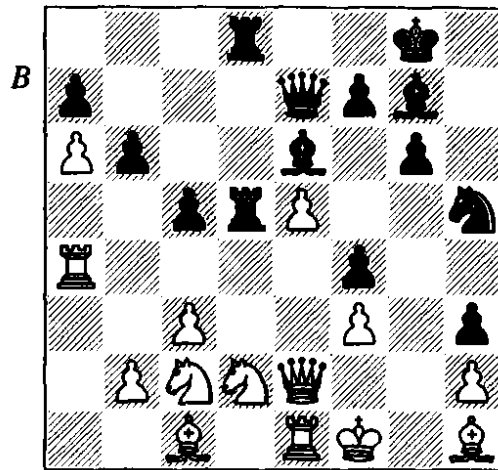
There is no need to rush, for example 23...♔g5+ 24 ♘g3 ♘xg3 25 hxg3 ♔xg3+ 26 ♖f1 would allow White an easier ride.

24 ♘d2 ♖ad8
 25 ♖f1 ♖d7
 26 ♖e1 ♖ed8
 27 e5

White tries to free his shackles, but passing may have been a healthier option.

27 ... ♖d5
 28 ♖a4 (D)

White plans to meet 28...♖xe5 with 29 ♖e4, but now Black has a little combination to recuperate some of his material.



28 ... ♖xd2!
 29 ♖xd2 ♖b3
 30 ♖a3 ♖xc2
 31 c4 ♖f5
 32 ♖c1?!

32 b4 could have been played immediately against which Khalifman planned 32...♖e8.

32 ... ♖e8
 33 b4 cxb4
 34 ♖b3 ♔c5
 35 ♖d2 ♖xe5
 36 ♖xb4 ♔c7
 37 ♔d1 ♔xc4+
 38 ♖g1 ♖d5

0-1

A fine performance from Black who punished White for his passive play.

13 The Veresov

The Veresov has never been very popular at grandmaster level, except for a brief period in the early 1980s when it was employed with some success by Tony Miles. At club level, though, it has always had its supporters as, like the Trompowsky and several other systems in this book, it avoids all the main lines and forces Black to do battle on what is likely to be unfamiliar territory.

As a young player I remember being taught never to block the c-pawn in Queen's Pawn openings (later I learnt about not blocking the f-pawn in King's Pawn openings but that's another story) as it then becomes very difficult to create active play. As a consequence of this lack of space on the queenside White nearly always plays for e4 in the Veresov. There are two main ways of doing so: Game 27 concentrates on the risky 4 f3 (after the recommended 3... ♖bd7), signalling White's intention to play e4 as soon as possible. This way of building up a strong centre would be the ideal plan for White, except for some cunning tactics at Black's disposal.

Game 28 deals with the solid 4 ♖f3, where White intends to develop his kingside before turning his attention to opening the centre. The minor 4th move options are examined in Game 27.

Game 27

Alburt – Tal

USSR Ch (Baku) 1972

1	d4	♖f6
2	♗c3	d5
3	♙g5	♖bd7

Black has a large number of playable alternatives (3...c6 and 3...♙f5 to name a couple) but I am going to concentrate on the solid 3... ♖bd7, partly because of its solidity (Veresov players tend to be a tricky, care-free bunch) and partly because I know it better than any of the other lines.

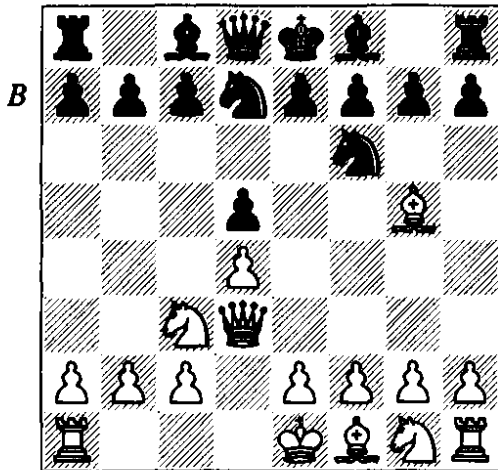
4 f3

White dreams of constructing a proud centre but ignoring one's development is a risky business. The sensible 4 ♖f3 is the subject of the next game whilst rarer alternatives are examined below:

1) 4 e4 (obviously very similar to the Blackmar-Diemer) 4... ♖xe4 5 ♖xe4 dxe4 6 ♙c4 h6 7 ♙h4 ♖f6 8 f3 ♗d6 9 c3 ♙e6 (it's hard to believe that White has anything for his pawn) 10 ♗a4+ c6 11 ♙xe6 ♗xe6 12 0-0-0 ♖d5 13 ♗e1 e3 14 ♙g3 b5 15 ♗c2 ♗d7 16 ♖e2 e6 17 ♖f4 ♙e7 18 ♖d3 (18 ♖xd5 cxd5 would win back the pawn but leave White positionally lost as Black's minority attack is going to become a full-scale assault on the white king) 18...0-0 19

♙f4 c5 20 dxc5 ♘xf4 21 ♘xf4
♙xc5 with a decisive advantage for
Black, G.Mohr-Lobron, Ljubljana
Vidmar mem 1989.

2) 4 ♖d3 (D) and now:



2a) 4...h6 5 ♙f4 c6 6 ♘f3 e6 7 a3
b5 8 ♘e5 ♘xe5 9 ♙xe5 b4 10 axb4
♙xb4 11 ♖g3 ♘e4! 12 ♖xg7 ♖f8
13 ♙f4 ♖b6 14 ♙d2 ♙xc3 15 bxc3
♖b2 16 ♖c1 a5! left White unable to
stop the bionic a-pawn in Porper-
Smirin, Tel Aviv 1991. An early ...c6
seems a good idea as if White castles
long (clearly one of the main objec-
tives behind 4 ♖d3) as Black will
have an automatic attack by means
of ...b5.

2b) 4...c5!? is also a pretty natu-
ral reaction. I have had a couple of
pleasant experiences with this line:

2b1) P.Moore-Gallagher, Jersey
1984 continued 5 ♘f3 cxd4 6 ♖xd4
e5!? 7 ♘xe5 ♙c5 8 ♖a4 ♖b6 9 0-0-0
d4 10 ♘c4 ♖e6 11 ♘b5 0-0 12 ♘c7
♖f5 13 ♙xf6 b5! (I don't remember
anything about this game except for
feeling pleased about this move) 14
♘xb5 (14 ♖xb5 ♖b8 also saves the
rook) 14...♖xf6 (Black has excel-
lent attacking chances in return for

his material investment) 15 e3 dxe3
16 fxe3 ♖b8 17 ♙d3 ♘e5 18 ♖hf1
♘xd3+ 19 cxd3 ♖c6! 20 ♘c3 ♖xg2
21 ♘e4? ♙xe3+ 22 ♖b1 ♙d4 23 b3
♙e6 24 ♘cd2 ♖fd8 25 ♖c1 f5 0-1.

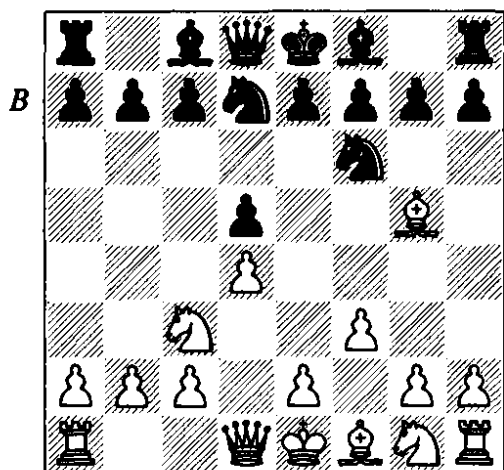
2b2) 5 e4 cxd4 6 ♖xd4 (Bellin
suggests 6 ♙xf6 ♘xf6 7 ♘xd5 ♘xd5
8 ♖b5+, but surely the ending aris-
ing after 8...♙d7 9 ♖xd5 ♙c6 10
♖xd8+ ♖xd8 is good for Black?)
6...e5 7 ♖a4 d4 8 ♘d5 (8 ♙xf6 ♖xf6
9 ♘d5 ♖d8 10 f4 would transpose to
'3a' in the note to Black's 4th move)
8...♙e7 9 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 10 ♙b5 0-0 11
♙xd7 ♙xd7 12 ♘xf6+ gxf6 13 ♖a3
♖c8 14 0-0-0 ♖c6 (the black king,
the one with the gaping holes around
it, is perfectly safe as White has
nothing to menace it with, whilst the
white king, the one with the plentiful
pawn cover, is about to be subjected
to a heavily co-ordinated attack from
the black artillery) 15 ♘e2 ♖c7 16
♖b1 ♖c8 17 ♖g3+ ♖f8 18 c3 ♙e6
19 a3 ♖b6 and the game didn't last
much longer, Richmond-Gallagher,
Nottingham 1987.

3) 4 e3 normally transposes to
the next game after a subsequent
♘f3, but there is one independent line
involving an early f4 by White, e.g.
4...g6 5 ♙d3 ♙g7 6 ♖d2 0-0 7 f4!?
c5! 8 ♘f3 b6 (Black plans ...♙b7
and ...♘e4) 9 ♘e5 ♙b7 10 ♖d1 (10
0-0 ♘e4! 11 ♙xe4 dxe4 12 ♘xd7
♖xd7 13 ♘e2 ♙a6! wins a pawn as
14 c3 loses to 14...h6 15 ♙h4 ♖g4!)
and now:

3a) Ermenkov-Grivas, Sofia 1986
continued 10...♘e8 11 0-0 ♘d6 12
♙h4 ♖c8 13 ♘b5! ♘xb5 14 ♙xb5
♘xe5 15 fxe5 with rough equality.

3b) It may be possible for Black to try **10...cxd4** **11 exd4** ♖e4 **12** ♗xe4 **dxe4** **13** ♙c4 ♗xe5 and, after either recapture, **14...♙c7**.

Now we return to the main line after **4 f3** (D).



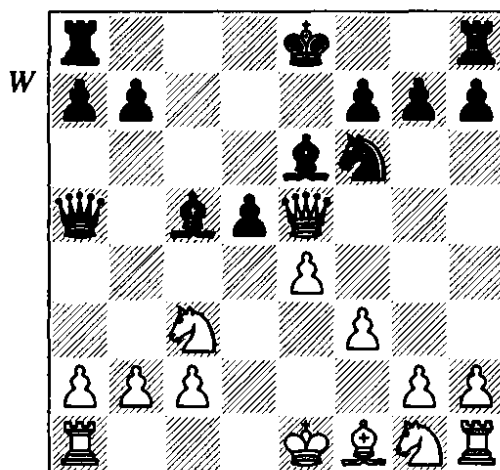
4 ... c6

Again Black has the choice between ...c6 and ...c5. The former solidifies d5, provides the option of playing ...b5 and opens a path for the queen to b6 or a5 from where it can harass the white queenside. The latter, which is considered below, is a more direct attempt to punish White for taking liberties such as **4 f3**. After **4...c5** White has three options:

1) **5 e3** (rather inconsistent) **5...e6** **6 a3** (White fears ...cxd4 followed by ...♙b4) **6...a6** **7** ♙d2 **b5** **8** ♗h3 ♙a5 **9** ♗e4 ♙c7 **10** ♙f4 ♙c6 **11** ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 with an active game for Black, Sibilio-Gallagher, Chiasso 1990.

2) **5 dxc5 ♙a5** (5...e6 is not mentioned by theory but it deserves serious consideration, e.g. **6 e4** ♙xc5 **7** exd5 ♙b6 **8** ♗a4 ♙a5+ **9** c3 ♙xg1 **10** ♙xg1 and now **10...b5** is a very risky way to win a piece, but the alternative **10...♗xd5** is much safer;

perhaps the critical line is **6 b4 b6** **7** e4) **6** ♙xf6 ♗xf6 **7** ♙d4 (7 e4 should be met by **7...e6**) **7...e5!**? (a similar sacrifice to the one seen above in Moore-Gallagher) **8** ♙xe5+ ♙e6 **9** e4 ♙xc5 (D) and now:



2a) White was destroyed in the game Wockenfuss-Timman, Bad Lauterberg 1977 after **10 ♙b5+?!** (an unfortunate square for the bishop) **10...♙f8** **11** 0-0-0 ♙e3+ **12** ♙b1 d4 **13** ♙d6+ ♙g8 **14** b4 ♙a3 **15** ♗d5 ♗xd5 **16** exd5 ♙f5 **17** ♗e2 a5 **18** ♗xd4 axb4 **19** ♙c4 ♙xd4! **20** ♙xd4 ♙xc2+! **21** ♙xc2 b3+ 0-1.

2b) **10 0-0-0 0-0** (10...0-0-0!?) **11** exd5 ♙xd5 and now White has a choice of captures on d5:

2b1) **12** ♙xd5 ♗xd5 **13** ♙xd5 ♙ad8 **14** ♙b3 when several sources give the fascinating line **14...♙e3+** **15** ♙b1 ♙xc3!?, which I believe leads to a draw, but no-one mentions the simple **14...♙xg1!** **15** ♙xg1 ♙g5+ **16** ♙b1 ♙e3 when White can resign.

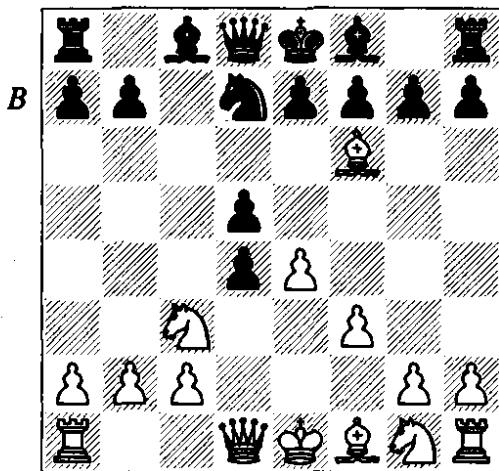
2b2) **12** ♗xd5 ♗xd5 **13** ♙xd5? ♙e3+ **14** ♙b1 ♙ad8! wins for Black, but **13 ♙xd5 ♙xa2** is the critical line. A possible continuation: **14** ♙xc5 ♙a1+ (14...♙fe8 **15** ♙a5!) **15** ♙d2

♖fe8! 16 ♖g3 ♖xf1 with an ongoing attack for Black.

3) 5 e4 cxd4 leads to a further branch:

3a) 6 ♖xd4 e5 7 ♖a4 d4 8 ♔xf6 (8 ♘d5 ♔e7 is favourable for Black) 8... ♖xf6 (8... gxf6) 9 ♘d5 ♖d8 10 f4 ♔c5 11 ♘f3 0-0 12 0-0-0 a6 13 fxe5 ♘xe5! 14 ♘xd4 ♔g4 15 ♖d2 ♖h4 with a very dangerous initiative for Black, Shteinberg-Anka, Balatonbereny 1993.

3b) 6 ♔xf6 (D) when:



3b1) 6... dxc3 7 ♔xc3 dxe4 8 fxe4 is supposed to be better for White. The game D.McDonald-Gallagher, Hastings 1991, though, was quickly decided in Black's favour: 8... e6 9 ♘f3 f6! 10 ♔c4 (10 ♖d2) 10... ♖b6 11 ♘d4 ♘e5 12 ♔b5+ ♔f7 13 ♖e2 a6 14 ♔a4 ♔b4! 15 0-0 ♔c5 16 ♖ad1 ♖d8 17 ♖d2 ♘c4 18 ♖d3 ♘e5 19 ♖d2 ♘c4 20 ♖d3 ♖xd4! 21 ♔xd4 ♘xb2! 22 ♔e8+ (22 ♔xc5 ♖xc5+ 23 ♖d4 ♘xa4!) 22... ♔xe8 23 ♔xc5 ♖xc5+ 24 ♖d4 ♘a4! with a decisive material advantage.

3b2) 6... ♘xf6 is more respectable. After 7 ♖xd4 dxe4 8 ♔b5+ (8 ♖xd8+ ♔xd8 9 0-0-0+ ♔c7 10 ♔c4

e6 11 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 12 fxe4 is usually assessed as = but I would have thought that Black's bishops count for something) 8... ♔d7 9 0-0-0 ♔xb5 10 ♘xb5 ♖xd4 11 ♖xd4 e5 and now 12 ♘c7+ ♔e7 13 ♘d5+ is equal according to Alburst whilst 12 ♖c4 ♖d8 is more difficult to judge.

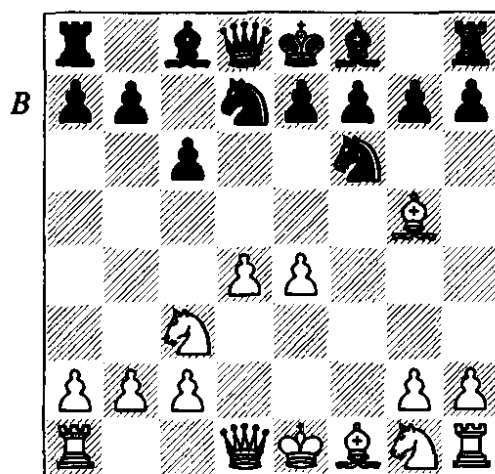
5 e4

5 ♖d2, preparing to castle queenside, can be met by 5... ♖a5 when the game is liable to transpose into the note to White's 6th move after 6 e4, or perhaps by 5... h6 6 ♔h4 e6 when 7 e4? fails to 7... ♘xe4!

5 ... dxe4

6 fxe4 (D)

In the game Mestel-Webb, Birmingham 1975, White tried 6 ♖d2, but after 6... ♖a5 7 ♔xf6 (7 fxe4 e5 8 dxe5 ♘xe5 9 0-0-0 ♔e6 is also favourable for Black, but 7 ♘xe4 would probably maintain the equilibrium) 7... ♘xf6 8 fxe4 e5 9 dxe5 ♘g4 10 ♔e2 ♘xe5 11 ♘f3 ♔e7 12 0-0 ♘xf3+ 13 ♖xf3 ♔e6 Black had a clear advantage.



6 ... e5!

Of course Black didn't concede the centre on his previous move

without having something concrete in mind. **6...♖b6!?** is also possible but after **7 ♖d2** Black should play **7...e5** rather than grabbing the b-pawn.

7 dxe5

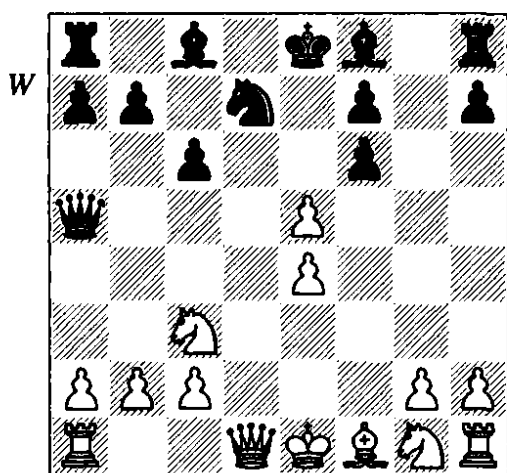
7 d5 ♖c5 and **7 ♘f3 exd4 8 ♘xd4 ♖b4 9 ♘f5 0-0 10 ♖d3 ♘e5 11 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 12 0-0 ♖xf5 13 ♖xf5 ♖e7**, Schiller-Ligterink, Reykjavik 1986, are both good for Black.

7 ... ♖a5

8 exf6?!

Although the text ensures that White will remain a pawn up for the time being, Black is allowed to dominate the dark squares. There are a couple of alternatives:

1) **8 ♖xf6 gxf6 (D)** and now:



1a) **9 exf6 ♘xf6 10 ♖d4 ♖g7 11 0-0-0 0-0 12 ♖a4? ♖xa4 13 ♘xa4 ♘xe4** was the ridiculous continuation of Philippe-Kennefick, Haifa OL 1976. In view of the threat of **...♘d5** White probably has to play something like **12 ♘ge2**, which can be met by **12...♖e6** intending to play a rook to d8, or **12 ♖d2** when **12...♖e6** is sensible but the insane **12...♘xe4!?** should not be ruled out

of contention as after **13 ♘xe4 ♖xa2 14 ♖f4 ♖a1+ 15 ♘d2 ♖xb2** White's king is very exposed and Black's a-pawn could easily cost White a considerable amount of material.

1b) **9 e6 fxe6 10 ♖c4** (perhaps White had intended **10 ♖g4** but after **10...♘e5 11 ♖h5+ ♘e7** he has to lose further time with his queen in view of the threatened **12...♘d3+**) **10...♖b4 11 ♘e2 ♘e5 12 ♖b3 ♖g8** (**12...♖d7**, intending **...0-0-0**, is a suggested improvement by Gufeld) **13 a3! ♖xc3+ (13...♖c5) 14 ♘xc3 ♖xg2 15 ♖h5+ ♖g6 16 ♖h3!** (not **16 ♖xh7 ♘f3+ 17 ♘f2 ♖g5! 18 ♘xf3 ♖h6!**) **16...♘g4 17 0-0-0! ♘f2 18 ♖xh7 ♖g5+ 19 ♘b1 ♖g7 20 ♖h8+ ♖g8 21 ♖h7 ♖g7** (Black deemed **21...♘xd1 22 ♖xd1 ♖g7 23 ♖h5+ ♖g6 24 ♖c5** to be too risky) **22 ♖h8+ ♖g8 1/2-1/2** Rossetto-Gufeld, Camaguey 1974.

2) **8 ♘f3 ♘xe4 9 ♖d2 ♘xd2 10 ♖xd2 ♖b4 11 0-0-0 0-0 12 a3 ♖xc3 13 ♖xc3 ♖xc3 14 bxc3** is considered to be an equal ending by *ECO*. White has some activity to compensate for his wrecked pawn structure but I feel that the long-term chances must be with Black.

8 ... ♖xg5

9 fxg7 ♖xg7

10 ♖d2

10 ♘f3 ♖e3+ 11 ♖e2 ♖xc3+ 12 bxc3 ♖xc3+ 13 ♘d2 ♘e5 14 0-0 ♖e6 15 ♘f3 ♖d8 16 ♖e1 ♘xf3+ 17 ♖xf3 ♖xe1 18 ♖fxe1 ♖d2 19 ♖e2 ♖xe2 20 ♖xe2 ♘e7 21 ♘f2 ♖g8 22 h4 ♘d6 was a nearly hopeless ending for White, Elina-Chiburdanidze USSR 1976.

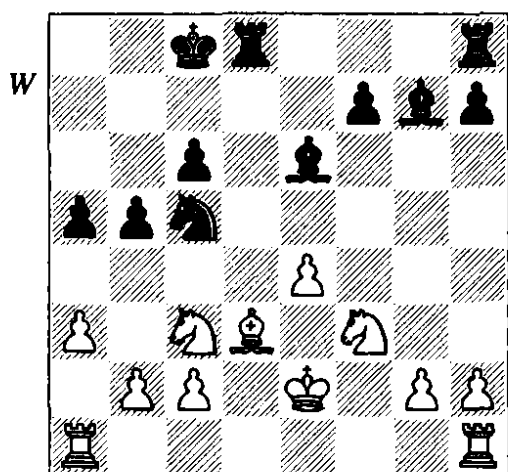
10 ... ♖xd2+

In an ideal world Black would probably choose to keep the queens on but he is not willing to waste time avoiding an exchange as his initiative and control of the dark squares will persist into the ending.

11 ♔xd2 ♘c5
12 ♙d3 ♙e6
13 ♘f3 0-0-0
14 ♔e2 b5

Black could have played 14...♞he8 at once but he prefers to seize some additional space on the queenside.

15 a3 a5 (D)



16 h3

White probably arrived at this strange move after examining something like 16 ♞hd1 ♞he8 17 ♔f2 ♙g4, which does indeed look good for Black.

16 ... ♞he8
17 ♞hd1 f5!
18 e5

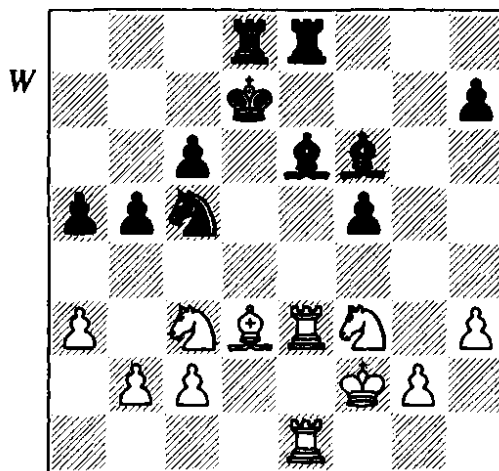
Forced, as 18 exf5 ♙xf5+ 19 ♔f2 ♙xd3 20 cxd3 ♘xd3+ and 18 ♘g5 ♙xc3 19 bxc3 fxe4 are both excellent for Black.

18 ... ♘d7!
19 ♞e1 ♙xe5

19...♘xe5 was equally good.

20 ♔f2 ♙f6
21 ♞e3 ♘c5
22 ♞ae1 ♔d7! (D)

Tal, not surprisingly, avoided the trap 22...f4? 23 ♞xe6! ♘xe6 24 ♙f5 ♔d7 25 ♘e4! after which White wins material.



23 ♘xb5?

White's position was poor but there was no need for immediate capitulation.

23 ... f4!
24 ♞e5

24 ♞xe6 ♘xd3+ 25 cxd3 ♞xe6 is no improvement.

24 ... ♘xd3+
25 cxd3 cxb5
26 ♞xb5 ♞b8
27 ♘e5+ ♔d6
28 ♞xa5 ♙h4+
0-1

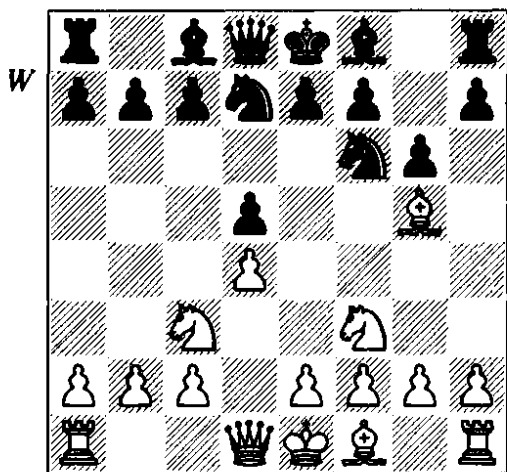
Game 28

Miles – Speelman
London 1982

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘c3 d5
3 ♙g5 ♘bd7

4 Qf3 g6 (D)

Here, too, Black has a big choice, but the King's Indian approach seems the most logical to recommend to King's Indian players.



5 e3

There are a couple of alternative ideas:

1) 5 Wd2 (intending Qh6) and now:

1a) 5... h6 6 Qf4 c6 7 0-0-0 Qg7 8 h3 ? (better is 8 Qe5 with about equal chances) 8... Qe4 ! 9 Qxe4 dxe4 10 Qh2 f5 11 h4 Qb6 with advantage to Black, Zorigt-Olsson, Lugano OL 1968.

1b) 5... Qe4 !? looks interesting.

2) 5 Wd3 (aiming for a quick e4) 5... Qg7 6 e4 dxe4 7 Qxe4 0-0 and now:

2a) 8 Qxf6+ Qxf6 9 Qe2 c5 ! 10 dxc5 Wa5+ 11 c3 Wxc5 12 0-0 Qe6 13 Wd4 Wa5 14 a3 h6 ! 15 Qxf6 ! (15 Qf4 Qd5 ! \bar{f}) 15... Qxf6 16 We3 Qg7 17 Qd4 Qd5 was very satisfactory for Black in Smyslov-Gufeld, New York 1989.

2b) 8 0-0-0 Qxe4 9 Wxe4 Qf6 10 Qxf6 (White was probably frightened of 10... Wd5 if he moved his

queen) 10... Qxf6 11 Qe5 Qe6 (I prefer the more flexible 11... c6) 12 f4 c6 13 h4 Wd5 14 Wxd5 cxd5 15 Qd3 Qxe5 16 dxe5 Qg4 with an equal game, Meštrović-Brenjo, Yugoslav Ch 1991.

5 ... Qg7

6 Qd3

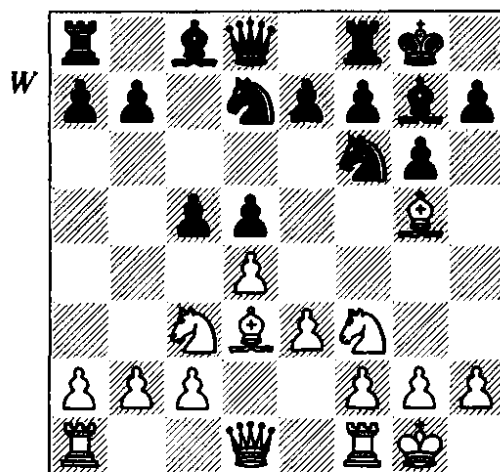
As White usually aims to play e4 as soon as possible this is the most natural move.

6 Qe2 is the only serious alternative. After 6... 0-0 7 0-0 b6 8 Qe5 Qb7 9 Qf3 ?! Qe4 10 Qxd7 Qxc3 11 Wd2 Wxd7 12 Wxc3 c5 13 Wd2 f6 ! 14 Qh4 cxd4 15 exd4 e5 Black had the better game in Miagmasuren-Browne, Lucerne OL 1982. 9 f4 has been suggested as an improvement, upon which 9... Qe8 !? is worth considering.

6 ... 0-0

7 0-0 c5 (D)

Better than 7... b6 or 7... c6 which appear from time to time.



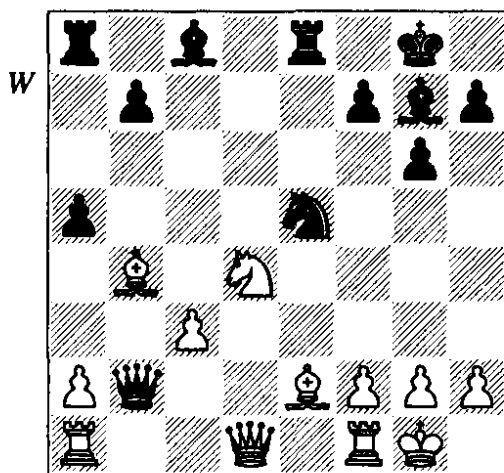
8 Qe1

Or:

1) 8 Qxf6 ? Qxf6 9 dxc5 Wa5 10 Qb5 a6 11 Qbd4 (11 b4 Wxb4 12 Qc7 Qa7 !) 11... Wxc5 and with his

pair of bishops and strong centre Black can already claim a sizeable plus, Traudes-Gallagher, Liechtenstein 1996.

2) 8 $\text{d}e5$ (a more serious alternative but Black still seems to be able to get a good game) 8... cxd4 9 exd4 dxe5 10 dxe5 $\text{d}g4$ 11 $\text{e}2$ $\text{d}4!$ 12 $\text{d}b5$ (12 $\text{e}xg4$ dxc3 13 bxc3 $\text{e}xe5$ 14 $\text{e}f3$ $\text{c}c7!$ is good for Black according to Browne) 12... dxe5 13 dxd4 $\text{c}b6!$ 14 $\text{c}3$ (14 $\text{e}xe7$ $\text{e}e8$ 15 $\text{e}a3$ $\text{e}d8$ 16 $\text{c}3$ $\text{d}c6$ is an edge for Black) 14... $\text{c}xb2$ 15 $\text{e}xe7$ $\text{e}e8$ 16 $\text{e}b4$ $\text{a}5$ (D) and now:



2a) Peters-Browne, USA Ch 1981 continued 17 $\text{c}b3$ $\text{c}xb3$ 18 axb3 $\text{e}g4!$ 19 $\text{e}c5!$ $\text{e}xe2$ 20 dxe2 $\text{d}f3+$ 21 gxf3 $\text{e}xe2$ 22 $\text{f}c1$ $\text{e}b2$ 23 $\text{e}a3$ $\text{e}c8!$ 24 $\text{e}xa5$ $\text{e}xb3$ 25 $\text{c}4$ $\text{e}b2!$ 26 $\text{e}b1$ $\text{b}6$ 27 $\text{e}b5?!$ (27 $\text{e}a2$ was the best chance) 27... $\text{e}xb5$ 28 cxb5 $\text{e}xc5$ 29 $\text{e}xb2$ $\text{c}f8$ with a winning ending for Black.

2b) 17 $\text{e}b1$ is supposed to be a significant improvement since after 17... $\text{c}xa2$ 18 $\text{e}a1$ Black is supposed to avoid 18... $\text{c}d5$ (18... $\text{c}b2$ =) on account of 19 $\text{d}b5$. I don't really understand this as after 19... $\text{c}xd1$ 20

$\text{e}xd1$ (20 $\text{e}fxd1$ is even worse as the bishop is *en prise* after 20... $\text{d}c6!$) 20... $\text{e}d7!$ (20... $\text{d}c6!?$) 21 $\text{d}c7$ axb4 22 $\text{e}xa8$ $\text{e}xa8$ 23 $\text{d}xa8$ bxc3 White still has a lot of work to do before he can claim equality.

8 ... $\text{b}6$

The text has been Black's most common choice but it can easily lead to mass simplification. If you are looking for a sharper struggle then 8... $\text{h}6$ 9 $\text{e}h4$ (9 $\text{e}f4$ – but nobody plays it) 9... $\text{e}6$ looks worth a try. For example:

1) 10 $\text{e}4?$ cxd4 11 dxd4 $\text{c}b6!$ 12 $\text{d}b3$ dxe4 13 $\text{dxe4}?$ (13 $\text{e}xf6$ f) 13... dxe4 14 $\text{e}xe4$ $\text{f}5$ 15 $\text{e}e3$ $\text{g}5$ and Black picked up a bishop for very little, Schumacher-Gallagher, Liechtenstein 1990.

2) 10 $\text{h}3$ $\text{c}b6$ 11 $\text{e}b1$ $\text{a}6$ with a couple of examples:

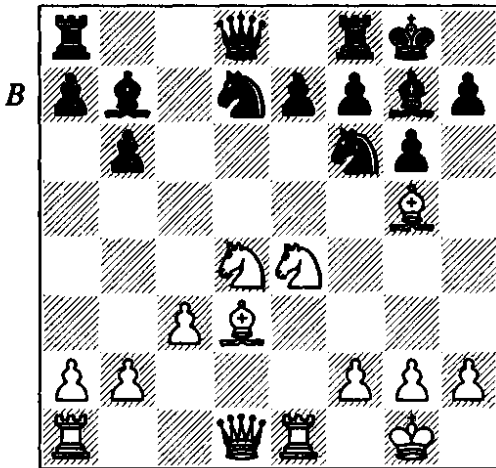
2a) 12 $\text{e}f1$ $\text{c}c6!$ (preparing to advance on the queenside) 13 $\text{d}e5$ dxe5 14 dxe5 $\text{d}d7$ 15 $\text{f}4$ $\text{b}5$ 16 $\text{c}d2$ $\text{e}b7$ 17 $\text{d}d1$ $\text{f}6$ 18 exf6 dxf6 19 $\text{e}d3$ $\text{c}h7$ 20 $\text{d}f2$ $\text{e}5!$ 21 fxe5 $\text{d}d7$ 22 $\text{c}3$ dxe5 with an excellent position for Black, Mariasin-Vorotnikov, USSR 1976.

2b) 12 $\text{c}d2$ $\text{d}h5$ (12... $\text{c}c6$, as above, looks better) 13 $\text{g}4$ $\text{d}hf6$ 14 $\text{b}4?!$ (Smith and Hall, in *The Veresov Attack*, Chess Digest 1994, claim that 14 $\text{h}4$ gives White the advantage; the only problem with this is that there is already a bishop on $\text{h}4!$; after 14 $\text{e}g3$, though, it's hard to see what Black has gained by playing ... $\text{d}h5$) 14... cxb4 15 $\text{d}a4$ $\text{c}c6$ 16 $\text{c}xb4$ $\text{b}5$ 17 $\text{d}c3$ $\text{d}e4$ 18 $\text{e}xe4$ dxe4 19 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{f}5$ 20 gxf5 exf5 21 $\text{a}4$ $\text{g}5!$ 22

axb5 ♖g6! 23 ♔g3 f4 with a clear advantage to Black, Veresov-Kots, USSR Cup 1970.

- 9 e4 dxe4
 10 ♖xe4 ♔b7
 11 ♖xf6+

11 c3 is a more critical move. After 11...cxd4 12 ♖xd4 (D) there is:



1) 12...♞c8?! 13 ♖e2 ♖e5 (the alternative 13...♖c5 is probably better) 14 ♔c2 ♖c4 15 ♞ad1 ♖c7 16 ♖b5 ♖b8 17 ♔xf6! ♔xf6 18 ♖xf6+ exf6 19 ♔b3 ♖e5 20 f4 ♖c6 21 ♖d6 ♞c7 22 ♖e8! ♞xe8 23 ♞xe8+ ♖xe8 24 ♖xe8 ♞e7 25 ♖d6 ♔a8 26 ♖xf7! ♖g7 27 ♖d8 ♖xd8 28 ♞xd8 ♔c6 29 ♖f2 +- Miles-Andersson, London 1982.

2) 12...♖xe4 13 ♔xe4 ♔xe4 14 ♞xe4 ♖f6 15 ♞e1 ♖d5 16 ♖f3 ♖b7, Plaskett-Hazai, Maribor 1985, is reputed to be fractionally better for White.

3) 12...♖c5 (probably best) and now:

3a) 13 ♔xf6 exf6 14 ♖xc5 bxc5 15 ♖b3 ♖b6 (Black's position is dynamic enough to withstand the deficiencies in his pawn structure) 16 ♖e2 f5 17 ♞ad1 f4 18 ♖e7 ♞ac8 19

♔c4 ♞c7 20 ♖d6 ♖xd6 21 ♞xd6 a4 1/2-1/2 Veresov-Shagalovich, Byelorussian Ch 1957.

3b) White is not forced to exchange on f6 as after 13 ♖xc5 bxc5 14 ♖b3 ♖d5, there is the saving resource 15 ♖f3! when 15...♖xf3 16 gxf3 ♔xf3 17 ♞xe7, 15...♖xb3 16 axb3 ♔xf3 17 gxf3, 15...♖xg5 16 ♖xb7, 15...c4 16 ♔xc4! and finally 15...♖d7 16 ♖xc5! all seem to be in White's favour. Black should probably play 14...♖c7 with a reasonable game.

- 11 ... exf6
 12 ♔h4

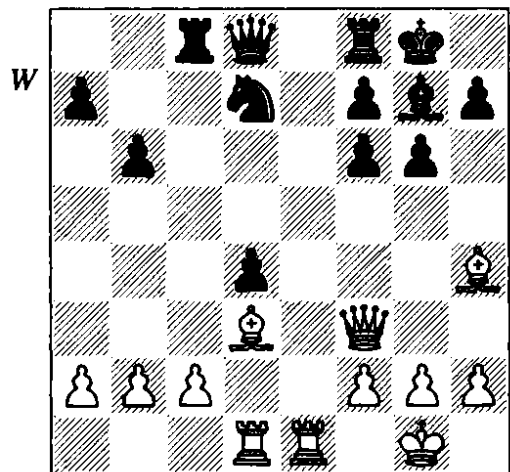
12 ♔e3 f5 also gives Black good play.

- 12 ... ♔xf3!
 13 ♖xf3 cxd4
 14 ♞ad1

14 ♔b5 is well by 14...♞ac8 15 ♞e2 ♞c5!.

- 14 ... ♞c8 (D)

Obviously not 14...♖e5? 15 ♞xe5. White now came to the conclusion that drastic action was required to avoid ending up in an inferior position.



- 15 ♔a6! ♞xc2

16	♖xd4	♘e5
17	♚d1	♚c7
18	f4!	♘g4!
19	♚xg4	f5
20	♚d1	♚c5
21	♗f2	♖xf2!
22	♖c4!	♖d2+

23 ♖xc5 1/2-1/2

After a long sequence of forced moves the players agreed to a draw. Black's extra pawn is meaningless but it would still have been tempting to try a few more moves starting with 23...♗d4+.

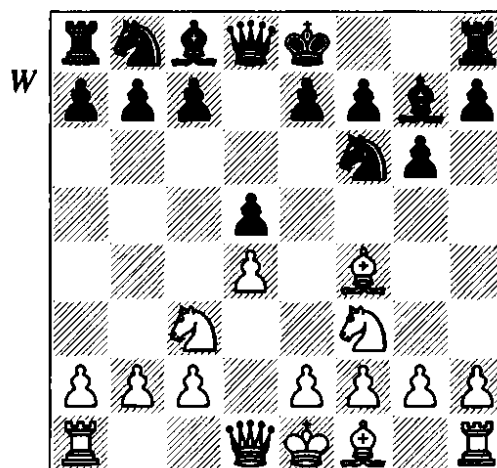
14 The Barry Attack

The Barry Attack is characterised by the moves 1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 ♘c3 d5 (Pirc players can of course play 3...♗g7 or 3...d6) 4 ♗f4. The main drawback, from White's point of view, is that blocking the c-pawn, as in its close relation the Veresov, can easily lead to a lack of space on the queenside.

The variation enjoyed a brief spell of popularity a few years ago when White won several games by marching his h-pawn up the board. This plan was most effective when Black developed quietly so I am recommending a system of defence based on an early ...c5 which rules out such crude behaviour as the centre will be too tense for wing attacks. The Barry Attack has never acquired a great standing in the chess world and in fact earned its name as even its main practitioners (including Grandmasters Hebden, Hodgson and Norwood) considered it to be a load of old Barry.

Game 29
Josephs – Hebden
Sheffield 1991

1	d4	♘f6
2	♘f3	g6
3	♘c3	d5
4	♗f4	♗g7 (D)
5	e3	



5 ♗d2, intending ♗h6, does tend to invite 5...♘e4 which seems to give Black a comfortable game. After 6 ♘xe4 dxe4 we have a couple of examples:

1) 7 ♘g5 h6!? (there is also nothing wrong with 7...♗xd4 =) 8 ♘xe4 g5 9 ♗e5 f6 10 ♗g3 f5 11 ♘xg5! hxg5 12 ♗xg5 ♗xd4 (12...0-0 13 0-0-0 would be risky for Black) 13 ♗g6+ ♔f8 14 ♖d1 ♗b4+ 15 c3 ♗xc3+ 16 bxc3 ♗xc3+ 17 ♖d2 ♗c1+ 1/2-1/2 Dolmatov-Gavrikov, Sverdlovsk 1984.

2) 7 ♘e5 ♗e6 8 e3 ♘d7 9 ♘c4 0-0 10 ♗e2 ♗xc4! (a well-timed exchange which frees Black's game) 11 ♗xc4 e5 12 dxe5 ♘xe5 13 ♗b3 a5 14 a4 ♘d7! 15 0-0-0 ♘c5 16 ♗xd8 ♖fxd8 17 ♗g5 ♖e8 18 ♖d5 ♗f8 19 ♖hd1 ♘xb3+ 20 cxb3 ♗d6 with equality, Yusupov-Kasparov, Belfort 1988.

5	...	0-0
6	♗e2	c5!?

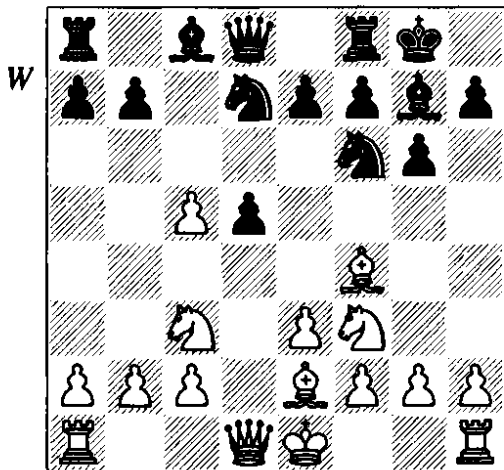
Systems with an early ... g4 are also not bad but I like this temporary pawn sacrifice which gives Black the chance to take over the initiative on the queenside. Another point in its favour is that it has been the choice of leading 'Barry' exponent Mark Hebden whenever he has been faced by his own weapon.

7 dxc5

7 e5 has also been tried, one example being Rogers-J.Polgar, Brno 1991 which continued 7... c6 8 0-0 f5 9 dxc5 (White could find nothing better than this capture as 9 f3 cxd4 10 exd4 e4 looks pleasant for Black and other moves are not very constructive) 9... a5 ! 10 b5 (10 xd5 ? xd5 11 xd5 xe5 12 xe5 fd8 loses a piece) 10... e4 ! 11 xc6 (taking on d5 would still lose material) 11...bxc6 12 d4 xc5 13 xf5 gxf5 14 c3 e5 and Black's enormous centre gave her the advantage.

7 ... bd7 (D)

7... a5 has been played more frequently, but in my view it is more logical to aim for ... xc5 than ... xc5 .



8 0-0

8 xd5 xd5 9 xd5 xb2 10 b1 a5 + will cost White his right to castle as 11 d2 f6 followed by 12... c3 would leave him in an awkward pin. After 11 f1 , Wockenfuss-Hebden, Ostend 1992 continued 11... g7 12 b5 ?! (12 b5 can be met by 12... c3 , but the text looks even worse) 12... f6 13 b3 e4 14 b4 xa2 ! 15 d3 a5 16 b6 xc5 ! 17 e5 xd3 18 cxd3 f6 19 a1 e5 20 b3 + xb3 21 xb3 b5! and Black soon won.

I haven't seen any examples of 8 b5 but one way of meeting this would be to play 8...a6 9 c7 a7 (9...e5 is tempting, but after 10 xe5 xe5 11 xa8 xf3 + 12 xf3 a5 + 13 c3 xc5 14 d4 ! the white knight will escape) 10 xd5 xd5 11 xd5 xb2 12 b1 a5 + with similar play to the note above.

8 ... xc5

9 e5

White pins his hopes on restraining the black centre by blockading it on the dark squares, at least until he has had time to play c2-c4. A difficult task!

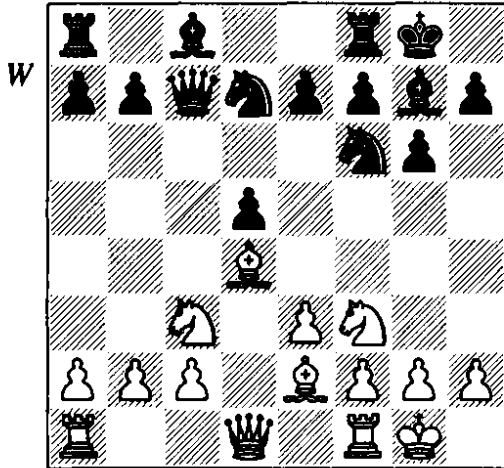
The slow 9 h3 was featured in the game Izeta-Khalifman, Dos Hermanas 1993, with the idea of preventing the annoying ... g4 . However, after 9...b6 10 b5 b7 11 e5 a6 12 bd4 cd7 13 h2 c8 (preventing c2-c4) 14 c3 e4 , with ...e5 to follow, Black had already assumed control.

9 ... g4 !?

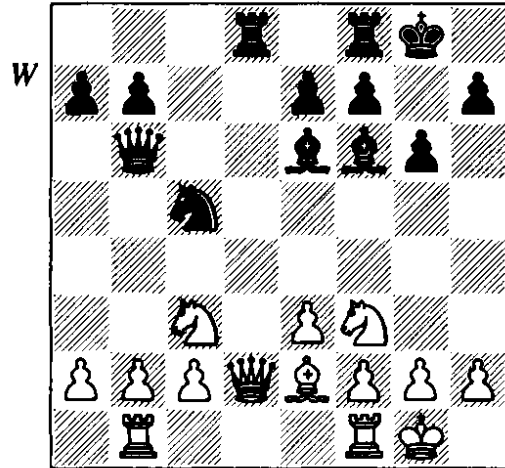
This shows good understanding of the position. Once the knight on f3

has disappeared White will have little hope of controlling the centre.

9...♘cd7 is also quite interesting and has in fact been played more often than the text. After 10 ♙d4 ♚c7 (D) there is:



♘dx2 { 13 ♘cx2 is rather similar } 13...♚fd8 14 ♚c4 ♚ac8 gives Black good play, as does 12 ♚c4!? ♙e6 13 ♘d5 ♙xd5 14 ♚xd5 ♚fd8 15 ♚c4 ♚ac8) 12...♙e6!? 13 ♚d2 ♚ad8 (D) White has several tries:



1) 11 ♘b5?! ♚b8 12 c4 (the point behind ♘b5) 12...dxc4! 13 ♙xc4 a6 and I can't see how White can avoid material loss, e.g. 14 ♘a3 (14 ♘c3 e5) 14...e5! 15 ♙c3 b5 and White has nothing better than the sad 16 ♙b4.

2) 11 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 12 ♙xg7 ♘xe3 13 fxe3 ♙xg7 14 ♚d4+ f6 followed by ...e5 should be quite good for Black although White may have some slight attacking chances.

10 h3

On 10 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 11 ♚xd5:

1) 11...♙xc3 is probably enough for equality after 12 ♚xd8 ♚xd8 13 bxc3 ♘a4 but 12 ♚xc5 ♙xb2 13 ♚ab1 ♙f6 (13...b6? 14 ♚b4) 14 ♚xb7 ♚c8 (14...♚c8 15 ♚xb7 ♚fxc8 16 ♙d3 is probably tenable) 15 ♚b4! ♙xf3 16 ♙xf3 ♚xc2 17 ♚xa7 leaves Black fighting for a draw.

2) 11...♚b6 is more to the point. After 12 ♚ab1 (12 ♘d4 ♙xe2 13

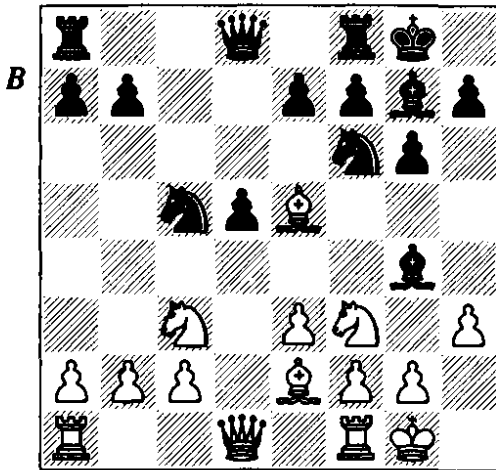
2a) 14 ♘d4 ♙c8! (the threat of 15...e5 is surprisingly awkward to meet whilst the reason for playing 13...♚ad8, as opposed to the more natural 13...♚fd8, is now revealed: in the latter case the rooks would have been disconnected after the bishop retreat) 15 ♙f3 (15 ♚c1 ♞) 15...e5 16 ♘d5 ♚xd5 17 ♙xd5 exd4 18 cxd4 ♘e6 19 c3 ♚a5! 20 ♙xe6 (otherwise White will lose his d-pawn, e.g. 20 ♙e4 ♙xd4 21 b4 ♚g5!) 20...♙xe6 and Black's bishop pair is in no way inferior to the rook and pawns.

2b) 14 ♚c1 ♙xc3 15 bxc3 ♚a5 16 ♘d4 ♚xc3 17 ♘xe6 and now 17...fxe6 is not bad for Black while 17...♘xe6 18 ♚xb7 ♚d2 also deserves consideration.

2c) 14 ♚e1 ♙f5 15 ♚c1 (15 ♙d1 is very passive) 15...♙xc3 16 bxc3 ♚a5 and again Black has no problems.

2d) 14 ♙d3 ♜c4 15 ♞e1 and now 15... ♜xc3 16 ♞xc3 (16 bxc3 ♞a5) 16... ♜xa2 wins the pawn back with a roughly level game, while pressure-increasing moves such as 15... $\text{♞d7}!$? deserve consideration.

Now we return to the main line after 10 h3 (D):



10 ... ♜xf3
11 ♜xf3 e6

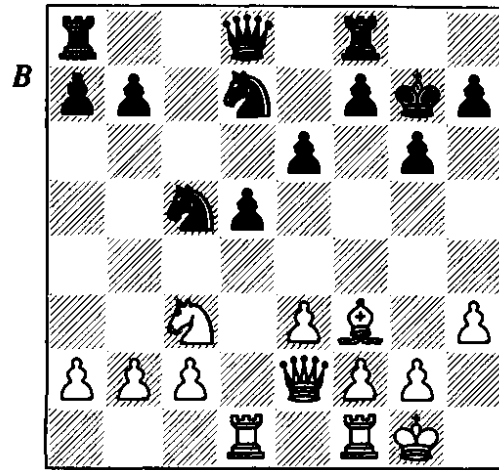
All schoolchildren (well, at least Russian schoolchildren) are taught not to block their c-pawn in queen's pawn openings and this position is a classic example; White needs to play c2-c4 to activate his pieces and challenge the black centre but with his knight on c3 this will take too long to arrange.

12 ♞e2 $\text{♞fd7}!$

Exchanging White's most active piece is a good idea, especially as Black's queen will be able to replace the bishop as guardian of the long diagonal.

13 ♜xg7 ♞xg7
14 ♞ad1 (D)

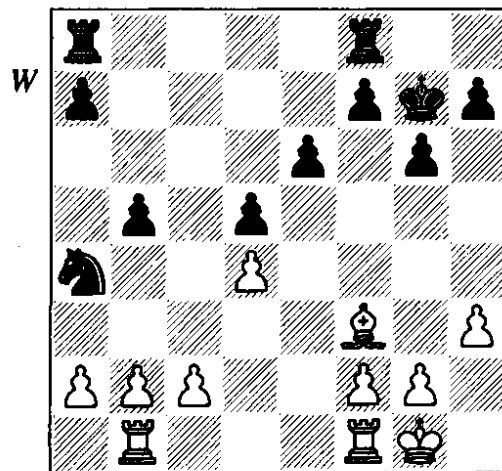
White hopes to equalise by playing e4, which would of course have been met by 14...d4 if played at once.



14 ... ♞f6
15 ♞d2

15 e4 is still met by 15...d4, e.g. 16 ♞b5 e5 17 ♞c7 ♞ac8 18 ♞d5 ♞d6 19 c3 ♞e6 with a fine game for Black as he will be soon able to exchange off the strong knight on d5. White can easily drift into a very bad position, for example 20 ♞d2 ♞b6 21 ♞fd1 ♞xd5 22 exd5 dxc3 23 bxc3 ♞c5 would be positionally lost.

15 ... ♞b6
16 ♞d4 ♞xd4
17 exd4 ♞ca4
18 ♞xa4 ♞xa4
19 ♞b1 b5 (D)

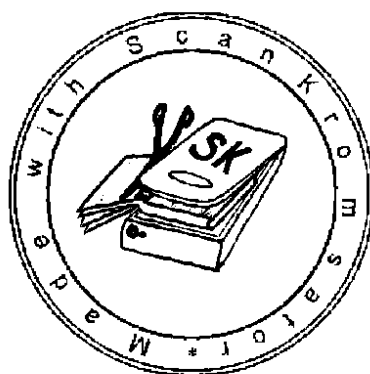


Black has the advantage as he has something to undertake, namely a minority attack on the queenside,

whilst White has no active ideas of his own. With the centre blocked Black's knight is also the superior minor piece.

The remaining moves were 20 c3 ♖fc8 21 ♙d1 ♜b6 22 ♙e2 a6 23 ♖fc1 ♞c6 24 ♚f1 ♜c8 25 ♙d3 ♜d6

26 ♚e2 g5 27 h4 h6 28 hxg5 hxg5 29 ♞h1 ♞b8 30 ♞h7+ ♚f6 31 a3 a5 32 f4 gxf4 33 ♞f1 b4 34 ♞xf4+ ♚e7 35 ♙g6 ♞f8 36 cxb4 axb4 37 axb4 ♞c4 38 ♙d3 ♞xb4 39 g4 e5 40 dxe5 ♞xf4 41 exd6+ ♚xd6 42 g5 ♚e5 43 ♞h5 ♚d4 0-1.



15 Blackmar-Diemer Gambit

I must confess that I had assumed this Gambit to be only playable against 1...d5, as after 1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘c3 d5 3 e4 Black can simply play 3...♗xe4. When Gary Lane's recent book, *The Blackmar-Diemer Gambit* (Batsford 1995) arrived the first thing I learnt was that this is called the Hubsch Gambit, while the second thing I learnt was that the Hubsch Gambit is not so bad and that Black can probably only obtain an equal game. As we are looking for more than this, the Blackmar-Diemer has to be accepted. After 3...dxe4 4 f3 exf3 5 ♗xf3 Black has a wide choice but my vote goes to 5...e6, the solid Euwe Defence.

The material below is not in the usual complete game format as I have been unable to locate a game that suits my purposes. In Lane's book, for example, Blackmar, Diemer and various others (of whom the most prominent is Diebert, who probably employed the Gambit so frequently as an attempt to have it renamed the Blackmar-Diebert Gambit perhaps, or more fittingly the Diemer-Diebert Gambit) score crushing victories against all-comers. At first I was a little intimidated by this and the thought of being bogged down in my final chapter for weeks was not a pleasant one. I even wondered if I might have to abandon this whole

project, bowing to the superiority of the Blackmar-Diemer Gambit. Happily, this nightmare scenario was averted as a close examination of the fine print in Lane's book revealed a number of areas where Black could fight for the advantage.

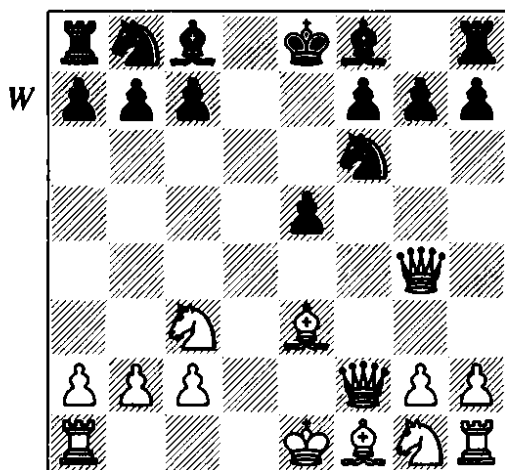
1	d4	♗f6
2	♘c3	d5
3	e4	dx e4
4	f3	ex f3
5	♗xf3	

In return for his central pawn White has received a tempo for development and some vague attacking chances due to the semi-open f-file – not really enough compensation but Black must still take care as inaccuracies can be swiftly punished in the Blackmar-Diemer.

5 ♖xf3, known as the Ryder Gambit, generously offers Black a second central pawn and he should not hesitate before snapping it up: 5...♗xd4 6 ♙e3 ♗g4! (gaining an important tempo; 6...♗b4?! 7 0-0-0 ♙g4? 8 ♗b5!! should definitely be avoided) 7 ♗f2 e5 (*D*) and now:

1) 8 ♙e2 should be answered by 8...♗f5 and 9...♙b4 according to Lane.

2) 8 ♙d3 ♙b4 9 ♗e2 e4 10 ♙c4 ♙e6 11 ♙xe6 ♗xe6 was fairly hopeless for White in Prins-Schneider, corr 1989.



3) 8 a3 (prevents the annoying ...b4, but if White is reduced to this...) 8...c6 9 f3 d6 10 0-0-0. Lane makes a rather half-hearted attempt to claim compensation for White here but he obviously believes that Black is much better. His main game now concentrates on the ridiculous 10...a6; 10...e6, returning the queen from enemy territory looks more to the point as 11 g5 e7 12 c4 0-0 is nothing to worry about.

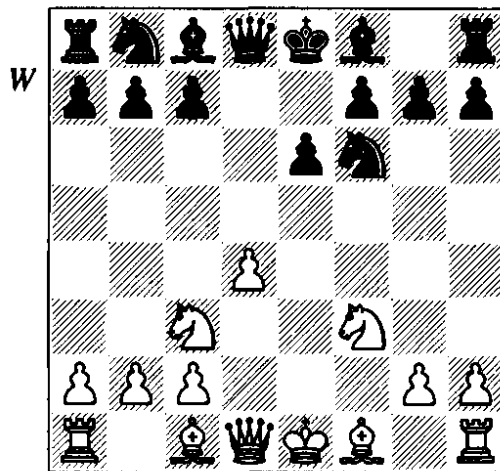
4) Hodgson suggests 8 f3 followed by 0-0-0 as being more in the spirit of the opening:

4a) 8...e4 is perhaps a little optimistic. After 9 d4 (9 e5 f5 10 xf5 xf5 11 c4 e6 is good enough) 9...c6!? 10 e2 xd4 11 xg4? xg4 12 d2 xe3 13 c1 df5 White is lost but he should play 11 xd4 with some compensation. Black can of course play something else on his 9th move.

4b) 8...c6 and 8...d6 are very playable but Black may end up a tempo down on variation '3'. Perhaps 8...b4 is best as after 9 xe5 e4 10 c4 xc3+ 11 bxc3 e6! (better than 11...g4 12 f4! with

some chances for White) White has nothing for the pawn. 9 0-0-0 is probably his best chance.

5 ... e6 (D)



This seems to be the most reliable set-up. Black calmly develops his pieces before seeking counterplay in the centre with ...c5. It is true that this locks in the queen's bishop, but one can't have everything in life, not even against the Blackmar-Diemer Gambit.

6 g5

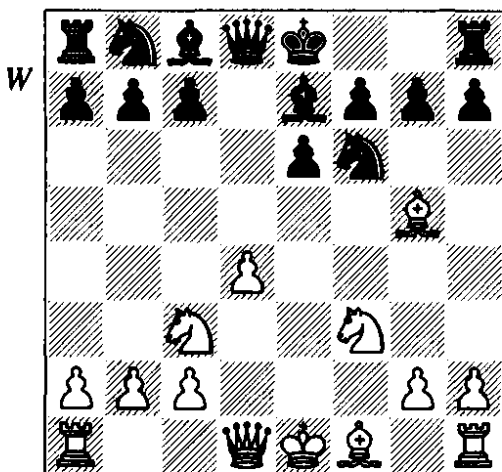
On 6 d3 (the bishop is better here than on c4 as White usually targets h7) Black can simply continue with 6...e7, or take the opportunity to play an immediate ...c5, for example: 6...c5 7 e3 cxd4 (7...c6 8 dxc5 a5 also looks possible) 8 xd4 e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 f3 (10 e1 g4) 10...bd7 (10...e5!?). If one were to stick a white pawn on f2 I would still be happy with the black position, but I suppose Blackmar-Diemer fans may argue that it is precisely because this pawn is missing that White has good attacking chances. I'm not sure how he should continue the attack though. If 11

♖h3 then 11...♗c5 is good as 12 ♜xf6 ♗xd3! is not in White's favour. Other moves are also liable to be met by ...♗e5 or ...♗c5 exchanging off the dangerous bishop. Perhaps Black will still have to soak up a little pressure but he has an extra pawn and no weaknesses.

6 ♗e5, a suggestion of Diemer, also deserves a brief mention. After 6...♗bd7 7 ♖f3 ♙e7 8 ♙g5 0-0 9 ♙d3, Declair-Viaene, Belgium 1988, Black should play 9...c5 (in the game he opted for the passive 9...c6) after which White will be hard pressed to avoid unfavourable exchanges. 10 ♖h3 should, of course, be met by 10...g6 rather than 10...h6.

6 ... ♙e7 (D)

Euwe's original idea was to play 6...c5 here but after 7 ♙xf6! gxf6 (7...♖xf6 8 ♙b5+ ♙d7 9 0-0 is very risky) 8 d5 e5 (I don't see anything better) 9 ♙c4 White has real positional compensation.



White usually chooses between:

A: 7 ♖d2, which can be followed by 0-0-0; and

B: 7 ♙d3, usually followed by 0-0.

A)

7 ♖d2 0-0

8 ♙d3

8 0-0-0 is not mentioned in Lane's book but 8...c5 still looks like a good reply.

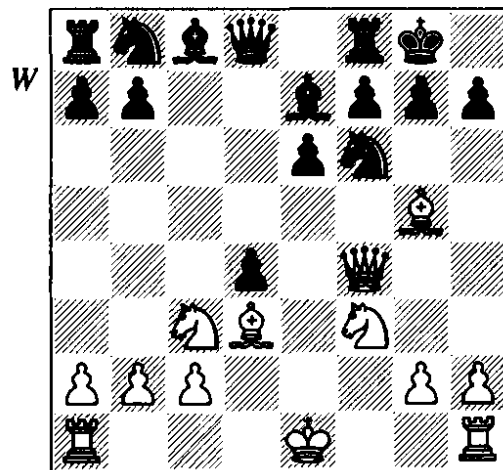
8 ... c5

9 ♖f4

A standard queen manoeuvre in the Blackmar-Diemer; this case appears to be even more tricky than usual.

9 ... cxd4! (D)

In Diemer-Anon, France 1957, Black wasn't careful and got blown away: 9...♗d5? 10 ♙xh7+! ♔xh7 11 ♖h4+ ♔g8 12 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 (or 12...♗xe7 losing after 13 ♗g5 ♜e8 14 ♖h7+ ♔f8 15 ♖h5! ♗g6 16 ♜f1) 13 ♗g5 ♗f6 14 ♗ce4 ♗bd7 15 0-0! ♜e8 16 ♜xf6! ♗xf6 17 ♜f1! 1-0.



10 ♖h4!

Definitely White's best chance.

Others:

1) 10 ♗xd4 ♗h5! when 11 ♙xe7 ♗xf4, 11 ♖e4 f5 and 11 ♖h4 ♙xg5 12 ♖xh5 g6 13 ♖g4 e5 are all hopeless for White.

2) 10 0-0-0 dxc3! 11 ♙xh7+ ♔xh7 12 ♜xd8 cxb2+ 13 ♔b1 ♜xd8

and the queen has cost White too much material.

3) 10 ♖e4 ♘d5! 11 ♚h4 ♙xg5 12 ♘exg5 ♚a5+! (not 12...h6?? 13 ♙h7+ ♙h8 14 ♘xf7+!) 13 ♚e2 h6 with advantage to Black.

10 ... dxc3!?

A little bit of fantasy. There are two alternatives, one good and one bad.

1) 10...h6 11 ♙xh6! (naturally) and now:

1a) 11...dxc3 12 ♙xg7! ♚xg7 13 ♚g5+ ♙h8 14 ♚h6+ ♙g8 and White has at least a perpetual and probably more after 15 0-0-0.

1b) 11...gxh6 12 ♚xh6 ♚a5 13 ♘g5 dxc3 and again White has a perpetual with 14 ♙h7+ and perhaps more, e.g. 14 0-0 ♘bd7 15 ♚f3 cxb2 16 ♚af1 ♚b6+ 17 ♙h1 b1 ♚ 18 ♚h3! and mate follows shortly.

2) 10...g6! is the most solid continuation, making it very difficult for White to sacrifice anything successfully. 11 ♖e4 should be met by 11...♘d5! when the possibilities of ...f6 and ...f5 should enable him to defend his kingside with ease.

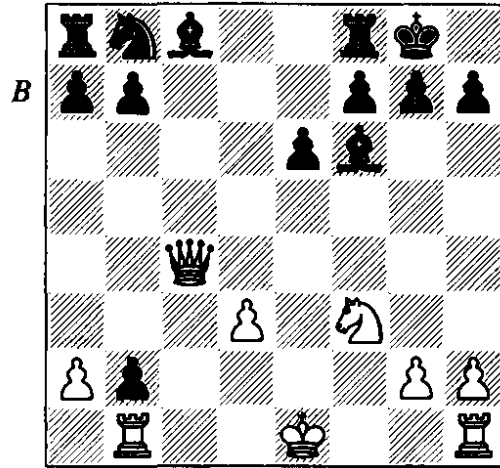
11 ♙xf6 ♚xd3!

12 cxd3 ♙xf6

13 ♚c4 cxb2

14 ♚b1 (D)

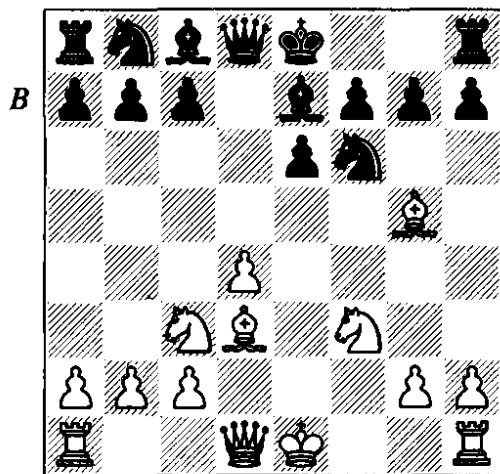
Black's defensive combination has netted him two bishops and three pawns for the queen – a rough materialequality. After something such as 14...♘c6 15 0-0 (15 d4 ♚d8 16 ♚xb2 ♘xd4 is dangerous for White) 15...♚d8 it is clear that Black has a very compact position with several secure posts in the centre for his



pieces (very important for minor pieces battling against a queen). The outcome will hinge on the fate of the b2-pawn and on whether Black can activate his potentially powerful queen's bishop. One idea for Black is to continue with ...♚d5 and ...♙d7, whilst another (especially if White plays 16 ♚fd1, intending d4 and ♚xb2) is to play ...♘d4 as an exchange of knights would almost certainly be in Black's favour.

B)

7 ♙d3 (D)



7 ... c5

Or:

1) 7...♘bd7 8 0-0 c5 9 dxc5 ♘xc5 10 ♙b5+ ♙d7 11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6

12 ♖e2 and, according to Lane, this position is assessed as = by Leisebein. I would have thought that White is completely lost! I have noticed a common trend among Blackmar-Diemer analysts; once there is no attack and the position looks rather balanced they tend to assess the game as =, conveniently forgetting the fact that they are a pawn down. I think that 8 ♖d2 is better as 8...c5 9 0-0-0 looks quite unclear to me.

2) 7...♘c6!? 8 ♖d2 (the inferior 8 a3 is often played when 8...♘d5 looks very good for Black) 8...♘b4 (Black is willing to waste some time in order to exchange off White's most dangerous attacking piece) 9 0-0-0 ♘xd3+ 10 ♖xd3 0-0 11 h4 c5 (other moves lead to a passive situation) 12 ♙xf6 (perhaps White can improve upon this) 12...♙xf6 13 dxc5 ♖xd3 14 ♖xd3 ♙xc3 15 ♖xc3 f6! followed by ...e5 with a better ending for Black.

8 dxc5 ♖a5

8...♘bd7 allows 9 b4 whilst the immediate capture 8...♙xc5 is untrustworthy.

9 0-0

9 ♖d2 can be met by 9...♘bd7.

9 ... ♖xc5+

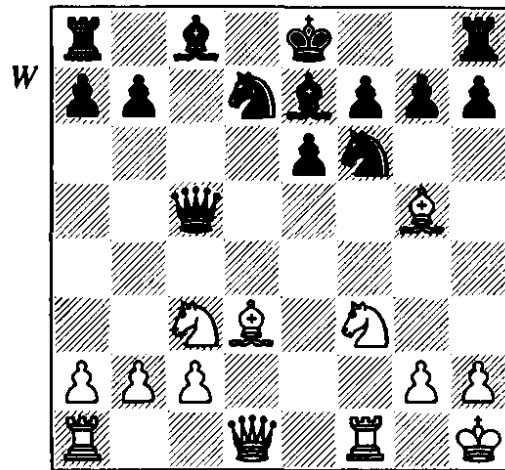
10 ♔h1 ♘bd7 (D)

Black is in no great rush to castle as there are other useful things to do, such as developing the queenside.

11 ♖e1 a6

With what Black has in mind it will be essential to deprive White of the b5-square.

12 ♖h4 ♖b4!



Now White has to agree to the exchange of queens or donate a second pawn. There is little doubt as to which path Blackmar-Diemer fans will follow.

13 ♘d4 ♖xb2

14 ♘ce2 ♘e5

15 a4

Threatening to trap the queen with 16 ♖fb1.

15 ... ♖b6

16 ♖xf6

An attempt to confuse the issue in a lost position.

16 ... gxf6!

The '!' may seem to be a little excessive but in Sneiders-Breunig, Corr 1970-1 Black was bluffed out and played 16...♘xd3?. After 17 ♖ff1 f6 18 ♙e3 ♘c5 (18...♘e5, but it looks dodgy) 19 ♘b3! ♖c6 (19...e5 20 ♖f2!) 20 ♙xc5 ♙xc5 21 ♖h5+ he had lost a piece and the game.

17 ♙xf6 ♖d8!

18 ♖f1

What else?

18 ... ♙xf6

19 ♖xf6 ♘g4!

The game is over. After 20 ♘xe6, the simplest is 20...♖xf6 21 ♘c7+ ♔d8.

Index of Variations

A: King's Indian: White avoids the main lines

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 g6
 3 ♘c3 ♙g7
 4 e4
- 4 ♙g5 72
- 4 ♘f3:
 4...0-0:
 5 e3 d6 102
 5 ♙g5:
 5...c5 72
 5...d6 74
 4...d6
 5 e3 109
 5 ♙g5 74:
 5...c6 74
 5...0-0
 6 e4 75
 6 e3:
 6...c5 77
 6...♘bd7 75
- 4 ... d6:
- 5 h3 0-0 31:
 6 ♙g5 31
 6 ♙e3 31
 6 ♘f3 36 6...e5:
 7 dxe5 37
 7 d5:
 7...♘h5 37
 7...♘a6:
- 5 ♘f3 0-0
 6 ♙e3 e5 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♙xd8
 ♙xd8 9 ♘d5 104
 6 ♙e2 e5:
 7 d5 a5 8 h3 47
 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♙xd8 ♙xd8 85
 9 ♙g5 ♙e8:
 10 0-0-0 86
 10 ♘d5 ♘xd5 11 cxd5
 c6 12 ♙c4 cxd5 13 ♙xd5 ♘d7 87
- 5 ♙e2 0-0:
 6 ♙e3 106
 6 g4 106
 6 h4 107
 6 ♙g5 ♘a6 53:
 7 ♙f3 54
 7 f4 54
 7 ♘f3 59
 7 h4 59
 7 ♙d2 65
- 5 ♙g5 h6 6 ♙h4 c5 82
- 5 ♙d3 0-0 6 ♘ge2 91:
 6...c5 91
 6...e5 91
 6...♘c6 7 0-0 92
- 5 ♘ge2 97:
 5...c6 97
 5...0-0 6 ♘g3 e5 7 d5 98
 5...a6 6 ♘g3 c6 99
- 8 ♙e3 37
 8 ♙g5 43

5 f4 0-0 6 ♖f3 ♗a6 10

7 ♕e3 10

7 c5 10

7 e5 20

7 ♕d3 20

7 ♕e2 e5

8 0-0 11

8 dxe5 11

8 fxe5 16

B: 1 d4: White avoids the King's Indian

1 d4 ♖f6

2 ♕g5 111 2...♗e4:

3 ♕h4 112

3 h4 115

3 ♕f4 c5 121:

4 d5 ♖b6 121

4 f3 ♖a5+ 5 c3 ♖f6 127

2 ♗c3 d5

3 e4 dxe4 4 f3 exf3:

5 ♖xf3 185

5 ♗xf3 185 5...e6:

6 ♕d3 186

6 ♗e5 187

6 ♕g5 ♕e7:

7 ♕d3 188

7 ♖d2 187

3 ♕g5 ♗bd7 170:

4 ♗f3 g6 176

4 e4 170

4 ♖d3 171

4 e3 171

4 f3:

4...c5 172

4...c6 5 e4 dxe4 6 fxe4

e5 173

2 ♗f3 g6:

3 b4 109

3 g3 ♕g7 4 ♕g2 0-0 5 0-0 d6 157:

6 ♗c3 157

6 b3 157

6 ♖e1 164

6 ♗bd2 164

6 a4 166

3 ♗c3 d5 4 ♕f4 ♕g7:

5 ♖d2 180

5 e3 180 5...0-0 6 ♕e2 c5:

7 ♗e5 181

7 dxc5 ♗bd7 181

3 ♕g5 137 3...♕g7 4 ♗bd2 0-0:

5 e3 137

5 e4 d5 138

5 c3:

5...d5 142

5...d6 6 e4 c5 143

3 ♕f4 148 3...♕g7:

4 c3 153

4 ♗bd2 0-0 5 e4 148

4 e3 d6 5 h3 (5 ♕e2 148) 5...0-0:

6 c4 149

6 ♕c4 ♗bd7 7 c3 153

6 c3 153

6 ♕e2 ♗bd7 149:

7 c4 149

7 0-0 ♖e8 (7...♗e4 150):

8 c4 150

8 c3 153